



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

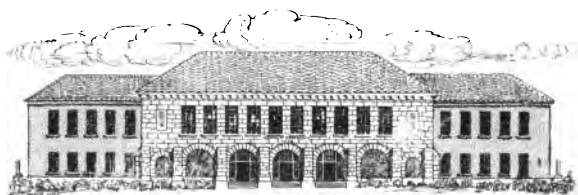
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

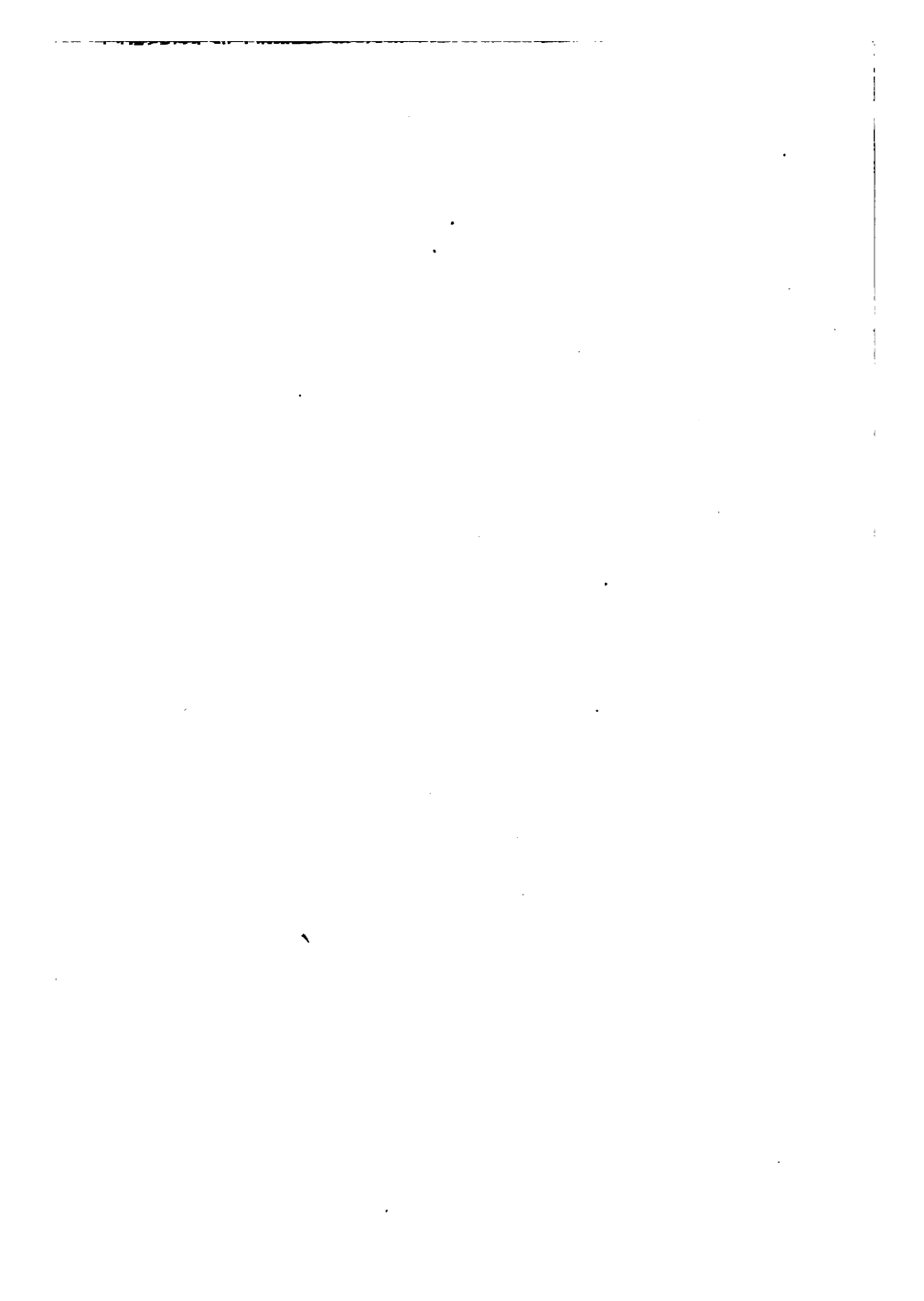
TEXTBOOK COLLECTION
GIFT OF
THE PUBLISHERS

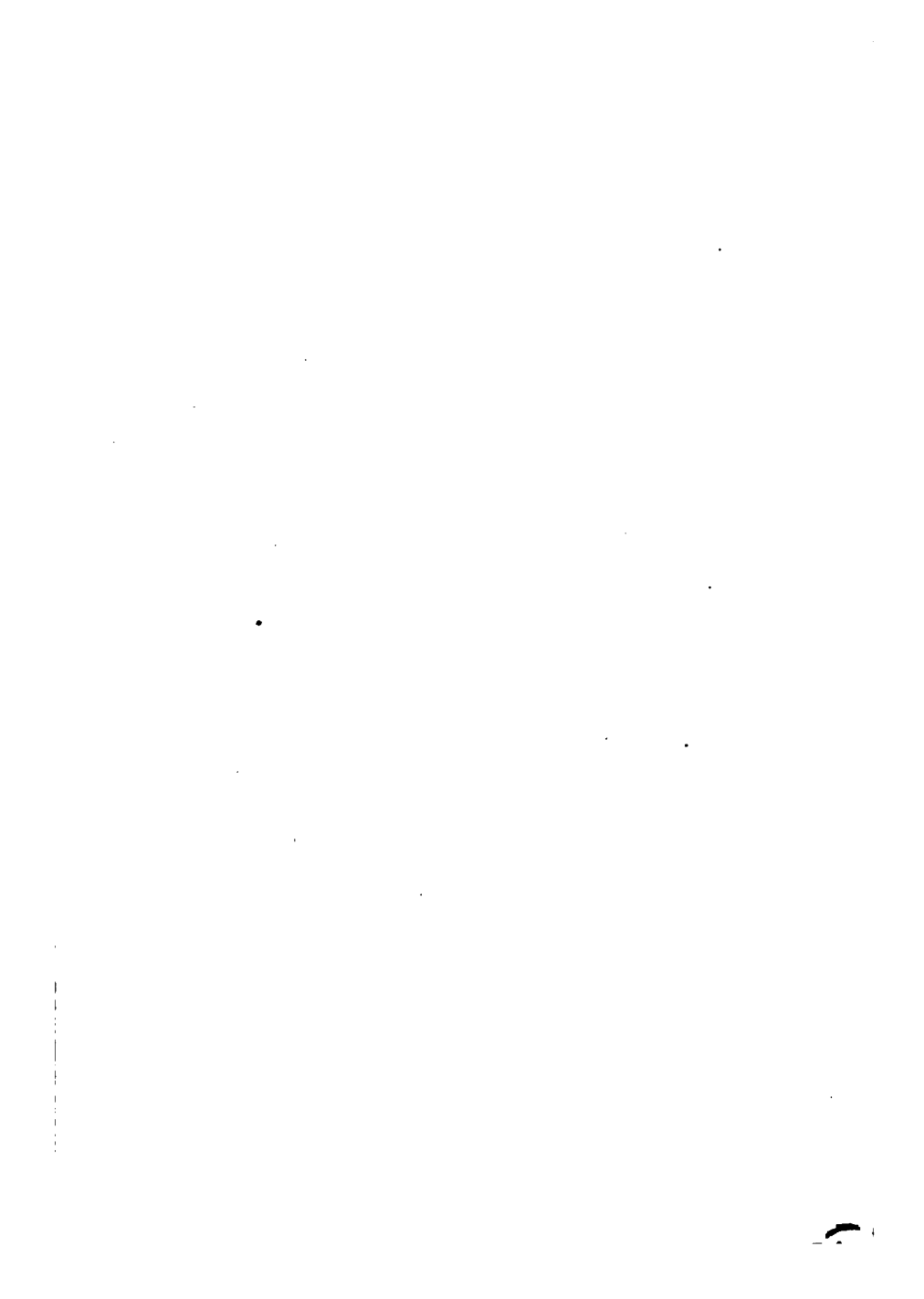


STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

The retail price of this book is \$

19.





GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CHAS. W. BAIN

HEAD MASTER OF THE SEWANEE GRAMMAR SCHOOL
UNIVERSITY OF THE SOUTH

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY
NEW YORK . BOSTON . NEW ORLEANS

597607

C

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

*.*2193



PREFACE.

THIS little book is the outgrowth of thirteen years' experience in the classroom, and it is hoped that herein is a justification, however slight, for its appearance among so many books of a like character.

The chief aim of the book is not to overtax the reasoning power of young pupils, and therefore everything has been presented in the simplest way. Only the most important matters have been dwelt upon, while exceptions and peculiarities have been almost entirely excluded. Attention has been called carefully to points of likeness and unlikeness between Latin and English, as well as to the characteristics of the Latin language itself. An attempt has also been made to clear the way for translation ; and with this in view, not only illustrative sentences and rules are given, but full explanations of every principle follow the illustrative sentences. There is much repetition, by which method, it is believed, constructions become more firmly imbedded in the pupil's mind. Only the easier and more necessary principles of syntax are introduced in the early part of the book ; and throughout, syntax has been rigidly subordinated to the gradual development of the forms.

The vocabulary comes mainly from *Caesar*, and consists of those words that occur most frequently ; many words are from *Viri Rōmæ* and some few from *Livy* and *Cicero*. In the Latin-English vocabulary, derivations and etymologies are given, in the hope that observant pupils may gain some useful knowledge, but it is not intended that they be dwelt upon in class.

The reading lessons do not form an integral part of the book, and accordingly may be omitted by those teachers who deem them too difficult for their classes. Every attempt has, however, been made to make them easy, by careful explanation of every construction likely to cause difficulty, and, in the earlier lessons, by such alteration of the text as seems necessary to avoid constructions not yet explained. In the extracts at the end of the book special attention has been paid to showing how certain constructions should be translated, and throughout the book the pupil is directed how to translate those Subjunctive constructions which become Indicative in English.

From § 295 on, the exercises, both Latin and English, are made up from the reading lessons, thus repeating the words and constructions, and leading gradually to an easy acquisition of the subsequent extracts.

In conclusion, I take great pleasure in thanking PROFESSOR GILDERSLEEVE and PROFESSOR LODGE, the editors-in-chief of the series, and DR. McCABE, of the University School, Richmond, Va., who read the book in manuscript and made many valuable suggestions. PROFESSOR LODGE and my brother, MR. GEO. McK. BAIN, Principal of the Norfolk (Va.) High School, have also given material help in the proof-reading.

It is also a pleasure to acknowledge the uniform courtesy and kindness of the publishers and their reader, and to thank them cordially for their endeavor to render the book attractive in appearance as well as accurate in execution.

CHAS. W. BAIN.

SEWANEE, TENN., *August 23, 1898.*

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction : Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Parts of Speech, Inflection, Cases, Gender, Number, Persons..	1
LESSON	
I. First or A -Declension : Feminine Nouns.....	7
II. First or A -Declension Continued.....	8
III. First or A -Declension Continued. Genitive Case.....	10
IV. Verbs of First Conjugation : Stems in ā	11
V. First Conjugation Continued : Stems in ā . Persons and Number. Direct Object.....	12
VI. Second or O -Declension : Masculine Nouns in -us	14
VII. First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.....	16
VIII. Second or O -Declension : Neuter Nouns in -um	18
IX. First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.....	20
X. Adjectives in -us, -a, -um	21
XI. Second or O -Declension Continued : Masculine Nouns in -er and -ir	23
XII. Second Conjugation : Stems in ē	25
XIII. Adjectives in (-e)r, (-e)ra, (-e)rum	26
XIV. Second or O -Declension Continued : Nouns in -ius and -ium . Ablative Case.....	28
XV. Second Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.....	30
XVI. Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.....	31
XVII. Third Declension : Consonant Stems ; Mute Stems....	33
XVIII. Third Declension Continued : Mute Stems Continued..	35
XIX. First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.....	37
XX. Third Declension Continued : Liquid Stems—Stems in l or n	38
XXI. Third Declension Continued : Liquid Stems Continued —Stems in r . Accusative Case.....	40
XXII. First Conjugation Continued.....	43
XXIII. Third Declension Continued : Liquid Stems Continued —Stems in s	44
XXIV. Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.....	46
XXV. Third Declension Continued : I -Stems.....	48

LESSON	PAGE
XXVI. Third Declension Continued : I-Stems Continued. Ablative Case.....	49
XXVII. Second Conjugation Continued.....	51
XXVIII. Third Declension Continued : I-Stems Continued. Ablative Case.	53
XXIX. Third Declension Continued. Rules of Gender. Questions.....	55
XXX. Third Conjugation : Stems in a Consonant or in i....	56
XXXI. Adjectives of Three Terminations.....	58
XXXII. Adjectives of Two Terminations. Ablative Case.....	60
XXXIII. Third Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.....	61
XXXIV. Adjectives of One Termination.....	63
XXXV. Third Conjugation Continued.....	65
XXXVI. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative Case.....	67
XXXVII. Comparison Continued. Ablative Case.....	69
XXXVIII. Comparison Continued. Genitive Case.....	71
XXXIX. Third Conjugation Continued.....	73
XL. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.....	75
XLI. Fourth Conjugation.....	78
XLII. Fourth Declension.....	80
XLIII. Fifth Declension.....	82
XLIV. Fourth Conjugation Continued.....	84
XLV. Conjugation of <i>sum</i>	86
XLVI. Cardinal Numeral Adjectives.....	88
XLVII. Passive Voice of <i>amō</i> . Ablative Case.....	90
XLVIII. Ordinal Numeral Adjectives.....	92
XLIX. Passive Voice of <i>amō</i> Continued.....	94
L. Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.....	96
LI. Passive Voice of <i>amō</i> Continued.....	99
LII. Irregular Adjectives.....	101
LIII. Passive Voice of <i>moneō</i> . <i>Hic, haec, hōc</i>	103
LIV. Demonstrative Pronouns Continued.....	105
LV. Passive Voice of <i>moneō</i> Continued. Determinative Pronouns.....	107
LVI. Determinative Pronouns Continued.....	109
LVII. Relative Pronouns.....	111
LVIII. Passive Voice of <i>emō</i>	113
LIX. Passive of <i>emō</i> Continued. Interrogative Pronouns..	115
LX. Passive Voice of <i>capiō</i>	117
LXI. Passive Voice of <i>audiō</i>	119

LESSON	PAGE
LXII. Infinitive Mood	121
Italia.—Prōserpina	123
LXIII. Indefinite Pronouns	124
LXIV. Deponent Verbs	126
Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium, I.	129
LXV. Conjugation of <i>verēor</i> ; <i>loquor</i> ; <i>mentior</i>	130
Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium, II.	133
LXVI. Semi-Deponent Verbs. Genitive Case	134
LXVII. Conjugation of <i>amō</i> Continued. Final Subjunctive... ..	135
Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium, III.	138
LXVIII. Conjugation of <i>moneō</i> Continued. Consecutive Sub- junctive	140
LXIX. Conjugation of <i>emō</i> Continued. <i>Cum</i> Historical and <i>cum</i> Causal	143
Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium, IV.	146
LXX. Conjugation of <i>capiō</i> Continued. Indirect Question..	147
LXXI. Conjugation of <i>amō</i> Continued. Final and Consecu- tive Subjunctive Continued	149
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, I.	153
LXXII. Conjugation of <i>sum</i> Continued. Wishes	154
LXXIII. Compounds of <i>sum</i> . Dative Case	156
LXXIV. Conjugation of <i>amō</i> Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc	158
LXXV. Conjugation of <i>moneō</i> Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc	161
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, II.	163
LXXVI. Conjugation of <i>emō</i> Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Dative Case	164
LXXVII. Conjugation of <i>audiō</i> Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Genitive Case	166
LXXVIII. Conjugation of <i>capiō</i> Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Ablative Absolute	169
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, III.	171
LXXIX. Conjugation of <i>sum</i> Concluded. Names of Places....	173
LXXX. Impersonal Verbs. Genitive Case	174
LXXXI. The Accusative and Infinitive	176
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, IV.	179
LXXXII. Conjugation of <i>possum</i> . Conditional Sentences	179
LXXXIII. Conjugation of <i>prōsum</i> . Conditional Sentences Con- tinued	182

LESSON	PAGE
LXXXIV. Conjugation of <i>es</i> . Conditional Sentences Concluded.	185
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, V.....	188
LXXXV. Conjugation of <i>ferō</i> , Active and Passive.....	188
LXXXVI. Conjugation of <i>fiō</i> . Predicate Nominative.....	191
Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx, VI.....	193
LXXXVII. Conjugation of <i>volō</i> ; <i>nōlō</i> ; <i>mālō</i>	194
LXXXVIII. The Gerund and Gerundive.....	196
LXXXIX. The Supines.....	199
Horātius Cocles, I.....	200
XC. The Periphrastic Conjugation. Dative Case.....	201
XCI. Relative Sentences.....	204
Horātius Cocles, II.....	206
XCII. Sequence of Tenses.....	206
XCIII. Ōrātiō Obliqua.....	208
Reading Lessons : { Life of Caesar.....	211
{ Life of Cicero.....	232
Appendix : Paradigms.	243
Vocabulary : { Latin-English.....	275
{ English-Latin.....	321

ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Tuba.....	14	Horātius.....	102
Hasta.....	19	Domus.....	106
Gladii.....	29	Castellum.....	114
Militēs.....	36	Vestæ Sacerdōs.....	123
Carrus.....	40	Lupa.....	129
Templum.....	42	Auspicia.....	139
Nāvis.....	47	Scūta.....	153
Pōculum.....	54	Ānulus.....	156
Arātrum.....	59	Armilla.....	160
Eques.....	77	Ārae.....	168
Arcus.....	81	Forum.....	175
Signa.....	83	Gāius Iulius Caesar.....	211
Corōna.....	95	Mārcus Tullius Cicerō.....	232
Agger.....	98		

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

I. PRONUNCIATION.

Alphabet.

1. The Latin Alphabet has 24 letters and is like the English, except that it has no J or W.

Vowels.

2. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**, and (in Greek words) **y**; they are divided according to quantity (i.e. the time required for pronunciation) into

long, marked thus —

short, “ “ ∪

common, i.e. sometimes *short*, sometimes *long* ∪

“ *long*, “ *short* ∪

REMARK.—In this book all the long vowels are marked.

Sounds of the Vowels.

3. 1. The long vowels are pronounced as follows:

ā like *a* in father.

ō like *o* in bone.

ē “ *e* in prey.

ū “ *oo* in noon.

ī “ *i* in caprice.

y “ the French *u* in *sûr*.

2. The short vowels have no exact equivalents in English, but are sounded nearly as follows:

a like *a* the first syllable in *ahá*.

o like *o* in *obey*.

e “ *e* in *met*.

u “ *oo* in *cook*.

i “ *i* in *pín*.

EXERCISE.

ā,	mē,	sī,	nisi,	tot,
at,	tē,	sīc,	quod,	cūr,
ad,	et,	hī,	nōn,	cum,
sē,	que,	quis,	hōc,	tum.

Diphthongs.

4. The Diphthongs (or Double Sounds) should be pronounced with a slur, but so that each sound should be heard separately ; e.g.:

ae = *aye* (āh-eh).

ei = *ei* in *feint* (drawled).

oe = *oy* in *boy*.

eu = *eu* in Spanish *deuda* (ēh-oo).

au = *ou* in *our*.

ui = *we* almost).

REMARK.—The sign “ (Dierësis) over the second vowel shows that each vowel is to be sounded separately.

EXERCISE.

mūn-sae,	coe-pit,	hēia,	cuī,
fae-num,	cau-sa,	heus,	huīc.
foe-dus,	fau-stus,	ēheu,	

Consonants.

5. 1. The Consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :

c and **g** are always hard, as in *cat* and *get*.

v is nearly like our *w* in *wine*.

s is always a hissing sound, as in *so*.

t is always hard, as in *time*.

i consonant, i.e. **i** at the beginning of a word before a vowel or between two vowels, like *y* in *yet*.

n before **c**, **g**, **q** has a guttural sound, as in *anchor*.

qu = *kw* almost.

r is trilled.

2. The consonants are divided into

A. *Semivowels* : of which

- l, m, n, r are liquids ;
 h is a breathing ;
 s is a sibilant.

B. *Mutes* : of which

- p, b, f are the P-mutes ;
 t, d are the T-mutes ;
 k, c, qu, g are the K-mutes.

3. The double consonants are :

x = cs or gn, and z = dz.

Syllables.

6. 1. A syllable is the unit of pronunciation and consists of a vowel or of a vowel and one or more consonants.

2. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs : a-gri-co-la, *farmer*.

3. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel : a-mō, *I love* ; mo-nē-bō, *I shall advise*.

4. Any combination of consonants that can begin a word belongs with the following vowel : a-sper, *rough* ; fau-stus, *lucky* ; cō-gnō-scō, *I recognize*.

5. Compound words are divided into their component parts : ab-igō, *I drive off* ; rēs-pūblica, *commonwealth*.

6. The last syllable of a word is called *ultimate* ; the next to the last, *penult* ; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

Quantity.

7. A. *Quantity of Vowels*.1. Vowels are *long by nature* :

a) before *nf, ns*, and *i* consonant (*j*) : infelix, *unlucky* ; mēssa, *table* ; Pompilius, *Pompey*.

b) before **gn** and before **-gm** in a few words : **benignus**, *kind* ; **pigmentum**, *color*.

c) when the result of contraction : **cōgō**, *I collect* (for **cōāgō**).

2. Vowels are *short by nature* :

a) before **nd**, **nt** : **dēfendō**, *I ward off* ; **amant**, *they love*.

b) before another vowel or **h** : **meus**, *my* ; **trahō**, *I draw*.

B. *Quantity of Syllables*.

1. A syllable is *long by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : **lē-gēs**, *laws* ; **sae-vae**, *cruel*.

2. A syllable is *long by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants : **ars**, *art* ; **amant**, *they love*.

3. A syllable is *common*, when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r** : **tenē-brae**, *darkness*.

Accent.

8. 1. Words of two syllables accent the penult : **pa'ter**, *father* ; **mā'ter**, *mother* ; **ē-quus**, *horse*.

2. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when the penult is long ; otherwise, the antepenult : **man-dā're**, *to commit* ; **mān'-dē-re**, *to chew* ; **in'-te-grum**, *entire*.

3. A few little words called enclitics (**-que**, **-ne**, **-ve**, **-ce**, **-met**, **-dum**) are so closely joined to the preceding word that its last syllable has an accent : **hominēs'que**, *and the men* ; **flūmina've**, *or the rivers* ; **ibis'-ne**, *will you go?*

EXERCISE.

Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words :

molesti,
culicēs,
māgnopere,
cruciābant,
Infēlicem,

relinquere,
peregrē,
concidit,
effugit,
effūgit,

cucūlus,
cēpērunt,
māgnus,
nātiō,
Rhodanus.

II. PARTS OF SPEECH.

9. The Parts of Speech are the same in Latin as in English ; namely, the noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

There is no article in Latin, but in other respects the two languages are alike, and what is noun, verb, adjective, etc., in English, must be noun, verb, adjective, etc., in Latin.

Inflexion.

10. Inflexion is the change that words undergo to correspond to change in use.

The inflexion of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *Declension*, and they are said to be *declined*. There are five declensions.

The inflexion of verbs is called *Conjugation*, and they are said to be *conjugated*. There are four conjugations.

Nouns.

11. Nouns are Proper or Common, as in English : *Rōma*, *Rome* ; *dominus*, *master*.

Genders.

12. There are three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter.

The gender of Latin nouns, except when males or females are meant, is largely determined by the endings.

The following rules will prove serviceable :

1. Winds, Rivers, Months, and Mountains are Masculine.
2. Countries, Islands, Cities, Trees, and Plants are feminine.
3. Indeclinable words are neuter.

Cases.

13. Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns have six cases in Latin :

1. *Nominative* is the case of the Subject, and is found by asking the question *who?* or *what?* *before* the verb.

2. *Genitive* is the Adjective case, and is found by asking the question *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?*

3. *Dative* is the case of the Indirect Object, and is found by asking the question *to* or *for whom?* *to* or *for what?*

4. *Accusative* is the case of the Direct Object, and is found by asking the question *whom?* or *what?* *after* the verb.

5. *Vocative* is the case of Address or of the person spoken to.

6. *Ablative* is the Adverbial Case, and is found by asking the question *by, with, from, in whom?* or *what?*

Conjugation of Verbs.

14. Verbs in Latin have three finite moods—Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive : they also have Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, Supines.

Tenses.

15. There are six tenses, as in English : Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

Voices.

16. There are two Voices, Active and Passive, as in English.

Numbers.

17. There are two Numbers, Singular and Plural, as in English.

Persons.

18. There are three Persons, First, Second, and Third, as in English.

III. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS.

LESSON I.

First or A-Declension : Feminine Nouns.

19. 1. The stem ends in -ā, weakened from an original -ā, which is found by dropping the -rum of the Gen. Plur., e.g. *mēnsārum*, stem *mēnsa-*.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the -ae of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. *mēnsae*, base *mēns-*.

mēnsa, a table : stem *mēnsa-*.

SING.—Nom.	<i>mēnsa,</i>	<i>a or the table.</i>
Gen.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>of a or the table.</i>
Dat.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>to or for a or the table.</i>
Acc.	<i>mēnsam,</i>	<i>a or the table.</i>
Voc.	<i>mēnsa,</i>	<i>O table.</i>
Abl.	<i>mēnsā,</i>	<i>by, with, from, in a or the table.</i>
PLUR.—Nom.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>tables or the tables.</i>
Gen.	<i>mēnsārum,</i>	<i>of tables or of the tables.</i>
Dat.	<i>mēnsis,</i>	<i>to or for tables or the tables.</i>
Acc.	<i>mēnsās,</i>	<i>tables or the tables.</i>
Voc.	<i>mēnsae,</i>	<i>O tables.</i>
Abl.	<i>mēnsis,</i>	<i>by, with, from, in tables or the tables.</i>

Note carefully

1. That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Gen. and Dat. Sing. are alike.
3. That the Abl. Sing. differs from the Nom. Sing. only in the long *a* of the ending.
4. That the Nom. and Voc. Plur. are alike.
5. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.

20.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

causa, -ae, f. *cause*.cōpia, -ae, f. *abundance, plenty*.fuga, -ae, f. *flight*.silva, -ae, f. *forest*.casa, -ae, f. *hut*.puella, -ae, f. *girl*.rēgina, -ae, f. *queen*.tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet*.—See p. 14.serva, -ae, f. *slave, female servant*.filia, * -ae, f. *daughter*.

EXERCISES.

21. I. Causae — cōpiarum — fugis — silva rēginae — casa servarum — fugae puellarum — filiabus* — cōpiā — silvam — tubae — servis.

II. For the queen—to the girls—of the hut—with a rose—from the forest—of the hut—the hut of the slave—the cause of the queens—the forests.

LESSON II.

First or A-Declension Continued.

22. Feminine Adjectives of the First Declension are declined just like the nouns ; e.g. :

Rēgina bona, *good queen* : stem rēgina- bona-.

* Filia, daughter, and dea, goddess, have -abus in the Dat. and Abl. Plural.

SING. — Nom.	rēgina	bona,	<i>a or the good queen.</i>
Gen.	rēginae	bonae,	<i>of a or the good queen.</i>
Dat.	rēginae	bonae,	<i>to or for a or the queen.</i>
Acc.	rēginam	bonam,	<i>a or the good queen.</i>
Voc.	rēgina	bona,	<i>O good queen.</i>
Abl.	rēginā	bonā,	<i>by, with, from, in a or the good queen.</i>
PLUR. — Nom.	rēginae	bonae,	<i>good queens or the good queens.</i>
Gen.	rēginārum	bonārum,	<i>of good queens or the good queens.</i>
Dat.	rēginis	bonis,	<i>to or for (the) good queens.</i>
Acc.	rēginas	bonas,	<i>good queens or the good queens.</i>
Voc.	rēginae	bonae,	<i>O good queens.</i>
Abl.	rēginis	bonis,	<i>by, with, from, in good queens or the good queens.</i>

Note carefully :

That the adjective and noun are in the same case, and that the adjective follows its noun.

23. Vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

bona, -ae, f. *good*.

superba, -ae, f. *proud*.

parva, -ae, f. *small, little*.

mala, -ae, f. *bad*.

pulchra, -ae, f. *beautiful, pretty*.

alba, -ae, f. *white*.

VERBS.

est, *is (he, she, or it is)*.

sunt, *are (they are)*.

24. Examine the following :

1. Puella est bona, the girl is good.

2. Puellae sunt bonae, the girls are good.

EXERCISES.

25. I. 1. Rēgina est superba. 2. Casa est parva. 3. Causae sunt malae. 4. Rosae sunt pulchrae. 5. Fuga est mala. 6. Silvae sunt parvae. 7. Filia est bona. 8. Rēgina bona est pulchra. 9. Rosa pulchra est alba. 10. Puella mala est superba.

II. 1. The girl is bad. 2. The daughters are good. 3. The roses are white. 4. The forests are beautiful. 5. The queens are proud. 6. White roses are pretty. 7. The small girl is bad. 8. Good queens are beautiful. 9. Bad slaves are proud. 10. The pretty roses are small.

26. 1. RULE.—*The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative Case.*

2. RULE.—*A Predicate Noun or Adjective, agreeing with the Subject, is in the Nominative Case.*

LESSON III.

First or A-D declension Continued. Genitive Case.

27. Examine the following :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. Filia rēginæ est bona, | { the queen's daughter is good ; or,
the daughter of the queen is good. |
| 2. Rosæ puellārum sunt albae, | { the girls' roses are white ; or,
the roses of the girls are white. |

28.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

Gallia, -ae, f. Gaul, France.

Eurōpa, -ae, f. Europe.

Victōria, -ae, f. Victoria.

Britannia, -ae, f. Britain.

agricola, -ae, m. farmer.

nauta, -ae, m. sailor.

ADJECTIVES.

lāta, -ae, f. broad, wide.

longa, -ae, f. long.

māgna, -ae, f. great, large.

ADVERBS.

ubi, where ?

nōn, not.

EXERCISES.

29. I. 1. Rēgina Britanniae est bona. 2. Filiae agricolārum sunt puellae pulchrae. 3. Casa nautae nōn est māgna. 4. Eurōpa est māgna. 5. Victōria est rēgina Bri-

tanniae. 6. Gallia est pulchra. 7. Rosae puellarum sunt albae. 8. Ubi est Gallia? 9. Gallia est in (*in*) Eurōpā. 10. Silvae rēgīnae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. The farmer's daughter is pretty. 2. Sailors' huts are small. 3. Britain is not large. 4. Europē is long and (*et*) broad. 5. The queen's slave is bad. 6. The forest of the farmer is small. 7. The daughter of the proud queen is pretty. 8. The roses of the small girl are white. 9. Where is the good girl? 10. The good girl is in (*in*) the hut.

30. RULE.—*The Genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a Noun.*

LESSON IV.

Verbs of the First Conjugation: Stems in **-A**.

31. PRESENT INDICATIVE of the Verb **amō**, *I love*: stem **amā-**.

SING.—1. am-ō, *I love, am loving, or do love.*
 2. amā-s, *you love, are loving, or do love.*
 3. ama-t, *he loves, is loving, or does love.*

PLUR.—1. amā-mus, *we love, are loving, or do love.*
 2. amā-tis, *you love, are loving, or do love.*
 3. ama-nt, *they love, are loving, or do love.*

Observe :

1. That **amō** is for **amā-ō** and that the stem-vowel **-ā** is lost before **-ō**;
2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **amā-** to denote persons and numbers, as follows :

SING.—1. **-ō** or **-m** = *I*

2. **-s** = *thou or you.*

3. **-t** = *he (she or it).*

PLUR.—1. **-mus** = *we.*

2. **-tis** = *you.*

3. **-nt** = *they.*

32. Like *amō*, conjugate the following verbs :

dō, I give.

pūgnō, I fight.

parō, I prepare.

vocō, I call.

ēducō, I bring up, educate.

culpō, I blame.

laudō, I praise.

servō, I save.

33. To conjugate all the moods and tenses of a Verb, we must know its *Principal Parts*.

The Principal Parts of a Latin Verb are as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>am-ō</i> ,	<i>amā-re</i> ,	<i>amā-v-I</i> ,	<i>amā-tum</i> .
<i>pūgn-ō</i> ,	<i>pūgnā-re</i> ,	<i>pūgnā-v-I</i> ,	<i>pūgnā-tum</i> .
<i>par-ō</i> ,	<i>parā-re</i> ,	<i>parā-v-I</i> ,	<i>parā-tum</i> .
<i>voc-ō</i> ,	<i>vocā-re</i> ,	<i>vocā-v-I</i> ,	<i>vocā-tum</i> .

EXERCISES.

34. I. 1. *Amās*. 2. *Pūgnāmus*. 3. *Parātis*. 4. *Vocat*.
5. *Dās*. 6. *Ēducāmus*. 7. *Culpant*. 8. *Laudās*. 9. *Servā-*
tis. 10. *Vocāmus*. 11. *Ēducāt*. 12. *Amātis*.

II. 1. You love. 2. We give. 3. They fight. 4. He calls. 5. You prepare. 6. We educate. 7. They praise. 8. We blame. 9. He saves. 10. He blames. 11. I praise. 12. You fight.

LESSON V.

First Conjugation Continued : Stems in *-A*.

PERSONS AND NUMBER—DIRECT OBJECT.

35. I. Examine the following :

1. *Filiam* { *amō* = I love the daughter.
 { *amās* = YOU love the daughter.
 { *amāmus* = WE love the daughter.
 { *amātis* = YE love the daughter.
2. { *Rēgina filiam amat* = the QUEEN loves the DAUGHTER.
 { *Rēginae filiam amant* = the QUEENS love the DAUGHTER.

Observe :

1. That the *first* and *second persons* Sing. and Plur. *cannot* have a *noun subject*.

2. That when the *subject* is a *noun*, the *verb* must be in the *third person singular* for a *singular noun* and in the *third person plural* for a *plural noun*.

II. Examine carefully :

1. Rēginam amat, { HE loves the queen ; or,
SHE loves the queen ; or,
IT loves the queen.

2. Rēginam amant, THEY love the queen.

Observe that,

When *no subject* is expressed in Latin, the *Pronouns* (*he, she, or it* for the Sing. and *they* for the Plur.) are used in English.

III. Examine the following :

1. { Rēgina filiam laudat,
Filiam rēgina laudat,
Laudat filiam rēgina, } the QUEEN praises the DAUGHTER.

2. { Filia laudat rēginam,
Rēginam laudat filia,
Laudat filia rēginam, } the DAUGHTER praises the QUEEN.

Observe :

1. That in the first group of sentences, **rēgina** is *Subject* and in the *Nominative Case*, and **filiam** is *Object* and in the *Accusative Case*, without regard to the order of the words.

2. That in the second group, **filia** is *Subject* and in the *Nominative Case*, and **rēginam** is *Object* and in the *Accusative Case*, without regard to the order of the words.

3. That in English a change of order makes a change of sense, but in Latin the *cases must be changed* to change the sense.

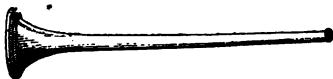
EXERCISES.

36. I. 1. Agricola filiam laudat. 2. Nauta puellam servat. 3. Servae rosās dant. 4. Rēgina filiās vocat. 5. Puellam ēducat. 6. Servās culpāmus. 7. Puellās bonās laudātis. 8. Agricolae pūgnant. 9. Rēginam Britanniae amās. 10. Puellae rēginam superbam nōn amant.

II. 1. He praises the sailors. 2. We love the farmers. 3. Proud queens do not love the slaves. 4. They are educating the girls. 5. You are blaming the farmer's daughter. 6. Small girls love pretty roses. 7. The sailors save the queen's daughter. 8. Girls do not fight. 9. I call the bad slaves. 10. The farmer's daughter loves the sailor.

37. RULE.—*The Verb agrees with its Subject in Person and Number.*

38. RULE.—*The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case.*



TUBA.

LESSON VI.

Second or O-Declension: Masculine Nouns in -US.

39. 1. The stem ends in -*ŭ*, weakened from an original -*ō*, which is found by dropping the -*rum* of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. *dominōrum*, stem *domino-*.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the -*i* of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. *domini*, base *domin-*.

	dominus, master :	dominus bonus, good master :
	stem domino- .	stem domino- bono- .
SING. — Nom.	dominus,	dominus bonus,
Gen.	dominī,	dominī bonī,
Dat.	dominō,	dominō bonō,
Acc.	dominum,	dominum bonum,
Voc.	domine,	domine bone,
Abl.	dominō.	dominō bonō.
PLUR. — Nom.	dominī,	dominī bonī,
Gen.	dominōrum,	dominōrum bonōrum,
Dat.	dominīs,	dominīs bonīs,
Acc.	dominōs,	dominōs bonōs,
Voc.	dominī,	dominī bonī,
Abl.	dominīs.	dominīs bonīs.

Note :

1. That the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Voc. Plur. are alike.
2. That the Voc. Sing. ends in *ē* and differs from the Nom. Singular.
3. That the Dat. and Abl. Sing. are alike.
4. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.
5. That the Adj. and Noun must be of the same gender and number and in the same case.

40.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

amicus, -i, m. friend.
equus, -i, m. horse.
dominus, -i, m. master.
servus, -i, m. slave, male servant.
hortus, -i, m. garden.

ADJECTIVES.

bonus, -i, m. good.
malus, -i, m. bad.
parvus, -i, m. small.
superbus, -i, m. proud.
albus, -i, m. white.

EXERCISES.

41. I. 1. *Amicus est bonus.* 2. *Dominus equōs amat.*
 3. *Servōs dominī laudāmus.* 4. *Equus parvus nōn est*

superbus. 5. Domini hortum laudat. 6. Puellae equum album amant. 7. Filia reginae servum servat. 8. Agricola est amicus equi. 9. Agricola hortum amō. 10. Domini mali servos culpant.

II. 1. The bad slaves are fighting. 2. We love the good horse. 3. The queen praises the good friends. 4. The daughter of the slave is good. 5. The queen's horse is white. 6. The master is calling the slaves. 7. You love the friends of the farmer. 8. The farmer's daughter educates the slaves. 9. We give pretty roses. 10. Good slaves do not love proud masters.

LESSON VII.

First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.

42. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of the Verb **amō**, *I love*: stem **amā-**.

SING.—I. **amā-ba-m**, *I was loving, loved.*
 2. **amā-bā-s**, *you were loving, loved.*
 3. **amā-ba-t**, *he was loving, loved.*

PLUR.—I. **amā-bā-mus**, *we were loving, loved.*
 2. **amā-bā-tis**, *you were loving, loved.*
 3. **amā-ba-nt**, *they were loving, loved.*

Note :

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the stem **amā**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

43.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

fābula, -ae, f. *story.*

incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant.*

terra, -ae, f. *earth, land, country.*

medicīna, -ae, f. *medicine.*

taurus, -i, m. *bull.*

populus, -i, m. *people.*

cibus, -i, m. *food.*

oppidānus, -i, m. *townsman.*

VERBS.

nārr-ō,	nārrā-re,	nārrā-vī,	nārrā-tum,	<i>I tell, relate.</i>
infrēn-ō,	infrēnā-re,	infrēnā-vī,	infrēnā-tum,	<i>I bridle.</i>
volner-ō,	volnerā-re,	volnerā-vī,	volnerā-tum,	<i>I wound.</i>
ar-ō,	arā-re,	arā-vī,	arā-tum,	<i>I plough.</i>

44. Examine the following :

1. Puella **rēginae** rosam dat, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the girl gives THE QUEEN a rose.} \\ \text{the girl gives a rose TO THE QUEEN.} \end{array} \right.$
2. Servus **dominō** medicīnam parat, *the slave prepares medicine FOR THE MASTER.*

Observe :

That in the above sentences **rosam** and **medicīnam**, being the objects *directly* affected, are in the *Accusative Case*, while **rēginae** and **dominō**, being the objects *indirectly* affected, are in the *Dative Case*.

EXERCISES.

45. I. 1. Nauta puellae fābulam nārrābat. 2. Incolae equōs infrēnābant. 3. Agricola taurum volnerābat. 4. Servus dominō medicīnam parābat. 5. Rēgina populō cibum dabat. 6. Agricolae terram arant. 7. Servus rēginae epistulam dabat. 8. Puellae amicis rosās pulchrās dant. 9. Serva rēginae medicīnam parābat. 10. Rosae albae agricolārum sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. The farmer's slave wounded the bull. 2. The good queen was giving food to the slaves. 3. We were bridling the horses. 4. The daughter of the queen prepares medicine for the slave. 5. He gave the queen a letter. 6. The girl gives a white rose to the queen. 7. Gaul is a country of Europe. 8. The sailor tells stories to the girls. 9. The queen gave a garden to the farmer.

46. RULE.—*The Indirect Object is in the Dative Case.*

LESSON VIII.

Second or O-Declension Continued: Neuter Nouns in -UM.

47. 1. The stem ends in -ō, weakened from an original -ō, which is found by dropping the -rum of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. *dōnōrum*: stem *dōno-*.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the -i of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. *dōni*: base *dōn-*.

	<i>dōnum, gift:</i> stem <i>dōno-</i> .	<i>dōnum bonum, good gift:</i> stem <i>dōno- bono-</i> .
SING.—Nom.	<i>dōnum,</i>	<i>dōnum bonum,</i>
Gen.	<i>dōni,</i>	<i>dōni boni,</i>
Dat.	<i>dōnō,</i>	<i>dōnō bonō,</i>
Acc.	<i>dōnum,</i>	<i>dōnum bonum,</i>
Voc.	<i>dōnum,</i>	<i>dōnum bonum,</i>
Abl.	<i>dōnō.</i>	<i>dōnō bonō.</i>
PLUR.—Nom.	<i>dōna,</i>	<i>dōna bona,</i>
Gen.	<i>dōnōrum,</i>	<i>dōnōrum bonōrum,</i>
Dat.	<i>dōnis,</i>	<i>dōnis bonis,</i>
Acc.	<i>dōna,</i>	<i>dōna bona,</i>
Voc.	<i>dōna,</i>	<i>dōna bona,</i>
Abl.	<i>dōnis.</i>	<i>dōnis bonis.</i>

Observe :

1. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Dat. and Abl. Sing. are alike.
3. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike and end in ā.
4. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.
5. That the Adjective and Noun must be of the same gender and in the same case.

48.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

dōnum, -ī, n. *gift*.
 bellum, -ī, n. *war*.
 rēgnum, -ī, n. *kingdom*.
 caelum, -ī, n. *sky, weather, heaven*.
 stella, -ae, f. *star*.

ADJECTIVES.

bonum, -ī, n. *good*.
 parvum, -ī, n. *small*.
 malum, -ī, n. *bad*.
 māgnum, -ī, n. *great, large*.
 grātum, -ī, n. *pleasant, pleasing, welcome*.

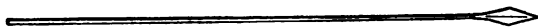
VERBS.

dēlect-ō,	dēlectā-re,	dēlectā-vī,	dēlectā-tum,	<i>I delight.</i>
port-ō,	portā-re,	portā-vī,	portā-tum,	<i>I carry.</i>
fug-ō,	fugā-re,	fugā-vī,	fugā-tum,	<i>I put to flight.</i>
pōstul-ō,	pōstulā-re,	pōstulā-vī,	pōstulā-tum,	<i>I ask for.</i>

EXERCISES.

49. I. 1. Rēgīna bellum māgnum parābat. 2. Filia nautae dōnum parvum portat. 3. Dōnum parvum puellās dēlectat. 4. Dōnum malum nōn est grātum. 5. Agricolae taurōs fugābant. 6. Fīliae nautārum cibum pōstulābant. 7. Dōna bona servīs grāta sunt. 8. Stellae caeli sunt pulchrae. 9. Rēgnum rēgīnam dēlectābat. 10. Servi dominō bonō cibum dant.

II. 1. The war is not welcome to the farmers. 2. Good people do not love war. 3. The gift of the queen delighted the girl. 4. The queen's kingdom is small. 5. The girls ask for small gifts. 6. We were carrying food for the horses. 7. Small gifts are welcome. 8. The sailor was telling a story to the inhabitants. 9. The townsmen prepare a great war. 10. The bad slave was wounding the farmer's horse.



LESSON IX.

First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

50. FUTURE INDICATIVE of the verb *amō*, *I love*: stem *amā-*.

- SING.—1. *amā-b-ō*, *I shall love or shall be loving.*
 2. *amā-bi-s*, *you will love or will be loving.*
 3. *amā-bi-t*, *he will love or will be loving.*
- PLUR.—1. *amā-bi-mus*, *we shall love or shall be loving.*
 2. *amā-bi-tis*, *you will love or will be loving.*
 3. *amā-bu-nt*, *they will love or will be loving.*

Note :

That the Future tense is formed by means of the stem *amā-*, with the tense-sign *-bi-* (third Pers. Plur. *-bu-*) and the personal endings (31, 2).

51.

Vocabulary.

<i>aqua</i> , -ae, f. <i>water</i> .	<i>frumentum</i> , -i, n. <i>grain</i> .
<i>templum</i> , -i, n. <i>temple</i> .—p. 42.	<i>pilum</i> , -i, n. <i>javelin</i> .
<i>pecūnia</i> , -ae, f. <i>money</i> .	<i>somnus</i> , -i, m. <i>sleep</i> .
<i>hasta</i> , -ae, f. <i>spear</i> .—p. 19.	<i>vicinus</i> , -i, m. <i>neighbor</i> .
<i>deus</i> , -i, m. <i>god</i> .	<i>gladius</i> , -i, m. <i>sword</i> .—p. 29.
<i>agit-ō</i> , <i>agitā-re</i> , <i>agitā-vi</i> , <i>agitā-tum</i> , <i>I chase, drive.</i>	
<i>tent-ō</i> , <i>tentā-re</i> , <i>tentā-vi</i> , <i>tentā-tum</i> , <i>I try, attempt.</i>	
<i>nec-ō</i> , <i>necā-re</i> , <i>necā-vi</i> , <i>necā-tum</i> , <i>I slay, kill.</i>	

52. Examine the following :

1. *Piūs taurum necat*, *he kills the bull WITH A JAVELIN* (instrument).
 2. *Venēnō rēginam necat*, *he kills the queen WITH POISON* (means).

EXERCISES.

53. I. 1. *Agricolae pilis taurōs agitābunt.* 2. *Nautae fugam tentābunt.* 3. *Incolās tubā vocābimus.* 4. *Templa Britanniae sunt magna.* 5. *Servī equīs frumentum dabunt.*

6. Somnus vicinum agricolae dēlectat. 7. Rēgīnae filiās educābis. 8. Servō dominī pecūniam dabit. 9. Puella aquam pōstulābit. 10. Agricola pilō servum volnerābat.

II. 1. The gifts of the queen will delight the girl. 2. The farmer calls the slaves with a trumpet. 3. The large temples of Gaul are pleasing to the sailors. 4. We shall wound the bull with a javelin. 5. You will give money to the sailors. 6. I shall not blame the little girls. 7. The queen will delight the girl with a gift. 8. The servant gives water to the horses. 9. The farmer's neighbor will kill the bull with a sword. 10. The beautiful temples were delighting the gods.

54. RULE.—*The Means or Instrument, with which anything is done, is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.*

LESSON X.

Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

55. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined like nouns, as follows :

bonus, good.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	bonus,	bona,	bonum,
Gen.	boni,	bonae,	boni,
Dat.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,
Acc.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
Voc.	bone,	bona,	bonum,
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō.
PLUR.—Nom.	boni,	bonae,	bona,
Gen.	bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum,
Dat.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
Acc.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona,
Voc.	boni,	bonae,	bona,
Abl.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

56. Examine the following :

1. Masc. { Amicus est bonus, *the friend is good.*
 { Nautae sunt validi, *the sailors are strong.*
2. Fem. { Insula est magna, *the island is large.*
 { Reginam bonam amamus, *we love the good queen.*
3. Neut. { Donum est gratum, *the gift is welcome.*
 { Dona sunt grata, *the gifts are welcome.*

Observe :

1. That the adjective is in the *same gender, number, and case* as the noun.
2. That the adjective usually has the same endings as the noun.
3. That the adjective, agreeing with a masculine noun of the first declension, *must have the masculine endings of the second declension.*

57.

Vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

bonus,	bona,	bonum, <i>good.</i>	magnus, magna, magnum, <i>great.</i>
superbus, superba, superbum, <i>proud.</i>	albus, alba, album, <i>white.</i>		
parvus, parva, parvum, <i>small.</i>	gratus, grata, gratum, <i>pleasing.</i>		
malus, mala, malum, <i>bad.</i>	validus, valida, validum, <i>strong.</i>		

VERBS.

vol-ō,	vol-ē-re,	vol-ē-vi,	vol-ē-tum,	<i>I fly.</i>
formid-ō,	formid-ē-re,	formid-ē-vi,	formid-ē-tum,	<i>I dread, fear.</i>

NOUNS.

columba, -ae, f. <i>dove.</i>	arātrum, -i, n. <i>plough.</i> —p. 59.
ala, -ae, f. <i>wing.</i>	oppidum, -i, n. <i>town.</i>

EXERCISES.

58. I. 1. Filia bona reginae superbae columbam parvam amat. 2. Servos malos tuba magna vocabimus. 3. Columbae alis parvis volant. 4. Agricolaes validi tauris non formidabunt. 5. Puellae nautae bono cibum dabant. 6.

Agricola arātrō terram arābit. 7. Oppida Britanniae sunt magna. 8. Taurum pilō magnō volnerābāmus. 9. Fīlia agricolae bonī nautam validum amābit. 10. Columbae parvae puellis grātae sunt.

II. 1. The farmer praises the strong sailors. 2. The bad slave does not love the good master. 3. White roses delight the proud queen. 4. We shall chase the bulls of the good farmers. 5. Large horses are strong. 6. The huts of the farmers are small. 7. The dove flies with wings. 8. The girl gives roses to the good sailor. 9. The weather is pleasing to the girls. 10. We did not fear the farmer's bull.

59. RULE.—*Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.*

LESSON XI.

Second or O-Declension Continued: Masculine Nouns in -ER and -IR.

60. 1. These nouns originally ended in **-us**, so that the stem ends in **-ō**, weakened from an original **ō**, which is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **puerōrum**: stem **puero-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-i** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **pueri**: base **puer-**.

	puer, boy : stem puero- .	ager, field : stem agro- .	vir, man : stem viro- .
SING. — Nom.	puer,	ager,	vir,
Gen.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Dat.	puerō,	agrō,	virō,
Ace.	puerum,	agrum,	virum,
Voc.	puer,	ager,	vir,
Abl.	puerō.	agrō.	virō.

PLUR.—Nom.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Gen.	puerōrum,	agrōrum,	virōrum,
Dat.	puerīs,	agrīs,	virīs,
Acc.	puerōs,	agrōs,	virōs,
Voc.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Abl.	puerīs.	agrīs.	virīs.

Observe :

1. That nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined like nouns in **-us**.
2. That nouns in **-er** and **-ir** have lost the case-ending in Nom. and Voc. Sing.

61.

Vocabulary.

puer, puerī, m. <i>boy</i> .	liberī, liberōrum, m. <i>children</i> .
ager, agrī, m. <i>field</i> .	caper, caprī, m. <i>goat</i> .
vir, virī, m. <i>man</i> .	culter, cultrī, m. <i>knife</i> .
aper, aprī, m. <i>wild-boar</i> .	liber, librī, m. <i>book</i> .
magister, magistri, m. <i>teacher</i> .	discipulus, -ī, m. <i>pupil</i> .

EXERCISES.

62. I. 1. Filiam magistrī amāmus. 2. Puerī aprōs necant. 3. Virī liberōs bonōs laudābant. 4. Magister puerō librum dabit. 5. Rēgina virō cultrum dabat. 6. Liberī agricolae cultrō caprum volnerābunt. 7. Librī magistrī sunt bonī. 8. Discipulī bonī magistrum nōn formīdābunt. 9. Aprōs gladiis necābimus. 10. Agricola arātrō agrum arābat.

II. 1. The boys were killing the wild-boar with knives. 2. The children give food to the goats. 3. Teachers love good books. 4. Good men do not love war. 5. The teacher will praise the good pupil. 6. The daughter of the queen gave the man a rose. 7. We love good children. 8. The teacher will tell the boys a story. 9. You were calling the men with a trumpet. 10. The fields of good farmers delight the doves.

LESSON XII.

Second Conjugation: Stems in -E.

63. PRESENT INDICATIVE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

- SING.—1. **moneō**, *I advise, do advise, or am advising.*
 2. **monēs**, *you advise, do advise, or are advising.*
 3. **moneat**, *he advises, does advise, or is advising.*
 PLUR.—1. **monēmus**, *we advise, do advise, or are advising.*
 2. **monētis**, *you advise, do advise, or are advising.*
 3. **moneant**, *they advise, do advise, or are advising.*

Observe :

1. That **moneō**, unlike **amō** (31, 1), retains **e** in the first person.
2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **monē-** to denote the persons and numbers (cf. 31, 2).

64. 1. The stem of a Latin verb is found by dropping the ending **-re** of the Infinitive active; e.g. **amāre**: stem **amā-**; **monēre**: stem **monē-**.

2. There are in Latin Four Conjugations, distinguished by the endings of the Infinitive Active, as follows :

First conj. ends in **-āre**, distinguished by the vowel **ā**.

Second “ “ “ **-ēre**, “ “ “ “ **ē** (long).

Third “ “ “ **-ere**, “ “ “ “ **ē** (short).

Fourth “ “ “ **-ire**, “ “ “ “ **i**.

3. Thus by knowing the Infin. Active, we can tell to what conjugation a verb belongs and how to conjugate it, for **ā-** verbs must be conjugated like **amō**, and **ē-** verbs like **moneō**, etc.

65.

Vocabulary.

iniūria, **ae**, f. *injury, wrong.*

diligentia, **-ae**, f. *diligence.*

multus, **-a, -um**, *much, pl. many.*

Rōmānus, **-i**, m. *a Roman.*

peritus, **-a, um**, *skilful.*

longus, **-a, -um**, *long.*

dēfessus, **-a, -um**, *tired, worn out.*

Græcus, **-i**, m. *a Greek.*

mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-ui,	mon-itur,	<i>I advise.</i>
habe-ō,	habē-re,	hab-ui,	hab-itur,	<i>I have.</i>
terre-ō,	terrē-re,	terr-ui,	terr-itur,	<i>I frighten.</i>

EXERCISES.

66. I. 1. Rōmānī Graecōs terrent. 2. Graeci pila longa habent. 3. Magister discipulōs monet. 4. Nauta perītus filiam bonam laudābit. 5. Agricolaē nautārum diligētiā laudant. 6. Equī rēgīnae sunt dēfessī. 7. Magister librōs multōs habet. 8. Aprī puellās terrent. 9. Diligētiā māgnam habēs. 10. Rēgīnae equōs multōs habent.

II. 1. We advise the boys. 2. You frighten the girls. 3. The farmer has a large field. 4. Teachers love the books of the Romans. 5. The daughter of the skilful farmer gives money to the tired sailor. 6. The girls have pretty roses. 7. You did not blame the bad slave. 8. The boys were killing the wild-boar with knives. 9. I have many horses. 10. The Romans fought with long spears.

LESSON XIII.

Adjectives in -ER, -(E)RA, -(E)RUM.

67.

miser, wretched, poor.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	miser,	misera,	miserum,
Gen.	miseri,	miserae,	miseri,
Dat.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō,
Acc.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,
Voc.	miser,	misera,	miserum,
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.
PLUR.—Nom.	miseri,	miserae,	misera,
Gen.	miserōrum,	miserarum,	miserōrum,
Dat.	miseris,	miseris,	miseris,
Acc.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera,
Voc.	miseri,	miserae,	misera,
Abl.	miseris,	miseris,	miseris.

piger, slow, lazy.

SING.—Nom.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Gen.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī,
Dat.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō,
Acc.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum,
Voc.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Abl.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.
PLUR.—Nom.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Gen.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum,
Dat.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs,
Acc.	pigrōs,	pigrīs,	pigra,
Voc.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Abl.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

Observe :

That adjectives in **-er** differ from those in **-us** only in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Masc., where the ending is lost (66).

68.**Vocabulary.**

asper, asper-a, asper-um, rough, harsh. **aeger, aegr-a, aegr-um, sick.**
liber, liber-a, liber-um, free. **niger, nigr-a, nigr-um, black.**
miser, miser-a, miser-um, wretched, poor. **piger, pigr-a, pigr-um, lazy.**
prosper, prosper-a, prosper-um, prosperous. **pulcher, pulchr-a, pulchr-um, beautiful, pretty.**

EXERCISES.

69. I. 1. Somnus grātus nautam aegrum dēlectat. **2.** Deus servae aegrae somnum dabit. **3.** Pecūnia virōs multōs dēlectat. **4.** Puerī pigrī librōs nōn amant. **5.** Virōs libērōs laudāmus. **6.** Filiae nautīs miserīs rosās dabunt. **7.** Puerī aprum nigrum gladiīs necābunt. **8.** Dea virum monet. **9.** Oppida prospera virōs libērōs habent. **10.** Aper asper puellās parvās terret.

II. 1. The Romans loved their beautiful temples. **2.** The daughter of the queen prepares medicine for the sick farmer. **3.** Lazy boys love sleep. **4.** The teacher gave the book to the lazy boy. **5.** The black wild-boar frightens

the poor man. 6. Sleep is welcome to gods and men. 7. The Greeks have beautiful towns. 8. The skilful teacher praises the diligence of the scholars. 9. The pretty girl will give food to the sick sailor. 10. We shall kill the wild-boar with javelins.

LESSON XIV.

Second or O-Declension Continued : Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**.
Ablative Case.

70.	filius, son :	ingenium, talent :	Vergilius, Vergil :
	stem filio- .	stem ingenio- .	stem Vergilio- .
SING.—Nom.	filius,	ingenium,	Vergilius,
Gen.	filii, filii,	ingeni, ingeni,	Vergili, Vergili,
Dat.	filio,	ingenio,	Vergilio,
Acc.	filium,	ingenium,	Vergilium,
Voc.	filii,	ingenium,	Vergili,
Abl.	filio.	ingenio.	Vergilio.
PLUR.—Nom.	filii,	ingenia,	
Gen.	filiorum,	ingeniorum,	
Dat.	filis,	ingenis,	
Acc.	filios,	ingenia,	
Voc.	filii,	ingenia,	
Abl.	filis.	ingenis.	

Observe :

1. That Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** usually have but one **i** in the *Genitive Singular*.

2. That proper Nouns in **-ius**, with **filius** and **genius**, always have the Voc. Sing. in **i** with accent unchanged ; e.g. **filii, geni, Vergili**.

3. That elsewhere these Nouns are regular.

71. Examine the following :

In oppidō sunt templa multa, *there are many temples* IN THE TOWN.

Libri multī sunt in **mēnsā**, *many books are* ON THE TABLE.

Observe :

That **in oppidō** and **in mēnsā** denote the *Place Where*.

72.

Vocabulary.

pirāta, -ae, m. *pirate*.schola, -ae, f. *school*.epistula, -ae, f. *letter*.via, viae, f. *road, street, way*.periculōsus, -a, -um, *perilous, dangerous*.acūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*.molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, grievous*.saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, savage*.super-ō, superā-re, superā-vi, superā-tum, *I conquer, overcome*.habit-ō, habitā-re, habitā-vi, habitā-tum, *I dwell, live*.mōnstr-ō, mōnstrā-re, mōnstrā-vi, mōnstrā-tum, *I show*.

EXERCISES.

73. I. 1. Columbae multae in silvīs sunt. 2. Agricolae in casis parvīs habitant. 3. Nautis viam periculōsam mōnstrāmus. 4. Aprī saevī agricolīs molestī sunt. 5. Filii rēgīnae sunt in scholā. 6. Incolae oppidī pirātās saevōs superābunt. 7. Stellae pulchrae in caelō sunt. 8. Servus dominō epistulam dat. 9. Virī multī sunt in viā lātā. 10. Aprum saevum pilō acūtō volnerābāmus.

II. 1. Farmers have not much money. 2. We shall dwell in a beautiful town. 3. The queen's son conquered the cruel pirates. 4. The lazy boy has a sharp sword. 5. The pretty roses are on the table. 6. The streets of the town are dangerous. 7. We shall give the farmer's letter to the queen. 8. The troublesome boy is in the woods. 9. The teacher's friend frightens the boy. 10. The cruel pirates are frightening the inhabitants of the town.

74. RULE.—*Place Where is put in the Ablative Case always with a Preposition.*



GLADIŪ.

LESSON XV.

Second Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

75. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of the Verb *monēō*, *I advise* :
stem *monē-*.

- SING.—1. *monē-ba-m*, *I was advising, advised.*
 2. *monē-bā-s*, *you were advising, advised.*
 3. *monē-ba-t*, *he was advising, advised.*
- PLUR.—1. *monē-bā-mus*, *we were advising, advised.*
 2. *monē-bā-tis*, *you were advising, advised.*
 3. *monē-ba-nt*, *we were advising, advised.*

Note :

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the stem *monē-*, with the tense-sign *-ba-* and the personal endings (31, 2).

76. Examine the following :

1. *Agricola ex oppidō fēstinat*, *the farmer hastens OUT OF TOWN.*
2. *Pueri ā scholā fēstinant*, *the boys hasten FROM SCHOOL.*
3. *Pueri dē mūrō pila iactant*, *boys hurl javelins DOWN FROM THE WALL.*

Observe :

That *ex oppidō*, *ā scholā*, and *dē mūrō* denote *Place Whence*.

77.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>mīrus</i> , -ī, m. <i>wall</i> . | <i>nūntius</i> , -ī, m. <i>messenger</i> . |
| <i>lēgātus</i> , -ī, m. <i>lieutenant, ambas-</i>
<i>sador</i> . | <i>concilium</i> , -ī, n. <i>council, meeting</i> . |
| <i>carrus</i> , -ī, m. <i>cart</i> .—p. 40. | <i>insula</i> , -ae, f. <i>island</i> . |
| <i>in</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> (prep. with Abl.). | <i>dē</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>down from</i> (prep. with
Abl.). |
| <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>away from</i> (prep.
with Abl.). | <i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>out of</i> (prep. with
Abl.). |
| <i>iactō</i> (1), <i>iactā-re</i> , <i>iactā-vi</i> , <i>iactā-tum</i> , <i>I hurl</i> . | |
| <i>movēō</i> (2), <i>movē-re</i> , <i>mōv-i</i> , <i>mō-tum</i> , <i>I move</i> . | |
| <i>fēstinō</i> (1), <i>fēstinā-re</i> , <i>fēstinā-vi</i> , <i>fēstinā-tum</i> , <i>I hasten</i> . | |

EXERCISES.

78. I. 1. Puerī ex agrīs fēstīnant. 2. Nūntius lēgātō epistulam dabit. 3. Virī multī in conciliō sunt. 4. Servus librōs dē mēnsā movēbat. 5. Incolae ab insulā pīrātās agitant. 6. Libērī multī in carrō māgnō sunt. 7. Dīscipulī ā scholā fēstīnant. 8. Agricola ē casā mēnsās movēbat. 9. Agricolae equōs bonōs infrēnābunt. 10. Oppidānī in oppidō habitant.

II. 1. We shall chase the bull away from the hut. 2. The men hurled the swords down from the wall. 3. The lieutenant had a plenty of swords. 4. The cause of the sailor is troublesome to his friends. 5. Many roses are in the queen's garden. 6. The farmer drives the horses out of the fields. 7. The sailor moved the money out of the hut. 8. The boy kills the wild-boar with a sharp sword. 9. Knives are dangerous to little boys. 10. You had many books on the table.

79. RULE.—*Place Whence is expressed by the Ablative with the Prepositions ab, dē, and ex.*

LESSON XVI.

Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.

80. FUTURE INDICATIVE of the Verb **monēō**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

SING.—1. monē-b-ō, *I shall advise or be advising.*
 2. monē-bi-s, *you will advise or be advising.*
 3. monē-bi-t, *he will advise or be advising.*

PLUR.—1. monē-bi-mus, *we shall advise or be advising.*
 2. monē-bi-tis, *you will advise or be advising.*
 3. monē-bu-nt, *they will advise or be advising.*

Note :

That the Future tense is formed by means of the stem **monē-**, with the tense-sign **-bi-** (3rd Pers. Plur. **-bu-**) and the personal endings (31, 2).

81. Examine the following :

1. Pueri in oppidum festinant, *boys hasten* INTO THE TOWN.
2. Pueri ad scholam festinant, *boys hasten* TO SCHOOL.

Observe :

1. That in these sentences *motion* is expressed.
2. That when motion is expressed, a preposition must be used with the Accusative Case.

Caution :

Carefully distinguish *to* denoting *Motion* from *to* denoting the *Indirect Object* (44).

82.

Vocabulary.

dēle-ō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	<i>I destroy.</i>
vide-ō,	vidē-re,	vid-ī,	vi-sum,	<i>I see.</i>
in, <i>into</i> (prep. with Acc.).			ad, <i>to</i> (prep. with Acc.).	

EXERCISES.

83. I. 1. Agricola ex agris in oppidum festinābunt. 2. Servi ad aquam aprōs agitābant. 3. In oppidō templa multa vidēbimus. 4. Pueri mēnsās pulchrās dēlēbunt. 5. Magister ex scholā in casam festinābat. 6. Puellae in viā lātā virōs multōs vidēbunt. 7. Dē mūrō gladiōs iactāmus. 8. Agricola aprōs pilis acūtis necābunt. 9. Puellae in casam rosās portābunt. 10. E casā in agrum mēnsās movēbimus.

II. 1. The sailors will destroy the temples in the town. 2. The boys hasten to the farmer's hut. 3. We were carrying food into the town. 4. The boys threw the javelins down from the wall to the earth. 5. We shall see the beautiful gifts on the table. 6. The slave was preparing food for the master. 7. The teacher was advising the good boys. 8. The queen gives the good girl a rose. 9. The

farmer will move his son into the hut. 10. The boys are hastening to the water.

84. RULE.—*Place Whither* (Motion to a Place) is expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition.

LESSON XVII.

Third Declension.

85. 1. The stem ends in a CONSONANT or in i.

2. Consonant stems are divided, according to their last letter, into *Mute Stems* and *Liquid Stems*.

86.

I. CONSONANT STEMS.

1. The stem ends in a Consonant and is found by dropping the **-um** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **principum**: stem **princip-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-is** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **principis**: base **princip-**.

3. In this division stem and base are alike.

87.

A. MUTE STEMS.

	princeps, chief: stem princip- .	rēx, king: stem rēg- .	mīles, soldier: stem milī- .	aetās, age: stem aetāt- .
Sg.—Nom.	princeps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Gen.	principis,	rēgis,	milītis,	aetātis,
Dat.	principi,	rēgi,	milīti,	aetāti,
Acc.	principem,	rēgem,	milītem,	aetātem,
Voc.	princeps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Abl.	principe.	rēge.	milite.	aetāte.
Pl.—Nom.	principēs,	rēgēs,	milītēs,	aetātēs,
Gen.	principum,	rēgum,	milītum,	aetātum,
Dat.	principibus,	rēgibus,	milītibus,	aetātibus,
Acc.	principēs,	rēgēs,	milītēs,	aetātēs,
Voc.	principēs,	rēgēs,	milītēs,	aetātēs,
Abl.	principibus.	rēgibus.	milītibus.	aetātibus.

Observe :

1. That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike.
3. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.
4. That **c** or **g** of the stem before Nom. ending **s** becomes **x**; e.g. **rēg-s** becomes **rēx**.
5. That **t** of the stem is dropped before the Nom. ending **s**; e.g. **aetāt-s** becomes **aetās**.
6. The vowel **i** of the stem often becomes **e** in the Nom. Singular.

88.

Vocabulary.

prīnceps, prīncipis, m. *chief*.

aetās, aetātis, f. *age*.

mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier*.—p. 36.

iūdex, iūdicis, m. *judge*.

rēx, rēgis, m. *king*.

eques, equitis, m. *horseman*.—p. 77.

equit-ō, equitā-re, equitā-vī, equitā-tum, *I ride* (on horseback).

oppugn-ō, oppugnā-re, oppugnā-vī, oppugnā-tum, *I storm, besiege, attack*.

EXERCISES.

89. I. 1. Rēgēs in silvā equitābant. 2. Mīlītēs oppida multa oppūgnant. 3. Mīlītēs prīncipis bonī sunt. 4. Fīlius rēgis mīlitī gladium dabit. 5. Rēgēs iūdicibus librōs dant. 6. Bella mala prīncipēs bonōs nōn dēlectant. 7. Rēgīna rēgī fābulās nārrābat. 8. Equī militum validī sunt. 9. Mīlītēs Rōmānōrum oppida māgna oppūgnābant. 10. Oppidānī rēgī dōna pulchra dabunt.

II. 1. We shall praise the good judges. 2. Soldiers do not love a proud king. 3. The daughter of the chief gave money to the soldiers. 4. We saw many soldiers in the town. 5. The pirates dread the king. 6. The horsemen ride into the forests. 7. The queen prepares medicine for the king. 8. The javelins of the soldiers are long. 9. The messenger will carry the letter to the king. 10. The age of the queen's daughter delights the chief.

LESSON XVIII.

Third Declension Continued.

90.

A. MUTE STEMS CONTINUED.

pēs, foot : *cūstōs, { guard, } : virtūs, valor* : *caput, head* :
keeper,

	stem <i>ped-</i> .	stem <i>cūstōd-</i> .	stem <i>virtūt-</i> .	stem <i>capit-</i> .
SING. — Nom.	<i>pēs,</i>	<i>cūstōs,</i>	<i>virtūs,</i>	<i>caput,</i>
Gen.	<i>pedis,</i>	<i>cūstōdis,</i>	<i>virtūtis,</i>	<i>capitis,</i>
Dat.	<i>pedi,</i>	<i>cūstōdi,</i>	<i>virtūti,</i>	<i>capiti,</i>
Acc.	<i>pedem,</i>	<i>cūstōdem,</i>	<i>virtūtem,</i>	<i>caput,</i>
Voc.	<i>pēs,</i>	<i>cūstōs,</i>	<i>virtūs,</i>	<i>caput,</i>
Abl.	<i>pede.</i>	<i>cūstōde.</i>	<i>virtūte.</i>	<i>capite.</i>
PLUR. — Nom.	<i>pedēs,</i>	<i>cūstōdēs,</i>	<i>virtūtēs,</i>	<i>capita,</i>
Gen.	<i>pedum,</i>	<i>cūstōdum,</i>	<i>virtūtum,</i>	<i>capitum,</i>
Dat.	<i>pedibus,</i>	<i>cūstōdibus,</i>	<i>virtūtibus,</i>	<i>capitibus,</i>
Acc.	<i>pedēs,</i>	<i>cūstōdēs,</i>	<i>virtūtēs,</i>	<i>capita,</i>
Voc.	<i>pedēs,</i>	<i>cūstōdēs,</i>	<i>virtūtēs,</i>	<i>capita,</i>
Abl.	<i>pedibus.</i>	<i>cūstōdibus.</i>	<i>virtūtibus.</i>	<i>capitibus.</i>

Observe :

1. That *d* and *t* of the stem are dropped before *s* of the Nom. Singular.
2. That neuters do not add *s* to form the Nom. Singular.
3. That *capit-* changes *i* of the stem to *u* in the Nom. Singular.
4. That in neuters the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of both numbers are alike.
5. That the case-endings here are the same as in the preceding paradigm.

91.

Vocabulary.

pēs, pedis, m. foot.
cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f. guard, keeper.
virtūs, -ūtis, f. valor, courage.
caput, capitis, n. head.
dux, ducis, m. leader.

lapis, -idis, m. stone.
obses, -idis, m. and f. hostage.
comes, -itis, m. and f. companion.
voluptās, -ātis, f. pleasure.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.

EXERCISES.

92. I. 1. Puer militum virtutem laudat. 2. Rēx comitibus dōna dabit. 3. Puerī malī cūstōdem formīdant. 4. Princeps obsidēs multōs pōstulābat. 5. Virtūs oppidānōrum ducem dēlectat. 6. Puer lapide agricolae caput volnerābit. 7. Equitēs rēgem servābunt. 8. Rēgēs et rēgīnae voluptātem amant. 9. Līberī ducis obsidēs sunt. 10. In agricolae agrōs lapidēs multōs portābimus.

II. 1. The soldiers praise the leader's courage. 2. You love good companions. 3. The horsemen will frighten the girls. 4. The townsmen hurled stones down from the wall upon the soldiers. 5. The guard will save the hostages. 6. The soldiers were bringing grain out of the fields into the town. 7. The king will not blame the tired soldiers. 8. The fortune of the chief delights the townsmen. 9. Horses have white feet. 10. The companions of the judge are in the town.



MILITĒS.

LESSON XIX.

First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

93. PERFECT INDICATIVE of the verb **amō**, *I love* : stem **amā-**.

Sg.—1. amā-v-l ,	<i>I loved, did love, have loved.</i>
2. amā-v-istl ,	<i>you loved, did love, have loved.</i>
3. amā-v-it ,	<i>he loved, did love, has loved.</i>
Pl.—1. amā-v-imus ,	<i>we loved, did love, have loved.</i>
2. amā-v-istis ,	<i>you loved, did love, have loved.</i>
3. amā-v-ērunt or amā-v-ēre ,	<i>they loved, did love, have loved.</i>

Observe :

That the perfect stem is formed by means of the stem **amā**, with the tense sign **-v-**, and to this stem **amāv-**, the personal endings with the connecting vowel **-i-** (ē in 3d Pl.) are added as follows :

SING.—1. -i = <i>I</i> .	PLUR.—1. -i-mus = <i>we</i> .
2. -i-sti = <i>you</i> .	2. -i-stis = <i>you</i> .
3. -i-t = <i>he</i> .	3. -ērunt or ēre = <i>they</i> .

94. Examine the following :

1. Puer **cum** **cūrā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH CARE.
2. Puer **māgnā** **cum** **cūrā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH GREAT CARE.
3. Puer **cūrā** **māgnā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH GREAT CARE.

Observe :

1. That the expressions in black type denote *Manner* and answer the question *How* ?
2. That in the first and second examples the preposition **cum** is used, but in the third example it is not used.

95.

Vocabulary.

castra, -ōrum (only pl.), n. *camp*.civitas, -ātis, f. *state*.locus, -i, m. *place*.numerus, i, m. *number*.proelium, -i, n. *battle*.arma, -ōrum (only pl.), n. *arms*.vāst-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I lay waste*.tene-ō, -ēre, -uī, ten-tum, *I hold, keep*.

EXERCISES.

96. I. 1. Rōmānī agrōs vāstāvērunt. 2. Nauta perītus filiam bonam laudāvit. 3. Magister māgnā cum dīligentiā puerōs monēbit. 4. Militēs ad castra arma portāvērunt. 5. Principēs civitātis in hōc (*this*) locō proelia multa pūgnāvērunt. 6. Dux in castrīs māgnū militum numerum tenet. 7. Puerōs et puellās cūrā multā ēducāvistī. 8. Equī validī in oppidum frūmentum portāvēre. 9. Dominus servōs māgnā tubā vocāvit. 10. In mēnsā sunt librī multī.

II. 1. The boys have wounded many wild-boars. 2. You did not blame the slave. 3. The farmers have been killing the wild-boar with knives. 4. The messenger carried the letter to the queen with great care. 5. The Romans had many arms in the camp. 6. We saw the chiefs of the states. 7. The soldiers of the king did not hold the place. 8. We shall move the arms from the camp into the town. 9. The Romans fought great battles. 10. The children of the king are in a cart.

97. RULE.—*Manner is expressed by the Ablative with the Preposition cum, with, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used.*

LESSON XX.

Third Declension Continued.

98.

B. LIQUID STEMS : STEMS IN *l* AND *n*.

cōnsul, consul :	leō, lion :	imāgō, likeness :	nōmen, name :
stem cōnsul-.	stem leōn-.	stem imāgin-.	stem nōmin-.

SING. — Nom.	cōnsul,	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Gen.	cōnsulis,	leōnis,	imāginis,	nōminis,
Dat.	cōnsulī,	leōnī,	imāginī,	nōminī,
Acc.	cōnsulem,	leōnem,	imāginem,	nōmen,
Voc.	cōnsul,	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	cōnsule.	leōne.	imāgine.	nōmine.
PLUR. — Nom.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Gen.	cōnsulūm,	leōnum,	imāginūm,	nōminūm,
Dat.	cōnsulibus,	leōnibus,	imāginibus,	nōminibus,
Acc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Voc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Abl.	cōnsulibus.	leōnibus.	imāginibus.	nōminibus.

Observe :

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in the other paradigms.
2. That the Nom. Sing. is formed without *s*.
3. That stems in *-n* drop *n* and change *i* to *o* in Nom. Sing., if masculine or feminine.
4. That neuter stems retain *n* and change *i* to *e* in Nom. Singular.

99.

Vocabulary.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. <i>consul</i> .	fūmen, fūminis, n. <i>river</i> .
leō, leōnis, m. <i>lion</i> .	fossa, -ae, f. <i>ditch</i> .
imāgō, imāginis, f. <i>likeness, statue</i> .	vallum, -i, n. <i>rampart</i> .
nōmen, nōminis, n. <i>name</i> .	altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep</i> .
carmen, carminis, n. <i>song</i> .	fīdus, -a, -um, <i>faithful</i> .
virgō, virginis, f. <i>maiden, virgin</i> .	laetus, -a, -um, <i>glad, joyful</i> .

firm-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-ātum,	<i>I strengthen.</i>
cant-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-atum,	<i>I sing.</i>

EXERCISES.

100. I. 1. Agri agricolārum fossam lātā habent. 2. Puellae carmina pulchra cantābunt. 3. Dux fossā et vallō locum firmāvit. 4. In templō nōmina et imāginēs cōnsulum Rōmānōrum vidēbimus. 5. Leō virginem terrēbit.

6. Flūmen est lātum et altum. 7. Cūstōdēs fidī obsidēs miserōs servāvērunt. 8. Filiī rēgis magistrō laetō librōs dabant. 9. Iūdicēs fidī populum Rōmānum dēlectāvērunt. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō firmābant.

II. 1. The boy wounded the lion's head with a stone. 2. The joyful maidens will praise the name of the leader. 3. The soldiers will strengthen the camp with a ditch and a rampart. 4. The faithful lions love their masters. 5. The townsmen hurled stones down from the wall into the ditch. 6. The consul will keep his soldiers in camp. 7. The joyful maidens sing songs to the gods. 8. In the temple are beautiful statues of the gods. 9. The teacher praises the name of the faithful boy. 10. Lions live in the forest.



CARRUS.

LESSON XXI.

Third Declension Continued. Accusative Case.

101. LIQUID STEMS CONTINUED : STEMS IN *r*.

	<i>labor, toil :</i> stem <i>labōr-</i> .	<i>pater, father :</i> stem <i>patr-</i> .	<i>aequor, sea :</i> stem <i>aequor-</i> .
SING. — Nom.	<i>labor,</i>	<i>pater,</i>	<i>aequor,</i>
Gen.	<i>labōris,</i>	<i>patris,</i>	<i>aequoris,</i>
Dat.	<i>labōri,</i>	<i>patri,</i>	<i>aequori,</i>
Acc.	<i>labōrem,</i>	<i>patrem,</i>	<i>aequor,</i>
Voc.	<i>labor,</i>	<i>pater,</i>	<i>aequor,</i>
Abl.	<i>labōre.</i>	<i>patre.</i>	<i>aequore.</i>

PLUR.—Nom.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Gen.	labōrum,	patrum,	aequorum,
Dat.	labōribus,	patribus,	aequoribus,
Acc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Voc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Abl.	labōribus.	patribus.	aequoribus.

Observe :

1. That the Nom. Sing. is formed without *s*.
2. That the stem *patr-* inserts *e* in the Nom. Singular.
3. That the case-endings here are the same as in the foregoing paradigms.

102. Examine the following :

1. Trēs hōrās labōrāvit, *he worked THREE HOURS.*
2. Fossa sex pedēs lāta est, *the ditch is SIX FEET wide.*
3. Flūmen decem pedēs altum est, *the river is TEN FEET deep.*
4. Mūrus pedēs sexāgintā longus est, *the wall is SIXTY FEET long.*
5. Castra decem mīlia passuum movet, *he moves the camp TEN MILES.*

Observe :

1. That the expressions in heavy type denote *Extent of Times or Space*, and answer the questions *How long? How wide? How deep? How far?*
2. That the adjectives *lātus*, *altus*, and *longus* must agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number, and Case*.

103.

Vocabulary.

sex (indeclinable), Num. adj., <i>six</i> .	hōra, -ae, f. <i>hour</i> .
decem (indeclinable), Num. adj., <i>ten</i> .	annus, -i, m. <i>year</i> .
clāmōr, -ōris, m. <i>shout, noise</i> .	victor, -ōris, m. <i>conqueror</i> .
māter, mātris, f. <i>mother</i> .	frāter, frātris, m. <i>brother</i> .
soror, -ōris, f. <i>sister</i> .	aequor, aequoris, n. <i>sea</i> .
labor, -ōris, m. <i>labor</i> .	arbor, -oris, f. <i>tree</i> .

mane-ō,	manē-re,	mān-si,	mān-sum,	<i>I remain.</i>
time-ō,	timē-re,	tim-ul,	———	<i>I fear.</i>

EXERCISES.

104. I. 1. Militēs in oppidō hōrās decem manēbunt. 2. Clāmōrēs puerōrum molesti sunt. 3. Liberī patribus et mātribus cārī sunt. 4. Annus hōrās multās longus est. 5. Frātrēs et sorōrēs amāmus. 6. Labor puerum bonum dēlectat. 7. Militēs victōris cōnsulem terrēbant. 8. Mūrus pedēs decem altus est. 9. Agricolaē ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāvērunt. 10. Aequora sunt longa et lāta.

II. 1. The teacher's brother blamed the noise of the scholars. 2. The children will see the conqueror in the town. 3. Mothers and fathers love their children. 4. We shall see long rivers and deep seas. 5. The ditch is ten feet long. 6. The conqueror will remain many years in the town. 7. We shall see many trees in the king's garden. 8. The wall is ten feet broad. 9. The boy wounded the soldier's head with a sword. 10. The soldiers were moving the arms from the town into the camp.

105. RULE.—*Extent of Time and Space is expressed by the Accusative.*



TEMPLUM.

LESSON XXII.

First Conjugation Continued.

106. 1. PLUPERFECT TENSE of the verb **amō**, *I love*: stem **amā-**.

- SING.—1. **amā-v-erā-m**, *I had loved.*
 2. **amā-v-erā-s**, *you had loved.*
 3. **amā-v-erā-t**, *he had loved.*

- PLUR.—1. **amā-v-erā-mus**, *we had loved.*
 2. **amā-v-erā-tis**, *you had loved.*
 3. **amā-v-erā-nt**, *they had loved.*

Observe :

That the Pluperfect tense is formed by means of the *Perfect stem amāv-*, with the tense sign **-era-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

2. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of the verb **amō**, *I love*: stem **amā-**.

- SING.—1. **amā-v-er-ō**, *I shall have loved.*
 2. **amā-v-er-i-s**, *you will have loved.*
 3. **amā-v-er-i-t**, *he will have loved.*

- PLUR.—1. **amā-v-er-i-mus**, *we shall have loved.*
 2. **amā-v-er-i-tis**, *you will have loved.*
 3. **amā-v-er-i-nt**, *they will have loved.*

Observe :

That the Future Perfect tense is formed by means of the *Perfect stem amāv-*, the tense-sign **-eri-**, and the personal endings (31, 2).

107.

Vocabulary.

Caesar , -aris, m. <i>Caesar.</i>	homō , -inis, m. <i>man.</i>
corōna , -ae, f. <i>crown.</i> —p. 95.	iniūria , -ae, f. <i>injury. wrong.</i>
poēta , -ae, m. <i>poet.</i>	patria , -ae, f. <i>native land.</i>

ornō , -āre,	avi , -ātum,	<i>I adorn.</i>
cēlō , -āre,	avi , -ātum,	<i>I conceal, hide.</i>
celebrō , -āre,	avi , -ātum,	<i>I honor, celebrate.</i>

EXERCISES.

108. I. 1. Caesar corōnā rēgīnam ōrnāverat. 2. Poētae carminibus patriam celebrāverint. 3. Amīcī rēgis iniūriās cēlāverant. 4. Hominēs in silvīs habitābant. 5. Miles pilō acūtō principem volnerāvit. 6. Caesar militibus frūmentum dabit. 7. Equitēs hōrās multās in oppidō manēbant. 8. Ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāverimus. 9. Iūdex annōs multōs iniūriam cēlāverat. 10. Poētae nōmen Caesaris laudāvērunt.

II. 1. Caesar had overcome the soldiers of the consul. 2. The Romans had adorned Caesar with a crown. 3. The townsmen will hide the arms in a hut. 4. The native land was dear to the Romans. 5. Many men have overcome wrongs. 6. The queen will adorn the daughter with roses. 7. We shall see many poets in the king's garden. 8. The friends of Caesar had much money. 9. Caesar kept the soldiers in camp many hours. 10. The soldiers had carried the arms from the town to the camp.

LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension Continued.

109.

LIQUID STEMS CONTINUED: STEMS IN *s*.

	<i>flōs, flower:</i> stem <i>flōr-</i> .	<i>iūs, right:</i> stem <i>iūr-</i> .	<i>genus, kind:</i> stem <i>gener-</i> .	<i>corpus, body:</i> stem <i>corpor-</i> .
SG.—Nom.	<i>flōs,</i>	<i>iūs,</i>	<i>genus,</i>	<i>corpus,</i>
Gen.	<i>flōris,</i>	<i>iūris,</i>	<i>generis,</i>	<i>corporis,</i>
Dat.	<i>flōrī,</i>	<i>iūrī,</i>	<i>generī,</i>	<i>corporī,</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrem,</i>	<i>iūs,</i>	<i>genus,</i>	<i>corpus,</i>
Voc.	<i>flōs,</i>	<i>iūs,</i>	<i>genus,</i>	<i>corpus,</i>
Abl.	<i>flōre.</i>	<i>iūre.</i>	<i>genere.</i>	<i>corpore.</i>
PL.—Nom.	<i>flōrēs,</i>	<i>iūra,</i>	<i>genera,</i>	<i>corpora,</i>
Gen.	<i>flōrum,</i>	<i>iūrum,</i>	<i>generum,</i>	<i>corporum,</i>
Dat.	<i>flōribus,</i>	<i>iūribus,</i>	<i>generibus,</i>	<i>corporibus,</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrēs,</i>	<i>iūra,</i>	<i>genera,</i>	<i>corpora,</i>
Voc.	<i>flōrēs,</i>	<i>iūra,</i>	<i>genera,</i>	<i>corpora,</i>
Abl.	<i>flōribus.</i>	<i>iūribus.</i>	<i>generibus.</i>	<i>corporibus.</i>

Observe :

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in the foregoing paradigms.

2. That *s* of the Nom. Sing. becomes *r* between two vowels.

110.

Vocabulary.

flōs, flōris, m. flower.

iūs, iūris, n. right.

genus, generis, n. kind.

corpus, corporis, n. body.

mōs, mōris, m. custom (pl. character).

volnus, vulneris, n. wound.

opus, operis, n. work.

tempus, temporis, n. time.

cūr-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I care for, heal (with Acc.).

opt-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I wish for, desire (with Acc.).

ōr-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I beg for, beg (with Acc.).

rog-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I ask for, ask (with Acc.).

EXERCISES.

111. I. 1. *Flōrēs multī in agrīs sunt.* 2. *Opera Caesaris laudāmus.* 3. *Iūdicibus bonīs iūs cārum est.* 4. *Volnera militum cūrābimus.* 5. *Tempora et mōrēs Rōmānōrum carminibus celebrāvimus.* 6. *Puellae nauītis flōrēs optāverant.* 7. *Puerī librōs bonōs ōrāverint.* 8. *In rēgis hortō multa flōrum genera vidēbimus.* 9. *Fīlia rēgīnae flōrēs rogat.* 10. *Opera Caesaris magistrīs grāta sunt.*

II. 1. The queen's daughter saw many flowers in the fields. 2. The wounds are troublesome to the soldiers. 3. Girls love many kinds of roses. 4. The soldiers of Caesar desired war. 5. Good judges love the rights of men. 6. The master had healed the slave's wound. 7. The farmer desires food for the horses. 8. The bodies of wild-boars and of lions are large. 9. Men blame the customs of the times. 10. The girls will have adorned the queen with flowers.

LESSON XXIV.

Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.

112. PERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

Sg.—1. mon-u-i,	<i>I advised, did advise, have advised.</i>
2. mon-u-isti,	<i>you advised, did advise, have advised.</i>
3. mon-u-it,	<i>he advised, did advise, has advised.</i>
Pl.—1. mon-u-imus,	<i>we advised, did advise, have advised.</i>
2. mon-u-istis,	<i>you advised, did advise, have advised.</i>
3. mon-u-erunt mon-u-ere,	or } <i>they advised, did advise, have advised.</i>

Observe :

1. That the personal endings are the same in all perfect tenses.

2. That **mon-u-i** is for **monē-v-i**, so that these verbs drop **e** in the perfect and change **v** to **u**.

3. **Dēleō**, *I destroy*, and compounds of **-pleō**, *I fill*, keep the **-v-**: e.g. **dēlēvī**, *I have destroyed*; **complēvī**, *I have filled*.

113. Examine the following :

1. Puer **patrem cultrum** rogat, *the boy asks his FATHER FOR A KNIFE.*
2. Magister **puerum litteras** docet, *the teacher teaches THE BOY LITERATURE.*
3. **Patrem sermōnem** cēlēvī, *I concealed THE TALK FROM MY FATHER.*

Observe :

1. That the expressions in heavy type are both in the *Accusative Case*, and that one denotes the *person*, the other the *thing*.

2. That in English a preposition is sometimes used.

114.

Vocabulary.

Aeduus, -i, m. *an Aeduan.*littera, -ae, f. *letter (of the alphabet):*sermō, -ōnis, m. *talk, conversation.* pl. *literature.*

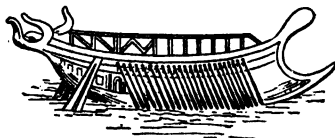
doce-ō,	docē-re,	doc-ui,	doc-tum,	<i>I teach.</i>
flāgit-ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ctum,	<i>I demand.</i>
d-ō,	da-re,	ded-i,	da-tum,	<i>I give.</i>

EXERCISES.

115. I. 1. Magister puerum librum pōstulat. 2. Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 3. Liberōs litterās docuimus. 4. Frātrēs patrem sermōnem cēlāverant. 5. Caesar in castris equōs multōs habuerit. 6. Numerus mīlitum equitēs terrēbat. 7. Caesar nūntiō pecūniam dederat. 8. Cōsul in castris hōrās multās mānserat. 9. Mūrus oppidī pedēs decem lātus est. 10. Agricolae cum cūrā ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāverant.

II. 1. The teacher taught the girls the names of flowers. 2. Caesar asked the state for soldiers. 3. The soldiers had concealed their wounds from the general. 4. The horsemen of Caesar had put to flight the consul's soldiers. 5. The boy will ask the teacher for a book. 6. The queen had given many flowers to the chief's daughter. 7. We shall teach the pupils literature. 8. The number of the soldiers did not frighten Caesar. 9. The horsemen had fought (for) six hours. 10. The boy carries his books from the hut into the school.

116. RULE.—*Verbs meaning Ask, Demand, Teach, and Conceal take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing.*



NĀVIS.

LESSON XXV.

Third Declension Continued.

117.

II. I-STEMS.

1. The stem ends in *i* and is found by dropping the *-um* of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. *collium* : stem *colli-*.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the *is* of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. *collis* : base *coll-*.

	<i>collis, hill :</i> stem <i>colli-</i> .	<i>turris, tower :</i> stem <i>turri-</i> .	<i>tussis, cough :</i> stem <i>tussi-</i> .	<i>vulpes, fox :</i> stem <i>vulpi-</i> .
Sg.—Nom.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>tussis,</i>	<i>vulpes,</i>
Gen.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>tussis,</i>	<i>vulpis,</i>
Dat.	<i>collī,</i>	<i>turri,</i>	<i>tussi,</i>	<i>vulpi,</i>
Acc.	<i>collem,</i>	<i>turrim (em),</i>	<i>tussim,</i>	<i>vulpem,</i>
Voc.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>tussis,</i>	<i>vulpes,</i>
Abl.	<i>colle.</i>	<i>turri (e).</i>	<i>tussi.</i>	<i>vulpe.</i>
Pl.—Nom.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>tussēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>
Gen.	<i>collium,</i>	<i>turrium,</i>	<i>tussium,</i>	<i>vulpium,</i>
Dat.	<i>collibus,</i>	<i>turribus,</i>	<i>tussibus,</i>	<i>vulpibus,</i>
Acc.	<i>collis (ēs),</i>	<i>turris (ēs),</i>	<i>tussis (ēs),</i>	<i>vulpis (ēs),</i>
Voc.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>tussēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>
Abl.	<i>collibus.</i>	<i>turribus.</i>	<i>tussibus.</i>	<i>vulpibus.</i>

Observe :

1. That the case-endings are the same as in the preceding paradigms.

2. That in the Acc. Plur. *i*-stems have either *-is* or *-ēs*.

3. That *tussis* has *-im* in the Acc. Sing. and *-i* in the Abl. Sing.

118.

Vocabulary.

collis, -is, m. hill.

hostis, -is, m. enemy.

mēnsis, -is, m. month.

finis, -is, n. end ; pl. territory, boundary.

virtūs, -ūtis, f. valor, courage.

vulpes, -is, f. fox.

turris, -is, f. tower.

ignis, -is, m. fire.

avis, -is, f. bird.

nāvis, -is, f. ship.—p. 47.

EXERCISES.

119. I. 1. Hostēs collem tenuērunt. 2. Caesar in hostium finibus mēnsēs sex mānsit. 3. Puer in agrō vulpem vidēbit. 4. Dux mēnsēs multōs in oppidō parvō cōsulem tenēbat. 5. In colle sunt turrēs multae. 6. In silvā avēs pulchrās vidēbāmus. 7. Caesar igne hostium agrōs vāstāvit. 8. Hostēs nāvēs multās in aequore habent. 9. Nautae virtūte māgnā nāvēs servāverant. 10. Māter māgnā cum dīlign-tiā fīlium monuit.

II. 1. We shall see many foxes in the woods. 2. Caesar stormed the towers of the enemy. 3. The soldiers held the hill many hours. 4. Many ships are in the water. 5. The soldiers had stormed many towns in the boundaries of the Aeduans. 6. The bad boy killed the bird with a stone. 7. The enemy concealed the ships from Caesar. 8. We saw large fires in the forests. 9. The soldiers had carried many arms to the hill. 10. The boy chased the fox out of the woods.

LESSON XXVI.

Third Declension Continued. Ablative Case.

120.

I-STEMS CONTINUED.

	<i>mare, sea :</i> stem <i>marī-</i> .	<i>animal, animal :</i> stem <i>animālī-</i> .	<i>calcar, spur :</i> stem <i>calcārī-</i> .
SING.—Nom.	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>	<i>calcar,</i>
Gen.	<i>maris,</i>	<i>animālīs,</i>	<i>calcārīs,</i>
Dat.	<i>marī,</i>	<i>animālī,</i>	<i>calcārī,</i>
Acc.	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>	<i>calcar,</i>
Voc.	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>	<i>calcar,</i>
Abl.	<i>marī.</i>	<i>animālī.</i>	<i>calcārī.</i>
PLUR.—Nom.	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālīa,</i>	<i>calcārīa,</i>
Gen.	<i>marum,</i>	<i>animālīum,</i>	<i>calcārīum,</i>
Dat.	<i>maribus,</i>	<i>animālībus,</i>	<i>calcārībus,</i>
Acc.	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālīa,</i>	<i>calcārīa,</i>
Voc.	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālīa,</i>	<i>calcārīa,</i>
Abl.	<i>maribus.</i>	<i>animālībus.</i>	<i>calcārībus.</i>

Observe :

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in foregoing paradigms.
2. That some stems in **-al** and **-ar** lose the **-e** in the Nom. Singular.

121.

Vocabulary.

mare, **-is**, n. *sea*.

animal, **-ālis**, n. *animal, living being*.

calcar, **-āris**, n. *spur*.

cubile, **-is**, n. *couch*.

nāvāle, **-is**, n. *dock-yard*.

ferrum, **-i**, n. *iron-sword*.

IDIOMS.

terrā marique, *by land and sea*.

ferrō ignique, *by fire and sword*.

mōre rēgis, *like a king*.

122. Examine the following :

1. Rex cum comitibus equitat, *the king rides WITH HIS COMPANIONS*,
2. Rēgina cum filiā ambulat, *the queen walks WITH HER DAUGHTER*.
3. Caesar cum militibus mānsit, *Caesar remained WITH THE SOLDIERS*.

Observe carefully :

1. That the expressions in heavy type denote the persons by whom the king, queen, or Caesar is accompanied.
2. That the preposition **cum** is always used.

EXERCISES.

123. I. 1. Caesar terrā marique hostēs fugāverat. 2. In rēgis hortō animālia multa vidēbimus. 3. Equitēs calcāria māgna habent. 4. Filiā rēginae cubilia ōrnābit. 5. Caesar in nāvālī nāvēs multās habet. 6. Hostēs ferrō ignique Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstāverint. 7. Nauta pueris fābulam grātām nārrāvit. 8. Caesar, mōre rēgis, Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 9. Dominus filios tubā vocat. 10. Filiā agricolam rosās ōrāvit.

- II. 1. Large animals are carrying grain into the town.
2. The king will lay waste the enemy's fields with fire and sword.
3. The consul conquered the enemy by land and

sea. 4. We saw many ships of the Romans in the dock-yards. 5. Horses dread sharp spurs. 6. The maidservant prepares the couch for the queen. 7. The tired horses are bringing the grain from the fields into the town. 8. The queen rides with her children into the fields. 9. We shall remain in the hut with the sons of the farmer. 10. The boy has wounded the horse with a stone.

124. RULE.—*Accompaniment is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition cum.*

LESSON XXVII.

Second Conjugation Continued.

125. PLUPERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

- SING.—1. mon-u-**era-m**, *I had advised.*
 2. mon-u-**erā-s**, *you had advised.*
 3. mon-u-**era-t**, *he had advised.*

- PLUR.—1. mon-u-**erā-mus**, *we had advised.*
 2. mon-u-**erā-tis**, *you had advised.*
 3. mon-u-**era-nt**, *they had advised.*

Observe :

That the Pluperfect tense is formed by means of the perfect stem **monu-**, with the tense-sign **-era-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

2. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

- SING.—1. mon-u-**erō**, *I shall have advised.*
 2. mon-u-**eris**, *you will have advised.*
 3. mon-u-**erit**, *he will have advised.*

- PLUR.—1. mon-u-**erimus**, *we shall have advised.*
 2. mon-u-**eritis**, *you will have advised.*
 3. mon-u-**erint**, *they will have advised.*

Observe :

That the Future Perfect tense is formed by means of the perfect stem **monu-**, with the tense-sign **-eri-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

126.

Vocabulary.

<i>hasta</i> , -ae, f. <i>spear</i> .				<i>gaudium</i> , -i, n. <i>joy</i> .
<i>poëta</i> , -ae, m. <i>poet</i> .				<i>audācia</i> , -ae, f. <i>boldness</i> .
<i>pōculum</i> , -i, n. <i>cup</i> .—p. 54.				<i>praeda</i> , -ae, f. <i>booty</i> .
<i>vīnum</i> , -i, n. <i>wine</i> .				<i>aeger</i> , <i>aegra</i> , <i>aegrum</i> , <i>sick</i> .
<i>ventus</i> , -i, m. <i>wind</i> .				<i>aureus</i> , -a, -um, <i>golden</i> , <i>gold</i> .
<i>report</i> -ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>I gain, win, bring back</i> .
<i>expect</i> -ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>I await, expect</i> .
<i>administr</i> -ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>I manage, serve</i> .
<i>appropinqu</i> -ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>I approach</i> .

EXERCISES.

127. I. 1. *Militēs in oppidum praedam multam reportant.* 2. *Caesar poëtae pōculum aureum dederat.* 3. *Rōmānī pilis et hastis pūgnāvērunt.* 4. *Ventus māgnus in mare nāvem portābat.* 5. *Caesar māgnā cum audāciā militēs hostium dēlēverat.* 6. *Magister puerum litterās docuerit.* 7. *Homō aeger māgnō cum gaudiō vīnum exspectat.* 8. *Māter cum cūrā filium monuerat.* 9. *Taurī filiās agricolae terruerint.* 10. *In oppidō hastās multās tenuerimus.*

II. 1. *The poet tells a pleasing tale to the sick king.* 2. *Caesar approached the town with many horsemen.* 3. *The consul had managed the war with great boldness.* 4. *The soldiers will have won much booty in the war.* 5. *The king had kept the soldiers in camp for many months.* 6. *You will have taught the children of the chief.* 7. *The golden cup delights the girl.* 8. *The sailor awaits the wind with joy.* 9. *We had advised the judge's sons.* 10. *Caesar had conquered the enemy by land and sea.*

LESSON XXVIII.

Third Declension Continued. Ablative Case.

128.

II. I-STEMS CONTINUED.

urbs, city : arx, citadel : pars, part : mōns, mountain :
 stem urbi-. stem arci-. stem parti-. stem monti-.

SING.—Nom.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Gen.	urbis,	arcis,	partis,	montis,
Dat.	urbi,	arci,	parti,	monti,
Acc.	urbem,	arcem,	partem,	montem,
Voc.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Abl.	urbe.	arce.	parte.	monte.
PLUR.—Nom.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Gen.	urbium,	arcium,	partium,	montium,
Dat.	urbibus,	arcibus,	partibus,	montibus,
Acc.	urbēs (is),	arcēs (is),	partēs (is),	montēs (is),
Voc.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Abl.	urbibus.	arcibus.	partibus.	montibus.

Observe carefully :

1. The endings here are the same as in the foregoing paradigms.
2. That these words are monosyllables with stems in two consonants.
3. That such words and stems in **-ns** and **-rs** have **-ium** in the Gen. Plural.

129.

Vocabulary.

urbs, urbis, f. city.
 arx, arcis, f. citadel.
 pars, partis, f. part.
 mōns, montis, m. mountain.
 aestās, aestātis, f. summer.

nox, noctis, f. night.
 pāx, pācis, f. peace.
 hiems, hiemis, f. winter.
 lūx, lūcis, f. light.
 piscis, -is, m. fish.

aedific-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I build.
 proper-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I hasten.

130. Examine carefully the following :

1. **Hieme** in urbe habitāmus, IN WINTER, *we live in the city.*
2. **Primā lūce** urbem oppugnābimus, AT DAYBREAK, *we shall storm the city.*
3. **Sex hōris** hostēs fugābit, WITHIN SIX HOURS, *he will rout the enemy.*

Observe :

That the expressions in heavy type denote *Time* and answer the questions *When? Within What time?*

EXERCISES.

131. I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Primā lūce ex urbe properāvimus. 3. Militēs Caesaris māgnam hostium partem in montibus necāverant. 4. Aeduī Caesarem pācem rogāverant. 5. Noctēs hieme sunt longae, aestāte nōn longae. 6. Piscēs in marī sunt. 7. In urbe arcem māgnam aedificāvērunt. 8. Rēx cum rēgīnā in hortō hōrās multās ambulābat. 9. Cōsul ex urbe ad castra cum militibus properāverit. 10. Magister māgnā cum cūrā puerōs litterās docēbat.

II. 1. Men work in winter and in summer. 2. Caesar's soldiers held the mountain at daybreak. 3. The Romans had built a beautiful citadel. 4. A great part of the horsemen had hastened to the mountain. 5. They have built many cities in ten years. 6. The Romans fought with the Aeduans many hours. 7. The consul had asked the enemy for peace. 8. The tired horses were hastening from the fields to the town. 9. The soldiers of the consul fought with great valor. 10. Good wine is pleasing to the sick man.

132. RULE.—*Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.*



PŌCULUM.

LESSON XXIX.

Third Declension Continued. Rules of Gender. Questions.

133. 1. MASCULINE are nouns in **-ō** (save those in **-dō** and **-gō** and abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**), **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and **-ēs** increasing in the Genitive (i.e. **-ēs**, **-itis**; **-ēs**, **-idis**).

2. FEMININE are nouns in **-dō** and **-gō** and abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**, nouns in **-ās**, **-ēs** not increasing in the Genitive (i.e. **-ēs**, **-is**), in **-ūs**, **-a**, preceded by a consonant, and in **-x**.

3. NEUTER are nouns in **-a**, **-e**, **-ī**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, **-ūs**.

134. 1. To ask a question in English, we place the Nominative after the verb and often use the auxiliary verb *do*, *did*, which must *not* be translated into Latin ; e.g.:

Are you good ?

Does the king hasten ?

Did Caesar conquer ?

2. In Latin, INTERROGATIVE WORDS are used ; e.g. :

-ne (enclitic), expecting answer *yes* or *no*.

nōnne, expecting answer *yes*.

num, expecting answer *no*.

3. **-Ne** is joined to the first word in the sentence : **nōnne** and **num** stand at the head of the sentence, but are not joined to any word.

135. Examine the following :

1. **Sunt-ne puellae bonae ?** *are the girls good ?* (Asking simply for information. Answer may be *yes* or *no*.)

2. **Nōnne rex festinat ?** *does not the king hasten ?* (*Yes*.)

3. **Num Caesar superavit ?** *did Caesar conquer ?* (*No*.)

EXERCISES.

136. I. 1. Sunt-ne pueri in scholā? 2. Nōne agricola equōs validōs habet? 3. Num dux Caesarem superāvit? 4. Vāstābunt-ne Rōmānī agrōs hostium ferrō ignīque? 5. Nōne rēx cum rēgīnā ambulābat? 6. Nūntius ad rēgem epistulam portāverat. 7. Labōrant-ne hominēs hieme et aestāte? 8. Rōmānī cum Aeduīs hōrās sex pūgnāverant. 9. Māter bona cum cūrā filiōs monet. 10. Num Caesar cum gaudiō oppidum dēlēvit?

II. 1. Are there many guards in the citadel? 2. Will a good boy wound the horse with a stone? 3. Did the horsemen hasten from the city by night? 4. The Aeduans have asked Caesar for peace. 5. Are many men in the fields in winter? 6. The soldiers had fought many hours with great valor. 7. Was the king walking in the garden with the queen? 8. The good slave prepared medicine for his sick master. 9. The good judge frightened the cruel men. 10. The maidens will celebrate the name of Caesar in song.

LESSON XXX.

Third Conjugation: Stems in a Consonant or I.

137. 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE of *emō, I buy*: stem *emē-*.

SING. — 1. *em-ō, I buy, am buying, or do buy.*
 2. *emi-s, you buy, are buying, or do buy.*
 3. *emi-t, he buys, is buying, or does buy.*

PLUR. — 1. *emi-mus, we buy, are buying, or do buy.*
 2. *emi-tis, you buy, are buying, or do buy.*
 3. *emu-nt, they buy, are buying, or do buy.*

Observe:

1. That *e* of stem disappears and *-i-* is changed to *-u-* in the 3d Pers. Plural.

2. That the personal endings (31, 2) are the same here as in other verbs.

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of **emō**, *I buy*: stem **emē-**.

- SING.—1. **emē-ba-m**, *I was buying, bought.*
 2. **emē-bā-s**, *you were buying, bought.*
 3. **emē-ba-t**, *he was buying, bought.*

- PLUR.—1. **emē-bā-mus**, *we were buying, bought.*
 2. **emē-bā-tis**, *you were buying, bought.*
 3. **emē-ba-nt**, *they were buying, bought.*

Observe :

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **emē-**, with the tense-sign **-bā-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

138.

Vocabulary.

cohors, -tis , f. <i>cohort.</i>	flūmen, -inis , n. <i>river.</i>
ōrdō, -inis , m. <i>order, rank, row.</i>	iter, itineris , n. <i>march, journey.</i>
pedites, peditis , m. <i>foot-soldier.</i>	legiō, -ōnis , f. <i>legion.</i>

em-ō ,	em-e-re ,	ēm-I ,	ēm-p-tum ,	<i>I buy.</i>
reg-ō ,	reg-e-re ,	rēx-I ,	rēct-um ,	<i>I rule.</i>
dūo-ō ,	dūo-e-re ,	dūx-I ,	duct-um ,	<i>I lead.</i>
mitt-ō ,	mitt-e-re ,	mis-I ,	miss-um ,	<i>I send.</i>

EXERCISES.

139. I. 1. Caesar ad castra cohortēs sex mittit. 2. Aedui frumentum multum emēbant. 3. Regis-ne in rēgnō? 4. In urbem sex peditum ordinēs dūcimus. 5. Num ad flūmen peditēs dūcēbās? 6. Est-ne iter ad oppidum longum? 7. Cōsulēs peditēs et equitēs dūcunt. 8. Rōmānī in hostium finēs legiōnēs multās mittēbant. 9. Militēs legiōnis mittēbātis. 10. Hominem ad iūdicem dūcō.

II. 1. Is Caesar buying much grain? 2. He was leading ten cohorts into the territory of the enemy. 3. The consul hastened the march from the city to the camp. 4. The lieutenant sent a legion to Caesar. 5. Are you ruling the horses? 6. Were you buying corn in the fields? 7.

We lead many ranks of soldiers to war. 8. Caesar sent six legions with the lieutenant. 9. He was leading the cohorts with great care. 10. We have seen many fish in the river.

LESSON XXXI.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

140. A few stems in -i preceded by r (cr, tr, br) have three terminations.

acer, sharp, keen, eager : stem, *ācri-*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Gen.	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
Dat.	ācri,	ācri,	ācri,
Acc.	ācrēm,	ācrēm,	ācre,
Voc.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Abl.	ācri,	ācri,	ācri.
PLUR.—Nom.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācia,
Gen.	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
Dat.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Acc.	ācrēs (or ācris),	ācrēs (or ācris),	ācia,
Voc.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācia,
Abl.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus.

Observe :

1. That the endings of adjectives of the third declension are the same as those of nouns.
2. That adjectives whose Nom. Sing. Neut. ends in -e, have -ī in the Abl. Singular.

141.

Vocabulary.

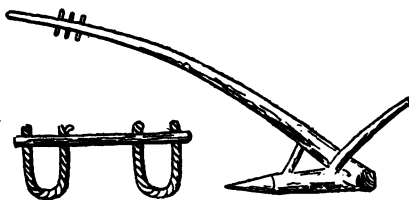
acer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager. *campester, -tris, -tre, level, flat.*
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick. *equester, -tris, -tre, of the cavalry,*
proellum, -i, n. battle. *civis, -is, m. citizen. [equestrian.]*

pōn-ō, pōn-e-re, pos-ui, pos-itu-m, I place, put.
ag-ō, ag-e-re, ēg-i, ēg-tu-m, I drive, lead.
dēfend-ō, dēfend-e-re, dēfend-i, dēfend-um, I defend, ward off.

EXERCISES.

142. I. 1. Hostēs ācrēs agrōs campestrēs vāstāvērunt. 2. Equitēs celerēs proelium equestre pūgnāverant. 3. Caesar in Aeduōrum finibus castra pōnēbat. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus Aeduōrum finēs dēfendunt. 5. Hostēs terrā marique fugābimus. 6. Agricolaē ab leōnibus liberōs dēfendunt. 7. Cīvēs iūdicem bonum amant. 8. In Rōmānōrum templīs imāginēs deōrum multās vidēbimus. 9. Caesar ad lēgātum equitēs celerēs mittēbat. 10. Cōsul in castris hostium lēgātōs nōn tenēbit.

II. 1. The chief is leading the soldiers to battle. 2. The soldiers are defending the town from the enemy. 3. Caesar conquered the enemy [in] a cavalry fight. 4. The leader pitched his camp in a level field. 5. The eager citizens hasten to war. 6. The soldiers were buying grain in the town. 7. Men labor in winter and in summer. 8. At daybreak, Caesar sends the lieutenant with the horse-men to the mountain. 9. The Aeduans were defending their temples from the Romans. 10. The consul leads his swift cohorts out of town at night.



ARĀTRUM ET IUGUM.

LESSON XXXII.

Adjectives of Two Terminations. Ablative.

143. Adjectives of two terminations have the same form for the masculine and feminine genders, but differ in the neuter in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of the Singular and Plural.

facilis, easy: stem *facili-*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facile</i> ,	N. <i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,
G. <i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facilis</i> ,	G. <i>facilium</i> ,	<i>facilium</i> ,	<i>facilium</i> ,
D. <i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	D. <i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> ,
Ac. <i>facilem</i> ,	<i>facilem</i> ,	<i>facile</i> ,	Ac. <i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,
V. <i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facile</i> ,	V. <i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,
Ab. <i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	Ab. <i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> ,

Observe :

1. That the endings of adjectives are the same as those of nouns.
2. That adjectives whose Nom. Sing. Neut. ends in *-e*, have *-ī* in the Ablative.

144.

Vocabulary.

facilis, -is, -e, easy.

brevis, -is, -e, short.

gravis, -is, -e, heavy, severe.

occupō,

-āre,

-avi,

omnis, -is, -e, every, all.

fortis, -is, -e, brave.

lēx, lēgis, f. law.

-tum, I seize, take.

invō,

invā-re,

iuvō,

iuv-tum,

I help, aid (Acc.).

prae-cedō,

-ere,

-cē-si,

-cē-sum,

I surpass, excel.

145. Examine the following :

1. *Omnēs linguā differunt, all differ IN SPEECH.*
2. *Helvētīi Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, the Helvetians surpass the Gauls IN VALOR.*

Observe :

That the expressions in black type denote *in what respect* and are in the *Ablative Case*.

EXERCISES.

146. I. 1. Hominēs omnēs amicōs iuvant. 2. Militēs fortēs oppidum occupāverunt. 3. Brevi tempore Rōmānī bella gravia pūgnābunt. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Mūrus urbis decem pedēs altus est. 6. Caesar militēs fortēs et validōs habuit. 7. Primā lūce lēgātus ad Caesarem nūntium mittit. 8. Oppidānī numerō et virtūte pirātās prae-cēdunt. 9. Magister discipulō aquilam auream dederat. 10. Māter filiōs fortēs litterās facilēs docet.

II. 1. The townsmen honor the brave leader with songs. 2. The lieutenant sends all the legions to Caesar. 3. The horsemen will save the consul with great joy. 4. In every town we shall see many temples. 5. The farmer's horses carry the grain into the town by an easy road. 6. Do brave soldiers fear severe wars? 7. In a short time Caesar conquered all the pirates. 8. Soldiers are great and strong in war. 9. The boy wounded the head of his companion with a sharp stone. 10. Caesar surpasses all in courage.

147. RULE.—*The Ablative is used to denote in What Respect the meaning of a Verb, Adjective, or Noun is limited.*

LESSON XXXIII.

Third Conjugation Continued. Ablative.

148. FUTURE TENSE of the verb *emō*, *I buy*: stem *eme-*.

SING.—1. *ema-m*, *I shall buy or be buying.*
 2. *emē-s*, *you will buy or be buying.*
 3. *eme-t*, *he will buy or be buying.*

PLUR.—1. *emē-mus*, *we shall buy or be buying.*
 2. *emē-tis*, *you will buy or be buying.*
 3. *eme-nt*, *they will buy or be buying.*

Observe :

1. That the future of the 3d conjugation is *not* formed with the sign **-bo-**.

2. That in the 1st pers. sing. the vowel is **-a-**, but elsewhere **-ē-**.

149. Examine the following :

1. Hominēs **dēlictō** dolent, *men are sorry* ON ACCOUNT OF SIN.

2. Caesar **viētōriā** laetus est, *Caesar is glad* BECAUSE OF THE VICTORY.

Observe :

That the expressions in black type denote the *Cause* and answer the questions *Why? On account of What?*

150.

Vocabulary.

viētōria, -ae, f. *victory*.

amor, -ōris, m. *love*.

fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune*.

multitūdō, -inis, f. *multitude*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety*.

laus, **laudis**, f. *praise*.

doleō, -ēre, **dol-uī**, — *I am sorry, am pained, am hurt.*

cōnfirmō, -ēre, **-ēvi**, **-ātum**, *I strengthen, establish.*

re-linquō, -ere, **-liq-uī**, **-lio-tum**, *I leave, leave behind.*

EXERCISES.

151. I. 1. Caesar in oppidō māgnam mīlitum multitūdinem relinquet. 2. Hominēs volneribus gravibus dolēbunt. 3. Militēs Caesaris fortūnā bonā laetī sunt. 4. Amor patriae est salūs cīvitatīs. 5. Laudēs cōsulis oppidānōs dēlectābunt. 6. Dux in urbem equitēs fortēs mittet. 7. In agrīs frūmentum emēmus. 8. In urbem mīlitēs dūcēs. 9. In Aeduōrum agrīs castra pōnētis.

II. 1. The Romans made peace with the states. 2. I shall send a letter to the king. 3. The sailors will not leave the ship. 4. The soldiers were glad on account of Caesar's safety. 5. The Romans built many temples on account of their love for the gods (Gen.). 6. Brave men are not sorry for the praise of a great commander. 7. In winter, Caesar

will leave the soldiers in camp. 8. The consul hastened with the horsemen out of the town to the camp. 9. The good mother teaches her son with great care. 10. The Romans surpass the Aeduans in multitude of men.

152. RULE.—*Cause is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.*

LESSON XXXIV.

Adjectives of One Termination.

153. Adjectives of one termination have the same forms for all genders save in the Neut. Acc. Sing. and Neut. Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural.

fēlix, lucky : stem **fēlicī-**.

vetus, old : stem **veterī-**.

	M. AND F.	N.		M. AND F.	N.
Sg.—N.	fēlix,	fēlix,	Sg.—	vetus,	vetus,
G.	fēlicia,	fēlicia,		veteris,	veteris,
D.	fēlici,	fēlici,		veterī,	veterī,
Ac.	fēlicem,	fēlix,		veterem,	vetus,
V.	fēlix,	fēlix,		vetus,	vetus,
Ab.	fēlici (e),	fēlici (e).		veterē (ī),	veterē (ī).
PL.—N.	fēlicēs,	fēlicia,	PL.—	veterēs,	vetera,
G.	fēlicium,	fēlicium,		veterum,	veterum,
D.	fēlicibus,	fēlicibus,		veteribus,	veteribus,
Ac.	fēlicēs,	fēlicia,		veterēs,	vetera,
V.	fēlicēs,	fēlicia,		veterēs,	vetera,
Ab.	fēlicibus,	fēlicibus.		veteribus,	veteribus.

prūdēns, wise : stem **prūdēntī-**.

	M. AND F.	N.		M. AND F.	N.
Sg.—N.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	PL.—	prūdētēs,	prūdēntia,
G.	prūdēntis,	prūdēntis,		prūdētium,	prūdētium,
D.	prūdēntī,	prūdēntī,		prūdētibus,	prūdētibus,
Ac.	prūdēntem,	prūdēns,		prūdētēs,	prūdēntia,
V.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,		prūdētēs,	prūdēntia,
Ab.	prūdēntī (e),	prūdēntī (e).		prūdētibus,	prūdētibus.

Observe :

1. That the case-endings are the same as those of nouns.
2. That adjectives usually have -ī in the Ablative Singular.

154.

Vocabulary.

<i>fēlix, fēlix, -icis, lucky, successful.</i>	<i>vetus, vetus, veteris, old.</i>
<i>prūdēns, prūdēns, -entis, wise, prudent.</i>	<i>vēlōx, vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.</i>
<i>pār, pār, paris, equal (to).</i>	<i>potēns, potēns, -entis, powerful.</i>
<i>celeritās, -ātis, f. swiftmess.</i>	<i>māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size.</i>
<i>curr-ō, -ere, cucurr-i, cur-sum, I run.</i>	

EXERCISES.

155. I. 1. Populus prūdēns bellum parat. 2. Rōmānī cum Aeduīs proelium fēlix pūgnāverant. 3. Equitēs vēlōcēs peditēs nōn relinquent. 4. Equī celeritāte taurōs superant. 5. Aeduī māgnitūdine Rōmānīs parēs sunt. 6. Rēgēs potentēs in periculō amīcōs veterēs nōn relinquent. 7. Nūntius ē castrīs in oppidum curret. 8. Rōmānī bellis prosperis gaudēbant. 9. Filius patrī pār nōn est. 10. Puerī vēlōcēs ad flūmen currunt.

II. 1. We shall see the prudent and powerful consul in the city. 2. Lucky men have much money. 3. We shall run to the temple. 4. The swift horsemen will lay waste the fields with fire and sword. 5. The Romans are equal to the Aeduians in size. 6. The wise townsmen are preparing war with great diligence. 7. The size of the enemy and the swiftness of the horses frightened the Romans. 8. The soldiers were pained by many (and) severe wounds. 9. The city has a wall ten feet wide. 10. The king is walking with the swift messenger in the garden.

LESSON XXXV.

Third Conjugation Continued.

156. Many verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō** have stems in **-ie**, which becomes **e** before **-re** and **i** before **m**, **s**, and **t** in all tenses of the Present System except the FUTURE.

Otherwise they are conjugated like **emō**.

1. PRESENT TENSE of capiō, I take.

- SING. — 1. **capi-ō**, *I take, am taking, or do take.*
 2. **capi-s**, *you take, are taking, or do take.*
 3. **capi-t**, *he takes, is taking, or does take.*
- PLUR. — 1. **capi-mus**, *we take, are taking, or do take.*
 2. **capi-tis**, *you take, are taking, or do take.*
 3. **capiu-nt**, *they take, are taking, or do take.*

Observe :

That **capiō** differs from **emō** only in having an **i** before the ending in the 1st pers. sing. and in the 3d pers. plural.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE of capiō, I take.

- SING. — 1. **capi-ē-ba-m**, *I was taking, did take, or took.*
 2. **capi-ē-bā-s**, *you were taking, did take, or took.*
 3. **capi-ē-ba-t**, *he was taking, did take, or took.*
- PLUR. — 1. **capi-ē-bā-mus**, *we were taking, did take, or took.*
 2. **capi-ē-bā-tis**, *you were taking, did take, or took.*
 3. **capi-ē-ba-nt**, *they were taking, did take, or took.*

Observe :

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **capiē-**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE TENSE of capiō, I take.

- SING. — 1. **capiā-m**, *I shall take or be taking.*
 2. **capiēs**, *you will take or be taking.*
 3. **capiē-t**, *he will take or be taking.*
- PLUR. — 1. **capiēs-mus**, *we shall take or be taking.*
 2. **capiēs-tis**, *you will take or be taking.*
 3. **capiē-nt**, *they will take or be taking.*

Observe :

That the Future tense of these verbs has **-ia-** in the first pers. sing., but **-ie-** elsewhere.

157.

Vocabulary.

locus, -i, m. *place, position.*

animus, -i, m. *mind, courage.*

auxilium, -i, n. *aid, help.*

imperium, -i, n. *command, sway.*

dē (prep. with Abl.), *about, concerning.*

sub (prep. with Abl.), *under.*

faci-ō, face-re, fēc-i, fac-tum, I make, do.

capi-ō, cape-re, cēp-i, cap-tum, I take, seize.

ger-ō, gere-re, gess-i, ges-tum, I carry on, wage, manage.

dīc-ō, dice-re, dix-i, dic-tum, I speak, say.

EXERCISES.

158. 1. Legiō locum nōn tenuit. 2. Helvētīi in Aeduōrum finēs iter facient. 3. Rōmānī cum Helvētiis et Aeduīs bellum gerēbant. 4. Rōmānī ex hostibus agrum capiēbant. 5. Caesar ad lēgātum nūntiōs mittit. 6. Agricolae sub Rōmānōrum imperiō fēlicēs sunt. 7. Caesar cum lēgātō dē auxiliō dīcet. 8. Dominus discipulōrum mōrēs reget. 9. Aestāte ad montem iter faciēmus. 10. In silvīs aprōs multōs capimus.

II. 1. You were speaking about Caesar's courage. 2. The Romans carry on wars with many peoples. 3. The horsemen will not leave the position on the hill. 4. Caesar, with the help of the soldiers, will seize the command of the city. 5. The townsmen are making many ships. 6. You will send aid to Caesar's lieutenant. 7. In winter and in summer, the king rides with his son. 8. The soldiers were hurt by many wounds. 9. The son of the farmer remained many months in the city. 10. You will send your sons to school.

LESSON XXXVI.

Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative Case.

159. 1. The Degrees of Comparison are: POSITIVE, COMPARATIVE, and SUPERLATIVE.

2. The POSITIVE is the simple form of the adjective; e.g. *altus*, *high*.

3. The COMPARATIVE denotes a higher or lower degree than the Positive and is formed by adding to consonant stems *-ior* for the Masc. and Fem. and *-ius* for the Neuter: *altior*, *altius*, *higher*.

4. The SUPERLATIVE denotes the highest or lowest degree and is formed by adding to the consonant stems *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*: *altissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, *highest*.

5. Vowel stems drop the vowel before forming the Comparative and Superlative.

M. AND F. . N.

<i>altus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>high</i> ,	<i>altior</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimus</i> ,	<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> .
<i>laetus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>glad</i> ,	<i>laetior</i> ,	<i>laetius</i> ,	<i>laetissimus</i> ,	<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> .
<i>fortis</i> , <i>-is</i> , <i>-e</i> , <i>brave</i> ,	<i>fortior</i> ,	<i>fortius</i> ,	<i>fortissimus</i> ,	<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> .
<i>velox</i> , <i>swift</i> ,	<i>velocior</i> ,	<i>velocius</i> ,	<i>velocissimus</i> ,	<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> .
<i>prūdēns</i> , <i>wise</i> ,	<i>prudentior</i> ,	<i>prudentius</i> ,	<i>prudentissimus</i> ,	<i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> .

160. The Comparative degree is declined according to the third declension:

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>altior</i> ,	<i>altior</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	N. <i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiora</i> ,
G. <i>altioris</i> ,	<i>altioris</i> ,	<i>altioris</i> ,	G. <i>altiorum</i> ,	<i>altiorum</i> ,	<i>altiorum</i> ,
D. <i>altiori</i> ,	<i>altiori</i> ,	<i>altiori</i> ,	D. <i>altioribus</i> ,	<i>altioribus</i> ,	<i>altioribus</i> ,
Ac. <i>altiorem</i> ,	<i>altiorem</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	Ac. <i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiora</i> ,
V. <i>altior</i> ,	<i>altior</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	V. <i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiorēs</i> ,	<i>altiora</i> ,
Ab. <i>altiore</i> ,	<i>altiore</i> ,	<i>altiore</i> .	Ab. <i>altioribus</i> ,	<i>altioribus</i> ,	<i>altioribus</i> .

Observe :

That the Neut. differs from the Masc. and Fem. only in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of both numbers, as in other adjectives of the third declension.

1. ALL COMPARATIVES (except **plūs**) are declined like **altior**.

2. ALL SUPERLATIVES are declined like **bonus, -a, -um** (55).

161. Examine the following :

A. 1. Collis **altior** est, *the hill is* RATHER (or TOO) HIGH.

2. Collis **altissimus** est, *the hill is* VERY HIGH.

Observe :

1. That the Comparative may be translated by *rather* or *too* with the Positive.

2. That the Superlative may be translated by *very* with the Positive.

B. 1. Collis est **altior quam mūrus**, *the hill is higher* THAN THE WALL.

2. Collis est **altior mūrō**, *the hill is higher* THAN THE WALL.

Observe :

1. That in the first sentence **quam** is used and **mūrus** is in the *Nominative* Case.

2. That in the second sentence **quam** is omitted and **mūrō** is in the *Ablative* Case.

EXERCISES.

162. I. 1. Bellum longissimum et saevissimum est. 2. Pāx est grātor bellō. 3. Mēnsēs scholae sunt longiōrēs. 4. Taurus est fortior quam equus. 5. Vinum nōn est grātius aquā. 6. Servi sunt fidissimī. 7. Urbs mūrum altiōrem habet. 8. Dux est fortior militibus. 9. Equī sunt vēciorēs quam taurī. 10. Puellae prūdentiōrēs pueris sunt.

II. 1. Horsemen are swifter than foot-soldiers. 2. The journey to the camp is very long. 3. War is more pleasing to soldiers than peace. 4. Pleasure is most welcome to all.

5. The judge is more prudent than the chief. 6. The river is rather broad. 7. We have seen more horsemen than foot-soldiers. 8. The city has a rather high citadel. 9. School is very troublesome to boys. 10. The town is on a rather high hill.

163. RULE.—*The Ablative is used with the Comparative instead of quam, than, with the Nominative or Accusative.*

LESSON XXXVII.

Comparison of Adjectives Continued. Ablative.

164. 1. Adjectives in **-er** form the Comparative regularly by adding **-ior** to the Nom. Sing., but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nom. Singular.

POSITIVE.			COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
miser, -a,		-um, <i>wretched</i> ,	miserior, -ior, -ius,			miserimus, -a, -um.		
celer, -is,	-a,	<i>swift</i> ,	celerior, -ior, -ius,			celerrimus, -a, -um.		
acer, -is,	-a,	<i>sharp</i> ,	acrior, -ior, -ius,			acerrimus, -a, -um.		

2. Six adjectives in **-ilis** drop **-i** and add **-limus** to the stem to form the Superlative. The Comparative is regular.

POSITIVE.			COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
facilis, -is, -e, <i>easy</i> ,			facilior, -ior, -ius,			facillimus, -a, -um.		
difficilis, -is, -e, <i>difficult</i> ,			difficilior, -ior, -ius,			difficillimus, -a, -um.		
similis, -is, -e, <i>like</i> ,			similior, -ior, -ius,			simillimus, -a, -um.		
dissimilis, -is, -e, <i>unlike</i> ,			dissimilior, -ior, -ius,			dissimillimus, -a, -um.		
gracilis, -is, -e, <i>slender</i> ,			gracilior, -ior, -ius,			gracillimus, -a, -um.		
humilis, -is, -e, <i>low</i> ,			humilior, -ior, -ius,			humillimus, -a, -um.		

165. Examine the following :

1. Collis **sex pedibus** altior est quam mŭrus, *the hill is SIX FEET higher (i.e. higher BY SIX FEET) than the wall.*

2. Sol **multis partibus** mŕior est quam terra, *the sun is MANY PARTS larger (larger BY MANY PARTS) than the earth.*

Observe :

That the expressions in black type denote the *Measure of Difference* and answer the question *by how much?*

166.

Vocabulary.

facilis, -is, -e, *easy*.

difficilis, -is, -e, *difficult*.

nobilis, -is, -e, *noble, famous*.

similis, -is, -e, *like, similar* (to).

dissimilis, -is, -e, *unlike, dissimilar*.

humilis, -is, -e, *low : humble*.

ingēns, -entis, *huge, vast, great*.

cōstitu-ō, -ere, **cōstitut-**us, **cōstitut-**um, *I place, fix, build*.

dēlig-ō, -ere, **dēlēg-**i, **dēlēct-**um, *I select, choose, pick out*.

EXERCISES.

167. I. 1. Caesar mūrum pedibus multīs altiōrem quam arcem cōstituit. 2. Iter ad montem difficillimū est. 3. Puer simillimus est mātī. 4. Mōrēs Aeduōrum et Rōmānōrum dissimillimī sunt. 5. Dux obsidēs nōbilissimōs dēliget. 6. Puer pede altior est quam soror. 7. Milītēs ex proeliō pecūniam ingentem reportāvērunt. 8. Liber puerō quam virō difficilior est. 9. Hominēs omnēs mōribus simillimī sunt. 10. Mūrus altior decem pedibus quam casa est.

II. 1. The leader strengthened the town with a very high wall. 2. Caesar demanded from the state the noblest children. 3. The boys were very unlike in respect to fortune. 4. In a very short time the consul will build an easier road. 5. The river is many feet broader than the ditch. 6. The queen's son is very unlike his companion. 7. A good leader will choose the easiest road for the soldiers. 8. The horsemen are swifter than the foot-soldiers. 9. The boy's book is easier than the man's. 10. The sailor is more wretched than the farmer.

168. RULE.—*Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

Comparison of Adjectives Continued. Genitive Case.

169. I. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> ,	melior, melior, melius,	optimus, -a, -um.
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> ,	pēior, pēior, pēius,	pessimus, -a, -um.
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> ,	māior, māior, māius,	māximus, -a, -um.
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> ,	minor, minor, minus,	minimus, -a, -um.
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> ,	—, —, plūs,	plūrimus, -a, -um.
multi, -ae, -a; <i>many</i> ,	plūrēs, plūrēs, plūra,	plūrimī, -ae, -a.
vetus, -eris, <i>old</i> ,	vetustior, -ior, vetustius,	veterrimus, -a, -um.
iuvenis, <i>young</i> ,	iūnior (minor nātū),	minimus (nātū).
senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior (māior nātū),	māximus (nātū).

2. The following have irregular superlatives :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, -a, -um, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior, -ior, -ius, <i>outer, exterior</i> ,	extrēmus, -a, -um, } <i>outermost</i> , extimus, -a, -um, } <i>last</i> .
inferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i> ,	inferior, -ior, -ius, <i>lower</i> ,	infimū, -a, -um, } <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, -a, -um, <i>following</i> ,	posterior, -ior, -ius, <i>later</i> ,	postrēmus, -a, -um, } <i>last</i> . postumus, -a, -um, }
superus, -a, -um, <i>upper</i> ,	superior, -ior, -ius, <i>higher</i> ,	suprēmus, -a, -um, } <i>highest</i> . summus, -a, -um, }

3. The following Comparatives and Superlatives lack the Positive, which is supplied from prepositions and adverbs :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō, <i>before</i> ,	prior, prior, prius, <i>former</i> ,	primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i> .
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propior, propior, propius, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximus, -a, -um, <i>next, nearest</i> .
cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> ,	citerior, citerior, citerius, <i>hither</i> ,	citimus, -a, -um, <i>hithermost</i> .
in, intrā, <i>in, within</i> ,	interior, interior, interius, <i>inner</i> ,	intimus, -a, -um, <i>inmost</i> .
ultrā, <i>beyond</i> ,	ulterior, ulterior, ulterius, <i>further</i> ,	ultimus, -a, -um, <i>furthest, last</i> .

4. The following adjectives are compared by means of *magis*, *more*, and *māximō*, *most* :

Those in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, except those in *-quus*.

idōneus, *magis idōneus*, *māximō idōneus*.

170. Examine the following :

1. Prior *hōrum* in proeliō cecidit, *the former OF THESE fell in battle*.

2. Indus est omnium flūminum māximus, *the Indus is the largest OF ALL RIVERS*.

3. Multi mīlitum necātī sunt, *many OF THE SOLDIERS were killed*.

4. Centum mīlitum fugērunt, *a hundred OF THE SOLDIERS fled*.

Observe :

That each word in the *Genitive* denotes the *Whole* of which the governing word denotes a *Part*.

171.

Vocabulary.

Genāva, *-ae, f. Geneva*.

Allobrogēs, *-um, m. the Allobroges*.

nātū (Abl. of respect of nātus), *by birth*.

māior nātū, *older*.

minor nātū, *younger*.

extrēmus, *-a, -um, furthest, last*.

prior, *prior, prius, former*.

iuvenis, *-is, m. young man*.

senex, *senis, m. old man*.

nihil (indeclinable), *n. nothing*.

EXERCISES.

172. I. 1. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva.
2. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 3. Filius māior nātū est quam soror. 4. Prior frātrum sex avēs videt. 5. Puella decem annis est minor nātū quam puer.
6. Iuvenis fēlicior sene est. 7. Nihil melius est amīcō bonō. 8. Magister pueris optimis librōs plūrimōs dat.
9. Iniūria iūdicis pessima est. 10. Māter māximā cum diligentīā filiōs educat.

II. 1. The lieutenant hastens to Caesar with more soldiers. 2. Nothing is worse for boys than wine. 3. The leader praised most of the soldiers on account of their valor. 4. The girl is a head taller than her brother. 5.

The best fathers will send their children to school. 6. The soldiers had stormed the furthest town of the Allobroges. 7. Caesar demanded hostages from the first men of the state. 8. The very bad boy wounded the sailor with a stone. 9. The young man rides out of the town into the fields. 10. The soldiers will buy the best corn in the nearest town.

173. RULE.—*The Partitive Genitive denotes the Whole to which a Part belongs.*

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation Continued.

174. I. PERFECT TENSE of *emō, I buy.*

- SG.—1. *ēm-i, I bought, did buy, have bought.*
 2. *ēm-istī, you bought, did buy, have bought.*
 3. *ēm-it, he bought, did buy, has bought.*
- PL.—1. *ēm-imus, we bought, did buy, have bought.*
 2. *ēm-istis, you bought, did buy, have bought.*
 3. *ēm-erunt } they bought, did buy, have bought.*
 or -ēre, }

Observe :

1. That the personal endings are the same in all Perfect tenses.

2. That verbs of the third conjugation form the Perfect tense *without -v-*.

2. PLUPERFECT TENSE of *emō, I buy.*

- SING.—1. *ēm-erā-m, I had bought.*
 2. *ēm-erā-s, you had bought.*
 3. *ēm-erā-t, he had bought.*
- PLUR.—1. *ēm-erā-mus, we had bought.*
 2. *ēm-erā-tis, you had bought.*
 3. *ēm-erā-nt, they had bought.*

Observe :

1. That the tense-sign **-era-** and personal endings are the same in all Pluperfect tenses.

2. That the Pluperfect is always formed on the Perfect stem.

3. FUTURE PERFECT of **emō**, *I buy*.

Sg. — 1. **em-erō**, *I shall have bought.*

2. **em-eris**, *you will have bought.*

3. **em-erit**, *he will have bought.*

PL. — 1. **em-eri-mus**, *we shall have bought.*

2. **em-eri-tis**, *you will have bought.*

3. **em-eri-nt**, *they will have bought.*

Observe :

1. That the tense-sign **-eri-** and personal endings are the same in all Future Perfect tenses.

2. That the Future Perfect is always formed on the Perfect stem.

175.

Vocabulary.

imperium, -i, n. *command, power.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. *rampart, fortification.*

periculum, -i, n. *danger, trial.*

praesidium, -i, n. *defence, guard.*

hiberna, -ōrum, n. (only pl.) *winter-quarters.*

impedimentum, -i, n. *hindrance : pl. baggage.*

cōgnōsc-ō, -ere, **cōgnōv-ī**, **cōgni-tum**, *I learn, find out, know.*

cōg-ō, -ere, **cōg-ī**, **cōgē-tum**, *I drive together, collect, compel.*

EXERCISES.

176. I. 1. Caesar numerum militum cōgnōverat. 2. Lēgātus auxilia multa cōēgit. 3. Cōnsul in hiberna militēs dūxerit. 4. Dux Caesaris imperia expectābat. 5. Caesar militēs mūnitiōne prohibuit. 6. Cōnsul turrīs praesidiīs firmat. 7. Perīcula māgna puellās terrēbunt. 8. Militēs

in castris impedimenta omnia reliquerunt. 9. Cōsul hostēs impedimenta cēlāvit. 10. Primū aestāte dux militēs ex hibernis dūxerat.

II. 1. The soldiers ran to the baggage and wagons. 2. Caesar held the highest command in the Roman state. 3. You have collected many soldiers. 4. We had learned the names of many flowers. 5. Caesar will have sent the horsemen to the mountain. 6. He had ruled many years. 7. I shall have sent aid to the consul. 8. You have seen many temples in the town. 9. They have led the soldiers out of winter-quarters into the camp. 10. The Romans built a large citadel in the city.

LESSON XL.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

177. 1. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives in **-us** and **-er** of second declension by changing **-o** of the stem to **-ē**.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
altus, <i>high</i> ,	altō-	altē, <i>high, on high</i> .
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> ,	pulchrō-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> .
miser, <i>wretched</i> ,	miserō-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .

2. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** to the stem: stems in **-nt-** drop **-t** and stems in **-c-** insert **-i-** before **-ter**.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
fortis, <i>brave</i> ,	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i> .
ferōx, <i>wild</i> ,	ferōc-	ferōciter, <i>wildly</i> .
prūdēns, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēt-	prūdenter, <i>wisely</i> .

3. The *Ablative Singular* of some Adjectives serves as an adverb.

tūtus, <i>safe</i> ,	tūtō, <i>safely</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> ,	primō, <i>at first</i> .

4. The *Neuter Accusative Singular* of many Adjectives is used as an Adverb.

multus,	<i>much,</i>	multum,	<i>much.</i>
dulcis,	<i>sweet,</i>	dulce,	<i>sweetly.</i>
tristis,	<i>sad,</i>	triste,	<i>sadly.</i>
postrēmus,	<i>last,</i>	postrēmum,	<i>finally.</i>

178.

Comparison.

1. The comparative of the Adverb is the same as the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective and ends in *-ius*.

2. The Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing *-ō-* of the stem of the Superlative of the Adjective to *-ē-*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altē, <i>loftily,</i>	altius, <i>more loftily,</i>	altissimē, <i>most loftily.</i>
pulchrē, <i>beautifully,</i>	pulchrius, <i>more beautifully,</i>	pulcherrimē, <i>most beautifully.</i>
fortiter, <i>bravely,</i>	fortius, <i>more bravely,</i>	fortissimē, <i>most bravely.</i>
tūtē, <i>safely,</i>	tūtius, <i>more safely,</i>	tūtissimē, <i>most safely.</i>
bene, <i>well,</i>	melius, <i>better,</i>	optimē, <i>best.</i>
male, <i>ill,</i>	pēius, <i>worse,</i>	pessimē, <i>worst.</i>
[parvus], <i>small,</i>	minus, <i>less,</i>	minimē, <i>least.</i>
[māgnus], <i>great,</i>	magis, <i>more,</i>	māximē, <i>most.</i>
multum, <i>much,</i>	plūs, <i>more,</i>	plūrimum, <i>most.</i>
diū, <i>long (of time),</i>	diūtius, <i>longer,</i>	diūtissimē, <i>longest.</i>
saepe, <i>often,</i>	saepius, <i>oftener,</i>	saeppissimē, <i>oftenest.</i>

179.

Vocabulary.

Gallus, *-ī, m. a Gaul.*
 Belgae, *-ārum, the Belgians.*
 facile, *adv. easily.*
 celeriter, *adv. quickly.*

amplius, *adv. longer, more.*
 diligenter, *adv. diligently.*
 ibi, *adv. there, in that place.*
 multō, *adv. much, by much.*

EXERCISES.

180. I. 1. Puella in scholam fēstīnat multō celerius quam puer. 2. Mīlītēs amplius hōrīs sex pūgnāverant. 3. Dux mōrēs mīlitum facillimē cōgnōverat. 4. Mīlītēs Rōmānī cum Gallīs fortissimē pūgnābant. 5. Caesar iter dīligentissimē fēcīt. 6. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs facile praeecēdunt. 7. Caesar in urbe mēnsibus decem amplius mānserat. 8. Ibī mīlītēs Rōmānī multō fortius pūgnābant quam Gallī. 9. Caesar in castra mīlītēs celerrimē dūxit. 10. Aestate et hieme dīligentissimē labōrant hominēs.

II. 1. The Romans will fight much more bravely than the Gauls. 2. The teacher works most diligently. 3. There Caesar easily conquered the Belgians. 4. The consul remained in the city more than six hours. 5. The horsemen ran to camp very quickly. 6. The Romans will conquer the Belgians more easily than the Gauls. 7. The soldiers easily built a wall ten feet high. 8. The boy is older than the girl. 9. The daughter is very like her mother. 10. The messenger will run quickly from the town to the camp.



EQUES.

LESSON XLI.

Fourth Conjugation.

181. 1. PRESENT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear* : stem **audi-**.

- SING. — 1. **audi-ō**, *I hear, am hearing, or do hear.*
 2. **audi-s**, *you hear, are hearing, or do hear.*
 3. **audi-t**, *he hears, is hearing, or does hear.*

- PLUR. — 1. **audi-mus**, *we hear, are hearing, or do hear.*
 2. **audi-tis**, *you hear, are hearing, or do hear.*
 3. **audiu-nt**, *they hear, are hearing, or do hear.*

Observe :

1. That the personal endings are the same in all Present tenses.
2. That the fourth conjugation has **-u-** in the third Pers. plural.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear*.

- SING. — 1. **audiō-ba-m**, *I was hearing, did hear, or heard.*
 2. **audiō-ba-s**, *you were hearing, did hear, or heard.*
 3. **audiō-ba-t**, *he was hearing, did hear, or heard.*

- PLUR. — 1. **audiō-ba-mus**, *we were hearing, did hear, or heard.*
 2. **audiō-ba-tis**, *you were hearing, did hear, or heard.*
 3. **audiō-ba-nt**, *they were hearing, did hear, or heard.*

Observe :

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **audiō-**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear*.

- SING. — 1. **audia-m**, *I shall hear or be hearing.*
 2. **audia-s**, *you will hear or be hearing.*
 3. **audia-t**, *he will hear or be hearing.*

- PLUR. — 1. **audia-mus**, *we shall hear or be hearing.*
 2. **audia-tis**, *you will hear or be hearing.*
 3. **audia-nt**, *they will hear or be hearing.*

Observe :

1. That, in the fourth as in the third conjugation, the Future tense is *not* formed with **-bo-**.

2. That the Future tense of the fourth conjugation has **-ia** in the 1st Pers., but **-iō** elsewhere.

182.

Vocabulary.

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province*.

regiō, -ōnis, f. *region, territory*.

signum, -i, n. *sign : standard*.—p. 83.

āgmen, -inis, n. *column, troop :
army*.

prīmum āgmen, *prīmī āgminis*, n.
the van, front.

novissimum āgmen, *novissimī āg-
minis*, n. *the rear*.

veni-ō, *veni-re*, *vēn-i*, *ven-tum*, *I come, arrive*.

mūni-ō, *mūni-re*, *mūni-vi*, *mūni-tum*, *I fortify, protect*.

impedi-ō, *impedi-re*, *impedi-vi*, *impedi-tum*, *I hinder, impede*.

EXERCISES.

183. I. 1. Equitēs novissimum āgmen hostium impedi-ent. 2. In hostium regiōnem veniēbāmus. 3. In primō āgmine sunt signa. 4. Caesar legiōnibus multis prōvinciam mūniet. 5. Ad castra cum equitibus venītis. 6. Militēs mūrō et fossā oppidum mūniunt. 7. Equitēs āgmen nōn impediēbant. 8. Ex agrīs in urbem veniēbātis. 9. Hostēs in prōvinciam celerrimē venient. 10. Peditēs multō facilius impedimus quam equitēs.

II. 1. Caesar will impede the enemy's rear. 2. The consul was fortifying the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 3. The Romans quickly came to the enemy's van. 4. We shall see many standards in Caesar's army. 5. The leader laid waste the enemy's territory with fire and sword. 6. The townsmen were fortifying the town. 7. We shall hinder the pirates on land and sea. 8. The soldiers of the van came much more quickly than the soldiers of the rear. 9. The horsemen are in the van, the footmen in the rear. 10. Are not the soldiers protecting the city with great care ?

LESSON XLII.

Fourth Declension.

184. 1. The stem ends in *-u* and is found by dropping the *-um* of the Genitive Plural; e.g. *fructuum*: stem *fructu-*.

fructus, fruit: *arcus, bow*: *domus, house*: *cornū, horn*:
stem *fructu-*. stem *arcu-*. stem *domu-*. stem *cornu-*.

SING.—Nom.	<i>fructus,</i>	<i>arcus,</i>	<i>domus,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>
Gen.	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>arcūs,</i>	<i>domūs,</i>	<i>cornūs,</i>
Dat.	<i>fructui (fructū),</i>	<i>arcul (arcū),</i>	<i>domui,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>
Acc.	<i>fructum,</i>	<i>arcum,</i>	<i>domum,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>
Voc.	<i>fructus,</i>	<i>arcus,</i>	<i>domus,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>
Abl.	<i>fructū.</i>	<i>arcū.</i>	<i>domū.</i>	<i>cornū.</i>
PLUR.—Nom.	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>arcūs,</i>	<i>domūs,</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
Gen.	<i>fructuum,</i>	<i>arcuum,</i>	<i>domōrum,</i>	<i>cornuum,</i>
Dat.	<i>fructibus,</i>	<i>arcubus,</i>	<i>domibus,</i>	<i>cornibus,</i>
Acc.	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>arcūs,</i>	<i>domūs, domōs,</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
Voc.	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>arcūs,</i>	<i>domūs,</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
Abl.	<i>fructibus.</i>	<i>arcubus.</i>	<i>domibus.</i>	<i>cornibus.</i>

Observe:

1. That the Nom. Sing. differs from the Gen. Sing. in that the *-us* is short.
2. That the Gen. Sing. and the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike and have *-ūs* long.
3. That the Dat. Sing. ends in *-ui* or *-ū*.
4. That *arcus* has *-ubus* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. for *-ibus*.
5. That *domus* has the Abl. Sing. and Gen. Plur. formed from the second declension.

185. 1. Nouns in *-us* are masculine, those in *-ū*, neuter.

2. *Acus, domus, idus, manus, porticus, and tribus* are FEMININE.

3. *Acus, arcus, quercus, and tribus* always have *-ubus* in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

186.

Vocabulary.

fructus, -ūs, m. *fruit*.arcus, -ūs, m. *bow*.cornū, -ūs, n. *horn ; wing*.exercitus, -ūs, m. *army*.impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, onset*.equitātus, -ūs, m. *cavalry*.discēd-ō, -ere, discēs-sī, discēs-sum, *I depart, go away*.conveni-ō, -īre, convēn-i, conven-tum, *I come together, assemble*.complē-ō, -ēre, complē-vī, complē-tum, *I fill, finish*.

EXERCISES.

187. I. 1. Caesar montem hominibus complēvit. 2. Dux omnī cum equitātū ex oppidō discēssit. 3. Hostēs in Caesaris exercitum impetum fēcērunt. 4. Belgae arcubus pūgnant. 5. Peditēs et equitēs in urbem conveniunt. 6. Dux cornua exercitūs ad flūmen dūxit. 7. Fructus hortī rēgī grātus est. 8. Equitātus Caesaris hostēs facillimē impediēt. 9. Exercitū māgnō urbem oppūgnāverās. 10. Militēs omnēs in ūnum (*one*) locum convenient.

II. 1. You will lead the cavalry to the wing of the army. 2. Children like fruit. 3. The Gauls fight with long bows. 4. Caesar departed from the town with the greatest diligence. 5. We quickly assembled into the city. 6. The enemy's cavalry made an attack on the town. 7. The leader filled the city with soldiers. 8. Caesar will protect the camp with a large army. 9. The cavalry very easily impeded the foot-soldiers. 10. The courage of the leader delights the army.



ARCUS.

LESSON XLIII.

Fifth Declension.

188. The stem ends in *-ē* and is found by dropping the *-rum* of the Genitive Plural ; e.g. *diērum*: stem *diē-*.

<i>diēs, day :</i> stem <i>diē-</i> .		<i>rēs, thing :</i> stem <i>rē-</i> .	
Sg.—Nom.	<i>diēs,</i>	Sg.—Nom.	<i>rēs,</i>
Gen.	<i>diēi,</i>	Gen.	<i>rei,</i>
Dat.	<i>diēi,</i>	Dat.	<i>rei,</i>
Acc.	<i>diem,</i>	Acc.	<i>rem,</i>
Voc.	<i>diēs,</i>	Voc.	<i>rēs,</i>
Abl.	<i>diē,</i>	Abl.	<i>rē,</i>
Pl.— <i>diēs,</i>		Pl.— <i>rēs,</i>	
	<i>diērum,</i>		<i>rērum,</i>
	<i>diēbus,</i>		<i>rēbus,</i>
			<i>rēs,</i>
			<i>rēs,</i>
	<i>diēbus.</i>		<i>rēbus.</i>

Observe :

1. That Nom. and Voc. Sing. and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike.
2. That Gen. and Dat. Sing. are alike.
3. That *e* of the ending *eī* is short after a consonant.

189. 1. All nouns of the fifth declension are FEMININE except *diēs*, which is usually masculine in the Singular and always so in the Plural.

2. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout ; other nouns have only Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. besides the regular Singular.

190.

Vocabulary.

diēs, diēi, m. and f. *day*.

rēs, rei, f. *thing*.

aciēs, aciēi, f. *line of battle*.

posterus, -a, -um, next, following.

plānitēs, plānitēi, f. *plain*.

spēs, spel, f. *hope*.

circum (prep. with Acc.), *around*.

contrā (prep. with Acc.), *against*.

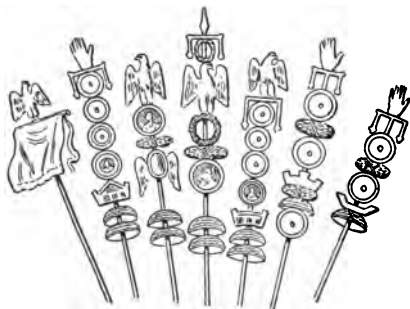
instru-ō, -ere, instru-ī, instru-tum, *I draw up, arrange*.

leg-ō, -ere, leg-ī, leg-tum, *I read*.

EXERCISES.

191. I. 1. Caesar magnā in plānitīē aciem instrūxit. 2. Posterō diē castra mōvit. 3. In equitātū spem omnem posuit. 4. Caesaris epistulās legēmus. 5. Exercitus parvus contrā spem multās rēs fēcit. 6. Sex hōrās circum impedimenta pūgnāvērunt. 7. Locus omnis plānitīēs erat. 8. Rōmānī contrā Belgās bellum gessērunt. 9. Spēs salūtis exercitum dēlectat. 10. Caesar cum Gallis in aciē contendit.

II. 1. We saw many horsemen in the plain. 2. On the following night we shall pitch our camp near (*ad with Acc.*) the plain. 3. Many things frightened the enemy. 4. Caesar contended with the Belgians in line of battle. 5. The pirates had great hope of booty. 6. The army remained many days around the town. 7. We have read Caesar's books with pleasure. 8. The teacher gave many things to the pupils on the following day. 9. The enemy went away from the plain by night. 10. All hope of safety is in flight.



SIGNA.

LESSON XLIV.

Fourth Conjugation Continued.

192. 1. PERFECT TENSE of *audiō, I hear* : stem *audi-*.

SING. — 1. <i>audi-v-i,</i>	<i>I heard, did hear, have heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-isti,</i>	<i>you heard, did hear, have heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-it,</i>	<i>he heard, did hear, has heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. <i>audi-v-imus,</i>	<i>we heard, did hear, have heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-istis,</i>	<i>you heard, did hear, have heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-erunt</i> or <i>audi-v-ere,</i>	<i>they heard, did hear, have heard.</i>

Observe :

That the tense-sign *-v-* is added to the stem *audi-*, and to this Perfect stem *audi-v-* the personal endings (91) are added.

2. PLUPERFECT TENSE of *audiō, I hear*.

SING. — 1. <i>audi-v-erā-m,</i>	<i>I had heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-erās,</i>	<i>you had heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-erat,</i>	<i>we had heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. <i>audi-v-erā-mus,</i>	<i>we had heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-erātis,</i>	<i>you had heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-erant,</i>	<i>they had heard.</i>

Observe :

That the Pluperfect tense is formed on the perfect stem *audi-v-* by adding the tense-sign *-era-* and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of *audiō, I hear.*

SING.—1. <i>audi-v-erō,</i>	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-eri-s,</i>	<i>you will have heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-eri-t,</i>	<i>he will have heard.</i>

PLUR.—1. <i>audi-v-eri-mus,</i>	<i>we shall have heard.</i>
2. <i>audi-v-eri-tis,</i>	<i>you will have heard.</i>
3. <i>audi-v-eri-nt,</i>	<i>they will have heard.</i>

Observe :

That the Future Perfect tense is formed on the Perfect stem *audi-v-* by adding the tense-sign *-eri-* (*-erō* in 1st sing.) and the personal endings (31, 2).

193.

Vocabulary.

<i>passus, -ūs, m. pace, step.</i>	<i>manus, -ūs, f. hand : armed force,</i>
<i>adventus, -ūs, m. arrival.</i>	<i>crowd.</i>
<i>mille</i> (indecl. in Sing.), <i>a thousand.</i>	<i>mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, n. (Plur. of mīle) thousands.</i>
<i>mille passūs, a thousand paces, one mile.</i>	<i>sex mīlia passuum, six thousand (of) paces, six miles.</i>
<i>dē</i> (prep. with Abl.), <i>about, concerning.</i>	<i>domus, -ūs, f. house.—p. 106.</i>

<i>recipi-ō, -ere, recip-i,</i>	<i>recep-tum, I receive, get back, take back.</i>
<i>prōcēd-ō, -ere, prōcēd-i,</i>	<i>prōcēd-sum, I proceed, advance.</i>

EXERCISES.

194. I. 1. *Hostēs dē Caesaris adventū audīverant.* 2. *Dux sex mīlia passuum prōcēssit.* 3. *Princeps mille mīlītēs hostium impedīverit.* 4. *Caesar manū parvā exercitum māgnū superāvit.* 5. *Adventū ducis rēs multās recipiēmus.* 6. *Caesar fossā lātā castra mūnīvit.* 7. *Hostēs decem mīlibus mīlitum oppidum oppūgnāverant.* 8. *Caesar ex oppidō ad castra nocte prōcēssit.* 9. *Dē hostium rēbus audīveris.* 10. *Equitātum in itinere impedīverātis.*

II. 1. *We shall build pretty houses in the city.* 2. *You*

have not heard about Caesar's letter. 3. The cavalry had hindered the enemy on the march. 4. We advanced one mile from the town. 5. Six thousand (*of*) foot-soldiers stormed the town. 6. The hope of safety will have impeded the soldiers. 7. With a small crowd the leader conquered many thousands of men. 8. The messenger had told Caesar about the enemy's arrival. 9. We have read many letters of the Romans. 10. We shall see many books in the teacher's house.

LESSON XLV.

Conjugation of SUM, *I am*.

195. I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Sg.—I. *sum, I am.*

2. *es, you are.*

3. *est, he is.*

PL.—I. *sumus, we are.*

2. *estis, you are.*

3. *sunt, they are.*

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Sg.—I. *eram, I was.*

2. *erās, you were.*

3. *erat, he was.*

PL.—I. *erāmus, we were.*

2. *erātis, you were.*

3. *erant, they were.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

Sg.—I. *erō, I shall be.*

2. *eris, you will be.*

3. *erit, he will be.*

PL.—I. *erimus, we shall be.*

2. *eritis, you will be.*

3. *erunt, they will be.*

4. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

Sg.—I. *fui, I was or have been.* PL.—I. *fuiamus, we were or have been.*

2. *fuiſti, you were or have been.* 2. *fuiſtis, you were or have been.*

3. *fuit, he was or has been.* 3. *fuerunt } they were or
or fuerē, } have been.*

5. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Sg.—I. *fueram, I had been.*

2. *fuerās, you had been.*

3. *fuerat, he had been.*

PL.—I. *fuerāmus, we had been.*

2. *fuerātis, you had been.*

3. *fuerant, they had been.*

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. fuerō, *I shall have been.* PL.—1. fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
 2. fueris, *you will have been.* 2. fueritis, *you will have been.*
 3. fuerit, *he will have been.* 3. fuerint, *they will have been.*

196. Caution :

The *Predicate Noun or Adjective* is *always* in the *same Case* as the *Subject* (26).

197.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ratio, -ōnis, f. <i>account, plan.</i> | pōns, pontis, m. <i>bridge.</i> |
| porta, -ae, f. <i>gate, door.</i> | ūsus, -ūs, m. <i>use : skill, experience.</i> |
| dexter, -tra, -trum, <i>right.</i> | sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>left.</i> |

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *I am.*

EXERCISES.

198. I. 1. Ratiō pūgnae fēlicissima erat. 2. Militēs Caesaris in ponte erunt. 3. In dextrō cornū fuērunt legiōnēs duo (*two*). 4. Rōmānī in bellō ūsum multum habuērunt. 5. Portae urbis clārae fuērunt. 6. Dōnum rēgis populō grātum erit. 7. In sinistrō cornū fuerat pūgna māgna. 8. Equī validī dēfessī sunt. 9. Nihil amīcō melius est. 10. Hieme in urbe erimus.

II. 1. The general's plan was good. 2. The bridges will be very long. 3. The right wing of the army had much experience in war. 4. You will have been very brave. 5. We had been in a great city. 6. The cavalry has been on the left wing. 7. The sword is in the king's right hand. 8. The camp was ten miles from the town. 9. The arrival of the king will be pleasing to the citizens. 10. We have been in the town many months.

LESSON XLVI.

199. Cardinal Numeral Adjectives.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	50 L	quīnquāgintā
2 II	duo, duae, duo	60 LX	sexāgintā
3 III	trēs, tria	70 LXX	septuāgintā
4 IV	quattuor	80 LXXX	octōgintā
5 V	quīque	90 XC	nōnāgintā
6 VI	sex	100 C	centum
7 VII	septem	101 CI	centum et ūnus
8 VIII	octō	200 CC	ducentī, -ae, -a
9 IX	novem	300 CCC	trecentī
10 X	decem	400 CCCC	quadringentī
11 XI	ūndecim	500 D(IG)	quīngentī
12 XII	duodecim	600 DC	sescentī
13 XIII	tredecim	700 DCC	septingentī
14 XIV	quattuordecim	800 DCCC	octingentī
15 XV	quīndecim	900 DCCCC	nōngentī
16 XVI	sēdecim	1000 M (CIO)	mille
17 XVII	septendecim	1001 MI	mille et ūnus
18 XVIII	duodēvigintī	1101 MCI	mille centum ūnus
19 XIX	ūndēvigintī		
20 XX	vigintī	2000 MM	duo milia
21 XXI	vigintī ūnus or	5000 IIO	quīque milia
	ūnus et vigintī	10,000 CCIOO	decem milia
28 XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	21,000	ūnum et vigintī milia
29 XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	100,000 CCCIOOO	centum milia
30 XXX	trīgintā		centēna milia
40 XL	quadrāgintā	1,000,000	decies centēna milia

200. Declension of ūnus, duo, trēs, and of mille.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
Nom.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum,	trēs,	tria,
Gen.	ūnius,	ūnius,	ūnius,	trium,	trium,
Dat.	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnī,	tribus,	tribus,
Acc.	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum,	trēs,	tria,
Abl.	ūnō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	tribus,	tribus.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	duo, <i>two</i> ,	duae,	duo,	mille,	mīlia,
Gen.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	mille,	mīlium,
Dat.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	mille,	mīlibus,
Acc.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	mille,	mīlia,
Abl.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	mille,	mīlibus.

Like **duo** is declined **ambō**, -ae, -ō, *both*.

Observe :

1. That **ūnus** has -ius in the Gen. Sing. and -ī in the Dat. Sing. for *all genders*, but is otherwise declined like **bonus** (55).

2. That **mille** in the Singular is an *indeclinable adjective* and agrees with its noun ; in the Plural, it is a noun and is followed by the *Partitive Genitive*.

3. That the cardinal numbers from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are not declined.

4. That from **ducentī**, -ae, -a on, they are declined like the Plural of **bonus** (55), but have Gen. Pl. in -um instead of -ōrum.

5. That in combinations of two or more cardinals the declinable numeral retains its inflection ; e.g. **ūnum et vigintī annōs nātus**, *twenty-one years old*.

EXERCISES.

201. I. 1. Puer quīnque annōs nātus erat. 2. Dux in hibernīs legiōnēs duās habuit. 3. Mūrus mīlia passuum tria longus et pedēs duodecim altus erat. 4. Militēs hōrās sex cum hostibus pūgnābant. 5. In castrīs erant equitum mīlia sex. 6. Filia duōbus annīs est mājior nātū quam frāter. 7. Militēs legiōnis ūnūs in oppidō fuerant. 8. Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum rēx, trigintā septem annōs rēgnāvit. 9. In urbe sunt mille militēs : duo mīlia hostium urbem oppūgnant. 10. Mille octingentā nōnāgintā septem.

II. 1. We shall be in the city three years. 2. Caesar lived (**vixit**) fifty-six years. 3. The general had ten thou-

sand soldiers in camp. 4. The queen is three years younger than the king. 5. The river is two hundred feet deep and two miles broad. 6. The king was sixty-one years old and had reigned thirty-two years. 7. Caesar hastened into the enemy's territory with three legions. 8. Caesar gave the standard to one of the soldiers. 9. The children of one mother are brothers and sisters.

LESSON XLVII.

Passive Voice of **AMŌ**, *I love*. Ablative Case.

202. PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love* : stem **amā-**.

SING.—1. **amo-r**, *I am loved* or *am being loved*.

2. **amā-ris** (or **amā-re**), *you are loved* or *are being loved*.

3. **amā-tur**, *he is loved* or *is being loved*.

PLUR.—1. **amā-mur**, *we are loved* or *are being loved*.

2. **amā-mini**, *you are loved* or *are being loved*.

3. **ama-ntur**, *they are loved* or *are being loved*.

Observe :

1. That **amo-r** is for **amā-o-r** (cf. 31, 1).

2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **amā-** to form the passive voice and denote the persons and numbers, as follows (cf. 31, 2) :

SING.—1. **-r**, *I*.

2. **-ris** (or **-re**), *you (thou)*.

3. **-tur**, *he (she, it)*.

PLUR.—1. **-mur**, *we*.

2. **-mini**, *you*.

3. **-ntur**, *they*.

203. Examine the following :

1. **Amātur**, HE OR SHE IS LOVED, OR IS BEING LOVED.

2. **Pugnātur**, IT IS FOUGHT, OR A BATTLE IS FOUGHT.

3. **Pyrrhus lapide necātur**, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A STONE.

4. **Pyrrhus & muliere necātur**, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A WOMAN.

5. **Pyrrhus & muliere lapide necātur**, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A WOMAN WITH A STONE.

Observe :

1. That in examples 1 and 2, *no subject is expressed*, and the pronouns *he, she, or it* must be used in English (cf. 35).

2. That in example 3, *lapide, by a stone*, denotes the *Means or Instrument*, and the Ablative is used *without a Preposition* (54).

3. That in example 4, *ā muliere, by a woman*, denotes the person *by whom* the killing is done (*Agent or Doer*) and is in the Ablative *with the Preposition ā* (206).

204.

Vocabulary.

fidēs, -ei, f. faith, trust, promise.

aditus, -ūs, m. approach, access.

agger, -eris, m. rampart, mound.—p. 98.

captivus, -i, m. captive.

cāsus, -ūs, m. chance, danger.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. centurion.

colloc-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I place, post, station.

dēmōnstr-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I point out, show, explain.

compar-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I prepare, get together, get.

IDIOMS.

ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing. ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing.

EXERCISES.

205. I. 1. *Fidēs cum hostibus ā Rōmānīs servātur.* 2. *Aditus ad urbem ā militibus multīs firmātur.* 3. *Militēs ā dextrō cornū ā Caesare māximē laudantur.* 4. *Ā captivīs miseris laudāris.* 5. *Agger ā militibus centuriōnis oppūgnātur.* 6. *Militēs multī cāsū bellī comparantur.* 7. *Caesar ab omnibus dēmōnstrātur.* 8. *Legiōnēs in hibernīs mēnsēs quīnque collocantur.* 9. *Ā sinistrō cornū ācerrimē pūgnātur.* 10. *Libri pueris bonīs ā magistrō dantur.*

II. 1. Much money is given by the general to the soldiers. 2. The town is saved by the approach of Caesar. 3. Two legions of one general are placed in winter-quarters. 4. The city is strengthened by a rampart and a ditch. 5. I am praised by my teacher. 6. The soldiers on the left

wing are easily routed. 7. Much grain is got together by the centurion. 8. The chances of war are dreaded by all. 9. The thing is explained to Caesar by the captives. 10. We are loved by good friends.

206. RULE.—*The Agent or Doer of an action is put in the Ablative with the preposition ab (or à).*

LESSON XLVIII.

207.

Ordinal Numeral Adjectives.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1	primus, -a, -um (prior)	50	quingentesimus
2	secundus (alter)	60	sexagesimus
3	tertius	70	septuagesimus
4	quartus	80	octogesimus
5	quintus	90	nonagesimus
6	sextus	100	centesimus
7	septimus	101	centesimus primus
8	octavus	200	ducentesimus
9	nonus	300	trecentesimus
10	decimus	400	quadringentesimus
11	undecimus	500	quingentesimus
12	duodecimus	600	sescentesimus
13	tertius decimus	700	septingentesimus
14	quartus decimus	800	octingentesimus
15	quintus decimus	900	noningentesimus
16	sextus decimus	1,000	milliesimus
17	septimus decimus	1,001	milliesimus primus
18	duodéciesimus	1,101	milliesimus centesimus primus
19	undéciesimus	2,000	bis milliesimus
20	viciesimus	5,000	quingenti milliesimus
21	viciesimus primus	10,000	decies milliesimus
28	duodéciesimus	21,000	semel et vicies milliesimus
29	undéciesimus	100,000	centies milliesimus
30	triciesimus	1,000,000	decies centies milliesimus
40	quadragésimus		

1. The ordinals are declined like **bonus** (55).

208.

Vocabulary.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero*.aetās, -ātis, f. *age*.Augustus, -i, m. *Augustus*.Dīāna, -ae, f. *Diana*.tēstāmentum, -i, n. *will*.Ephesus, -a, -um, *Ephesian, of Ephesus*.mors, mortis, f. *death*.Tiberius, -i, m. *Tiberius*.

viv-ō,

-ere,

vix-i,

vic-tum,

I live.

dēcēd-ō,

-ere,

dēcēs-si,

dēcēs-sum,

I depart : die.

IDIOMS.

ante Christum nātum, *before the birth of Christ* = *B.C.* annō Domini, *in the year of our Lord* = *A.D.*

EXERCISES.

209. I. 1. Annō dominī millēsīmō octingentēsīmō nō-nāgēsīmō sextō vivimus. 2. Augustus sexāgēsīmō tertiō annō ante Christum nātum nātus est (*was born*). 3. Vixit annōs septuāgintā sex, diēs quīnque et trīgintā. 4. Tēstāmentum annō et quattuor mēnsibus ante mortem fēcerat. 5. Tiberius tertiō et vicēsīmō annō imperī dēcēssit. 6. Templum Dīānae Ephesiae quadringentōs quinquāgintā pedēs longum, ducentōs vīgintī pedēs lātum fuit. 7. Cicerō annō aetātis tertiō et sexāgēsīmō dēcēssit. 8. Caesar annō centēsīmō ante Christum nātum nātus est. 9. Imperātor tertiō diē castra mōvit. 10. Dux in urbe diēs quīnque mānserat.

II. 1. Cicero was born in the one hundred and sixth year before Christ. 2. Augustus died in the fourteenth year of our Lord. 3. He was in the seventy-sixth year of his age. 4. Caesar lived sixty-three years. 5. On the fifth day, the enemy moved their camp two miles. 6. The Romans were greatly grieved at the death of Caesar. 7. He gave the people much money by will. 8. The consul hastened from the city on the sixth day. 9. The battle is saved by the bravery of the tenth legion. 10. The city is strengthened by the general with a wall and a ditch.

LESSON XLIX.

Passive Voice of AMŌ Continued.

210. 1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of amō, *I love* : stem amā-.

- SING. — 1. amā-ba-r, *I was loved or was being loved.*
 2. amā-bā-ris (-re), *you were loved or were being loved.*
 3. amā-bā-tur, *he was loved or was being loved.*
- PLUR. — 1. amā-bā-mur, *we were loved or were being loved.*
 2. amā-bā-mini, *you were loved or were being loved.*
 3. amā-ba-ntur, *they were loved or were being loved.*

Observe :

That the Imperfect Indicative Passive is formed just like the active (42), except that the personal endings are *pas-sive* (202, 2).

2. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of amō, *I love* : stem amā-.

- SING. — 1. amā-bo-r, *I shall be loved.*
 2. amā-be-ris (-re), *you will be loved.*
 3. amā-bi-tur, *he will be loved.*
- PLUR. — 1. amā-bi-mur, *we shall be loved.*
 2. amā-bi-mini, *you will be loved.*
 3. amā-bu-ntur, *they will be loved.*

Observe :

That the Future Indicative Passive is formed just like the active (49), except that the personal endings are *pas-sive* (200, 2).

211.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|---|---|
| auctōritās, -tātis, f. <i>authority.</i> | explōrātor, -ōris, m. <i>scout.</i> |
| āruptiō, -ōnis, f. <i>sally.</i> | inopia, -ae, f. <i>want, need.</i> |
| commeātus, -ūs, m. <i>provisions, supplies.</i> | adductus, -a, -um, <i>led on, induced.</i> |
| coniurātiō, -ōnis, f. <i>conspiracy.</i> | nōbilitas, -e, <i>of high birth, noble.</i> |

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|--------|--------------------------|
| arm-ō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>I arm.</i> |
| excit-ō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>I arouse, excite.</i> |

EXERCISES.

212. I. 1. Auctōritāte principis adductī, coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. 2. Ēruptiō Caesarī ab explōrātōribus nūntiābātur. 3. Aeduī, inopiā commeātūs adductī, ad arma excitābuntur. 4. Dux nōbilissimus ab omnibus hominibus laudābitur. 5. Militēs multi ā dextrō cornū volnerābuntur. 6. Domūs multae in urbe ā cīvibus aedificābuntur. 7. Ā magistrō laudāberis. 8. Mare ā nautīs nōn formidātur. 9. Brevī tempore cīvēs omnēs armābantur. 10. Ā magistrō optimō educābiminī.

II. 1. The soldiers, induced by the want of food, made a sally out of the town. 2. The noblest hostages were given to Caesar by the citizens. 3. The scouts will be wounded by the enemy. 4. We shall be aroused to arms in a short time. 5. You will be praised by all good men. 6. The pirates were armed with javelins and swords. 7. The chiefs of the state will be called together by Caesar. 8. The town was stormed by many thousand soldiers. 9. On the third day he moved his camp and came into the territory of the Helvetians. 10. The enemy were routed by our cavalry.



CORŌNA.

LESSON L.

213. Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

	SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
I.	FIRST PERSON.		
Sg.—N.	ego,	<i>I,</i>	
G.	mei,	<i>of me,</i>	
D.	mihi,	<i>to, for me,</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>mine or</i>
Ac.	mē,	<i>me,</i>	<i>my.</i> Voc. (masc.) mi.
Ab.	mē,	<i>from, with, by me.</i>	
PL.—N.	nōs,	<i>we,</i>	
G.	nostrī,	<i>of us,</i>	
	nostrum,		noster, nostra, nostrum,
D.	nōbīs,	<i>to, for us,</i>	<i>our or ours.</i>
Ac.	nōs,	<i>us,</i>	
Ab.	nōbīs,	<i>from, with, by us.</i>	
2.	SECOND PERSON.		
Sg.—N. V.	tū,	<i>thou,</i>	
G.	tui,	<i>of thee,</i>	
D.	tibi,	<i>to, for thee,</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your or</i>
Ac.	tē,	<i>thee,</i>	<i>yours (sing.).</i>
Ab.	tē,	<i>from, with, by thee.</i>	
PL.—N. V.	vōs,	<i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	vestrī,	<i>of you,</i>	
	vestrum,		vester, vestra, vestrum,
D.	vōbīs,	<i>to, for you,</i>	<i>your or yours (plur.).</i>
Ac.	vōs,	<i>you,</i>	
Ab.	vōbīs,	<i>from, with, by you.</i>	
3.	THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE).		
Sg.—N.	—		
G.	sui,	<i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	
D.	sibi,	<i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her(s),</i>
Ac.	se (sēs),	<i>him(self), her(self),</i>	<i>its (own).</i>
Ab.	se (sēs),	<i>from, with, him(self).</i>	

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. 97

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
PL.—N.	—	
G.	suī, of them(<i>selves</i>),	
D.	sibi, to, for them(<i>selves</i>),	suus, -a, -um, their (own), theirs.
Ac.	se (sēsē), them(<i>selves</i>),	
Ab.	se (sēsē), from, with, by them(<i>selves</i>).	

With the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, *cum* is put after the Abl. and joined with it. So *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.

214. Examine the following :

1. Ego ambulō, tū equitās, I walk, YOU ride.
2. Amō patrem meum et matrem meam, I love MY father and MY mother.
3. Equum suum laudat, he praises HIS horse.
4. Equum eōrum laudat, he praises THEIR horse.
5. Equum eius laudant, they praise HIS horse.
6. Equos tuos laudās, you (Sing.) praise YOUR (Sing.) horses (Pl.).
7. Equum vestrum laudātis, you (Pl.) praise YOUR (Pl.) horse (Sg.).

Observe :

1. That the personal pronouns, as *subjects*, are used for *emphasis* or *contrast*.
2. That *meus, noster, tuus, vester*, and *suus* are *Adjectives* and *must agree* with their nouns in *Gender, Number, and Case*.
3. That *tuus* is *singular* in its reference to *one* person, but may be either *singular* or *plural* in its *agreement* (Ex. 6).
4. That *vester* is *plural* in its reference to *more* than one person, but may be either *singular* or *plural* in its *agreement* (Ex. 7).
5. That *suus* is used for *his, hers, its, or their*, when these refer to the *subject* of the sentence; but when they do not refer to the subject of the sentence, *eius* must be used for *his, hers, or its*, and *eōrum* for *their*, referring to *masculines and neuters*, and *eārum*, referring to *feminines*.

215.

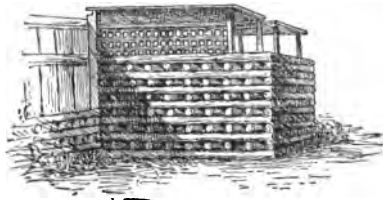
Vocabulary.

latus, -eris, n. *side, flank.*beneficium, -i, n. *kindness.*magistrātus, -ūs, m. *magistrate, officer.*calamitas, -ātis, f. *calamity, loss.*Helvētius, -a -um, *Helvetian.*insignis, -e, *noted, remarkable.*infer-ō, infer-re, intul-i, illā-tum, *'I bring upon, inflict.*scrib-ō, -ere, scrip-si, scrip-tum, *I write.*

EXERCISES.

216. I. 1. Amicus meus ad mē epistolam longam scripsit. 2. Pars civitatis Helvētiae insignem calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat. 3. Ego tēcum in Caesaris hortō ambulābō. 4. Filiae bonae sē nōn laudant. 5. Caesar ūnum latus castrōrum suōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 6. Multitudinem hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs coēgērunt. 7. Patrēs et matrēs liberōs suos amant. 8. Equōs eōrum laudāmus. 9. Rōmānī civitatem suam servāvērunt. 10. Filiōs tuōs et filiās tuās laudābis.

II. 1. We saw the girls and their horses. 2. You will be praised by your teacher. 3. The Helvetians, induced by the kindness of Caesar, departed from our province. 4. The Romans will make peace with us. 5. The teacher will give you many books. 6. The boy loves his sister and her friends. 7. I love my horse and I am loved by my horse. 8. Caesar saved the Romans and their state. 9. We shall walk with you with the greatest pleasure. 10. The king gave me much money.



AGGER.

LESSON LI.

Passive Voice of **amō** Continued.

217. 1. PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of amō, I love :
stem **amā-**.

- SING.—1. **amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,** *I have been loved or was loved.*
 2. **amā-t-us, -a, -um es,** *you have been loved or were loved.*
 3. **amā-t-us, -a, -um est,** *he has been loved or was loved.*
 PLUR.—1. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus,** *we have been loved or were loved.*
 2. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a estis,** *you have been loved or were loved.*
 3. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a sunt,** *they have been loved or were loved.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of amō, I love.

- SING.—1. **amā-t-us, -a, -um eram,** *I had been loved.*
 2. **amā-t-us, -a, -um erās,** *you had been loved.*
 3. **amā-t-us, -a, -um erat,** *he had been loved.*
 PLUR.—1. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a erāmus,** *we had been loved.*
 2. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a erātis,** *you had been loved.*
 3. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a erant,** *they had been loved.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of amō, I love.

- SING.—1. **amā-t-us, -a, -um erō,** *I shall have been loved.*
 2. **amā-t-us, -a, -um eris,** *you will have been loved.*
 3. **amā-t-us, -a, -um erit,** *he will have been loved.*
 PLUR.—1. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a erimus,** *you shall have been loved.*
 2. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a eritis,** *you will have been loved.*
 3. **amā-t-i, -ae, -a erunt,** *they will have been loved.*

Observe :

That *all Perfect* tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perfect Passive Participle in **-us, -a, -um** and the verb **sum**.

218. Examine the following :

1. **Filius amātus est,** *the son was loved.*
2. **Filia amāta est,** *the daughter was loved.*
3. **Dōnum amātum est,** *the gift was loved.*
4. **Filii amāti sunt,** *the sons were loved.*
5. **Filiae amātae sunt,** *the daughters were loved.*
6. **Dōna amāta sunt,** *the gifts were loved.*

Observe :

That the Participle, *amātus*, -a, -um, is inflected like any other adjective, and *must agree with its subject in Gender, Number, and Case.*

219.

Vocabulary.

senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*

studium, -i, n. *zeal.*

socius, -i, m. *ally.*

subsidium, -i, n. *help : support.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I throw into confusion, disturb.*

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I call out, summon.*

IDIOMS.

ā novissimō āgmine, in the rear.

ā fronte, in front.

ex locō inferiōre, from a lower position.

ex locō superiōre, from a higher position : vantage ground.

EXERCISES.

220. I. 1. *Hostēs ā novissimō āgmine ā nostrīs equitibus perturbāti sunt.* 2. *Tēla ex superiōre locō in peditēs nostrōs iactāta erant.* 3. *Sorōrēs ā frātribus suis amātae sunt.* 4. *Studium sociōrum ā senātū laudātum erit.* 5. *Militēs plūrimī ā fronte volnerāti sunt.* 6. *Caesar ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat.* 7. *Māgna pars oppidānōrum ad bellum ēvocātā est.* 8. *Ā magistrō laudāta eris.* 9. *Proelium ācritēr pūgnātum est.* 10. *Caesar volneribus multīs volnerātus est.*

II. 1. Three legions had been called out of their winter-quarters. 2. The great zeal of the allies was announced to the senate. 3. The enemy were driven by the townsmen from a higher position. 4. The city had been strengthened by a wall and a ditch. 5. You will have been saved by your slaves. 6. The daughters of the king had been blamed. 7. The enemy had been conquered in front and in the rear. 8. The town was stormed by our men from a lower position. 9. We have been saved out of great danger. 10. Much money was brought back by the soldiers.

LESSON LII.

Irregular Adjectives.

221. The following six Adjectives in *-us* and three in *-er* have *-ius* in the Gen. Sing. and *-i* in the Dat. Sing., but are otherwise like *bonus* (55).

<i>alius, alia, aliud, another.</i>	<i>solus, sola, solum, alone, sole.</i>
<i>ullus, ulla, ullum, any.</i>	<i>nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, none, no one.</i>
<i>tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole, all.</i>	<i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.</i>
<i>alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two).</i>	<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two).</i>
<i>uter, utra, utrum, which (of two) ?</i>	

222. Declension of *alius* and of *alter*.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alia,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>	<i>alter,</i>	<i>altera,</i>	<i>alterum,</i>
Gen.	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>
Dat.	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>alterī,</i>	<i>alterī,</i>	<i>alterī,</i>
Acc.	<i>aliū,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>	<i>alterū,</i>	<i>alterā,</i>	<i>alterum,</i>
Abl.	<i>aliō,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliō.</i>	<i>alterō,</i>	<i>alterā,</i>	<i>alterō.</i>

The Plural of all these Adjectives is regular.

223. Examine the following combinations:

<i>alius.... alius,</i>	<i>one.....another.</i>
<i>alii..... alii,</i>	<i>some.....others.</i>
<i>alius.... aliud,</i>	<i>one one thing...another another.</i>
<i>alii..... alia,</i>	<i>some one thing..others another.</i>
<i>alter ... alter,</i>	<i>} the one.....the other.</i>
<i>ūnus.... alter,</i>	

224. Vocabulary.

<i>dum</i> (temporal conj.), <i>while.</i>	<i>libertās, -tās, f. liberty, freedom.</i>
<i>undique</i> (adv.), <i>on all sides, from all sides.</i>	<i>pāgus, -i, m. canton, district.</i>
<i>iugum, -i, n. yoke.</i>	<i>sub</i> (prep. with Acc.), <i>under.</i>

IDIOMS.

alii aliam in partem, some in one direction, others in another.
dum hæc geruntur, while these things were going on.

EXERCISES.

225. I. 1. *Lībertās Rōmānīs grātissima erat.* 2. *Alius aliud dixit.* 3. *Pāgus ūnus cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.* 4. *In alterā parte flūminis lēgātum reliquit.* 5. *Utrī puerōrum librum dedistī?* 6. *Alterī librum, alterī cultrum dedī.* 7. *Nōmen Caesaris urbī tōtī cārum fuit.* 8. *Liberī Divitiacī sōlius obsidēs nōn fuērunt.* 9. *Dum haec geruntur, aliī aliam in partem fūgērunt.* 10. *Undique ab hōrā septimā ācriter pūgnātum est (it was fought).*

II. 1. *Caesar defended the liberty of the whole city.* 2. *You are dearer to no one than to me.* 3. *Some say one thing, others another.* 4. *The people of one canton destroyed the consul's army.* 5. *Of the two sons, one was a general, the other a poet.* 6. *While these things were going on, Caesar hastened from the city to the camp.* 7. *We have read the books of neither poet.* 8. *Soldiers are summoned from all sides.* 9. *We shall drive the enemy, some in one direction, others in another.* 10. *The enemy sent the army of one consul under the yoke.*



LESSON LIII.

Passive Voice of MONEŌ. HĪC, HAEC, HŌC.

226. 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of moneŏ, I advise : stem **monē-**.

SING. — 1.	monē-o-r,	<i>I am advised or am being advised.</i>
2.	monē-ris (or -re),	<i>you are advised or are being advised.</i>
3.	monē-tur,	<i>he is advised or is being advised.</i>
PLUR. — 1.	monē-mur,	<i>we are advised or are being advised.</i>
2.	monē-mini,	<i>you are advised or are being advised.</i>
3.	monē-ntur,	<i>they are advised or are being advised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of moneŏ, I advise.

SING. — 1.	monē-ba-r,	<i>I was advised or was being advised.</i>
2.	monē-bā-ris (or -re),	<i>you were advised or were being advised.</i>
3.	monē-bā-tur,	<i>he was advised or was being advised.</i>
PLUR. — 1.	monē-bā-mur,	<i>we were advised or were being advised.</i>
2.	monē-bā-mini,	<i>you were advised or were being advised.</i>
3.	monē-ba-ntur,	<i>they were advised or were being advised.</i>

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of moneŏ, I advise.

SING. — 1.	monē-bo-r,	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
2.	monē-be-ris (or -re),	<i>you will be advised.</i>
3.	monē-bi-tur,	<i>he will be advised.</i>
PLUR. — 1.	monē-bi-mur,	<i>we shall be advised.</i>
2.	monē-bi-mini,	<i>you will be advised.</i>
3.	monē-bu-ntur,	<i>they will be advised.</i>

Observe :

That these tenses are formed just like the active, save that the personal endings are *Passive* (202, 2).

227. hīc, haec, hōc, this (of mine).

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
SING.—Nom.	hīc,	haec,	hōc,	PLUR.—hī,	hae,	haec,
Gen.	hīius,	hīius,	hīius,	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
Dat.	hīe,	hīe,	hīe,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Acc.	hūc,	hanc,	hōc,	hōs,	hēs,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

228. 1. *Hic*, *this*, is demonstrative Pronoun of the first person and refers to that which is nearer the speaker.

2. When used alone, *hic* is a *Pronoun*; when used with a noun, it is an *Adjective* and *must agree* with its Noun.

229.

Vocabulary.

initium, -i, n. *beginning*.

fuga, -ae, f. *flight*.

mulier, -eris, f. *woman*.

stipendium, -i, n. *tribute*.

vīcus, -i, m. *village*.

adversus, -a, -um, *unsuccessful*.

secundus, -a, -um, *prosperous*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe*.

comple-ō, -plēre, -plē-vī, -plē-tum, *I fill completely, fill*.

contine-ō, -tin-ēre, -tin-uī, -ten-tum, *I hold together, contain, bound*.

EXERCISES.

230. I. 1. Undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur. 2. Equitēs hūius fugae initium fēcērunt. 3. Helvētiī vicōs omnēs incendunt. 4. Frūmenta in hīs agris mātūra nōn sunt. 5. Hōc stipendium populum dolēbit. 6. Discipulī ā magistrō monentur. 7. Tōtus mōns militibus complēbātur. 8. Liberī huīc mulierī cārī sunt. 9. Multī hominēs rēbus secundīs dēlectābuntur. 10. Oppidum adversō proeliō dēlēbitur.

II. 1. You will be warned by your teacher. 2. The ripe corn was destroyed by the enemy. 3. These soldiers were held together in the camp. 4. The Helvetians, induced by these things, remained in the village. 5. These women will be frightened. 6. The houses in this city will be filled with soldiers. 7. The unsuccessful battle of these horsemen had been blamed by the leader. 8. The affairs of this state were very prosperous. 9. By the arrival of these (men), the baseness of the flight was wiped out (dēlēō). 10. The camp of the enemy is being moved from this place.

LESSON LIV.

231. Demonstrative Pronouns Continued.

	iste, that (of yours).			ille, that (of his).		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
SING.—Nom.	iste,	ista,	istud,	ille,	illa,	illud,
Gen.	istius,	istius,	istius,	illius,	illius,	illius,
Dat.	istī,	istī,	istī,	illī,	illī,	illī,
Acc.	istum,	istam,	istud,	illum,	illam,	illud,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	illō,	illā,	illō.
PLUR.—Nom.	istī,	istae,	ista,	illī,	illae,	illa,
Gen.	istōrum,	istārum,	istorum,	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
Dat.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
Acc.	istōs,	istās,	ista,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

232. 1. **Iste** refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the second person.

2. **Ille** refers to that which is more remote from the speaker and is often used in contrast to **hic**.

3. **Hic** and **ille** are sometimes used in contrast: **hic**, the latter; **ille**, the former.

4. **Iste** and **ille**, when used alone, are *Pronouns*: when used with Nouns, they are *Adjectives* and *must agree* with the Nouns.

233. Vocabulary.

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horace*.

cultus, -ūs, m. *cultivation, civilization*.

Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul*.

hūmānitās, -ētis, f. *humanity, refinement*.

Aquitānus, -ī, m. *an Aquitanian*.

lingua, -ae, f. *language, tongue*.

inter se differre, to differ among themselves. **institutum**, -ī, n. *custom, usage*.

absūm, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *I am distant, absent*.

differ-ō, **differ-re**, **distul-ī**, **dīlā-tum**, *I differ*.

EXERCISES.

234. I. 1. Horātius et Caesar erant Rōmānī. 2. Ille poēta erat, hic dux. 3. Aquitānī nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 4. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Ā cultū et hūmanitāte prōvinciae absunt. 7. Illō diē Caesar ad castra vēnit. 8. Iste equus validissimus est. 9. In illō oppidō multī militēs fuērunt. 10. Equitēs omnēs ad illud oppidum fēstīnābant.

II. 1. We shall see those soldiers (*of yours*) in the camp. 2. These men differ among themselves in customs. 3. The Aquitanians were conquered by the Romans. 4. The former dwelt in Gaul, the latter in Italy. 5. The leader will blame those soldiers of yours. 6. On that day Caesar moved his camp. 7. These horsemen saved that city. 8. This boy is good, that (one) is bad. 9. These soldiers were fleeing, some in one direction, others in another. 10. The queen gave money to that good maid-servant.



DOMUS.

LESSON LV.

Passive Voice of **MONEŌ** Continued. Determinative Pronouns.

235. 1. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneŏ**, *I advise*: stem **monē-**.

- Sg.—1. **moni-t-us, -a, -um sum**, *I have been advised or was advised.*
 2. **moni-t-us, -a, -um es**, *you have been advised or were advised.*
 3. **moni-t-us, -a, -um est**, *he has been advised or was advised.*
- PL.—1. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a sumus**, *we have been advised or were advised.*
 2. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a estis**, *you have been advised or were advised.*
 3. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a sunt**, *they have been advised or were advised.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneŏ**, *I advise*.

- Sg.—1. **moni-t-us, -a, -um eram**, *I had been advised.*
 2. **moni-t-us, -a, -um erās**, *you had been advised.*
 3. **moni-t-us, -a, -um erat**, *they had been advised.*
- PL.—1. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a erāmus**, *we had been advised.*
 2. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a erātis**, *you had been advised.*
 3. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a erant**, *they had been advised.*

3. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneŏ**, *I advise*.

- Sg.—1. **moni-t-us, -a, -um erŏ**, *I shall have been advised.*
 2. **moni-t-us, -a, -um eris**, *you will have been advised.*
 3. **moni-t-us, -a, -um erit**, *he will have been advised.*
- PL.—1. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a erimus**, *we shall have been advised.*
 2. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a eritis**, *you will have been advised.*
 3. **moni-t-I, -ae, -a erunt**, *they will have been advised.*

Observe :

That all Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perf. Passive Participle in **-us, -a, -um** and the verb **sum**.

236. ipse, he, -self (myself, himself, herself, themselves).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsi,	ipsae,	ipsa,
Gen.	ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsorum,	ipsarum,	ipsorum,
Dat.	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
Acc.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipso,	ipsa,	ipso.	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

237. Ipse is a distinctive Pronoun and separates a subject or an object from all others. It is used for emphasis and must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **se, self**.

238. Examine the following :

- Ipse fecit, he himself did it** (emphatic).
- Se amat, he loves himself** (reflexive).
- Ipse se amat, he himself loves himself** (emphatic and reflexive).

239.**Vocabulary.**

longē (adv.), *by far, far.*
cupiditas, -atis, f. *desire.*

Germānus, -i, m. *a German.*

apud (prep. with Acc.), *among, at.*

pro (prep. with Abl.), *for, in proportion to.*

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*

divid-ō, -ere, -vis-i, -vis-um, *I divide, separate.*

EXERCISES.

240. I. 1. Apud Helvētios longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. **2.** Ipse rēgnī cupiditātē adductus coniūratiōnem fecit. **3.** Unā ex parte flūmen Helvētios ā Germānis dividit. **4.** Pro multitūdine hominum finēs angustos habent. **5.** Pueri ā magistrō māximā cum dīligentiā moniti sunt. **6.** Puellae ā militibus territae erant. **7.** Oppida multa ā pirātis delēta erunt. **8.** Montēs altissimī hominibus complēti sunt. **9.** A patre et mātrem monitus es. **10.** Rēx puellae ipsi equum validum dabit.

II. 1. The king himself had conquered the enemy. **2.** The boys have been advised by the teacher himself. **3.**

Good boys do not praise themselves. 4. The judge himself praises himself. 5. Caesar was by far the best leader among the Romans. 6. The Germans themselves had been frightened by the army of Caesar. 7. The Germans were held together by narrow boundaries. 8. Is he himself praising himself? 9. The enemy had been seen in the town. 10. The soldiers will have been kept in camp many months.

LESSON LVI.

Determinative Pronouns Continued.

241. *is, this, that, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,	ei (iī),	eae,	ea,
Gen.	sius,	sius,	sius,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
Dat.	ei,	ei,	ei,	eis (iis),	eis (iis),	eis (iis),
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eis (iis),	eis (iis),	eis (iis).

idem (is + dem), the same.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	idem,	eadem,	idem,	eīdem (iīdem),	eaedem,	eadam,
Gen.	siusdem,	siusdem,	siusdem,	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
Dat.	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),
Acc.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Abl.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem,	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem).

242. 1. *Is* is a Determinative Pronoun and serves as the lacking Pronoun of the third person.

2. When used without a noun, *is* is a *Pronoun*: when used with a noun, it is an *Adjective* and *must agree* with its Noun.

3. The Genitive Case of **is** is used as a possessive when reference is *not* made to the subject of the sentence : **cius** is used for *his, hers, its* ; **eōrum** for *their*, referring to *masculine* and *neuter* nouns ; **eārum** for *their*, referring to *feminine* nouns (214, 5).

243.

Vocabulary.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f. oration.*

indiciū, -ī, *n. information.*

iudiciū, -ī, *n. trial.*

per (prep. with Acc.), *through, by.*

post (prep. with Acc.), *after.*

parātus, -a, -um, *ready, prepared.*

enūntiō, -ōre, -āvī, -ātum, *I announce.*

IDIOMS.

in mātrimonium dare, *give in marriage.*

inter se dare, *exchange.*

per **indiciū**, *by informers.*

causam dicere, *plead one's cause.*

EXERCISES.

244. I. 1. Eā ōrātiōne adductī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. 2. Eōdem diē Caesar castra mōvit. 3. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium enūntiāta. 4. Eī filiā suā in mātrimonium dat. 5. Aeduī et Helvētīi inter sē fidem dant. 6. Post eius mortem Helvētīi id (*this thing*) faciunt. 7. Ad iūdicium hominum milia decem coēgit. 8. In eōdem locō diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. 9. Orgetorīx ex vinculis causam dīxit. 10. Ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt ; ipsī in suis finibus bellum gerunt.

II. 1. The same ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. They were pleading their cause and were ready for all things. 3. This thing will be announced to the same man. 4. His daughter was given in marriage to Caesar. 5. Induced by these things, they exchange faith. 6. The general was held in great honor among them. 7. After that battle Caesar led his forces into camp. 8. Through him the city had been preserved. 9. But by the same man, freedom was destroyed. 10. And he was killed by the senators in the senate-house.

LESSON LVII.

Relative Pronouns.

245. *qui, who, which, that, what.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui,	quae,	quod,	qui,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

246. Examine the following :

1. *Ego, qui haec faciō, sum tuus pater, I, who do this, am your father.*

2. *Tu, qui haec facis, es meus pater, you, who do this, are my father.*

3. *Is, qui haec dicit, Rōmānus est, he, who says this, is a Roman.*

4. *Urbs, quam vidēs, Rōma est, the city, which you see, is Rome.*

5. *Equos, qui in agris sunt, amō, I love the horses which are in the fields.*

6. *Calamitatēs, quas tulērunt, grāvēs erant, the disasters that they bore were severe.*

7. *Puer, cui magister librum dedit, bonus est, the boy, to whom the teacher gave the book, is good.*

8. *Caesar, cuius militēs vidēs, adest, Caesar, whose soldiers you see, is present.*

Observe :

1. That the Relative Pronoun refers back to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *Antecedent*.

2. That the relative pronoun *agrees* with its *antecedent* in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Person*.

3. That the Case of the Relative Pronoun is often not the same as that of the antecedent, but depends upon its relation in the clause in which it stands.

247.

Vocabulary.

lĕgātĭō, -ōnis, f. *embassy.*

quā dē causā, for which cause, wherefore.

Rhēnus, -i, m. *Rhine.*oceānus, -i, m. *ocean.*ad (prep. with Acc.), *near, at.*trāns (prep. with Acc.), *across.*

incol-ō,	-ere,	-col-ul,	—	<i>I dwell, inhabit.</i>
pertine-ō,	-ēre,	-tin-ul,	—	<i>I pertain, stretch.</i>
rescind-ō,	-ere,	-sci-di,	-scis-sum,	<i>I cut down.</i>
obtinē-ō,	-ēre,	-tin-ul,	-ten-tum,	<i>I hold, obtain.</i>

EXERCISES.

248. I. 1. Caesar pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, rescidit. 2. Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae. 3. Gallī cum Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt. 4. Quā dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs (*rest of*) Gallōs virtūte praecedunt. 5. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad eam partem oceānī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet. 6. Helvētīi lĕgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lĕgātōnis Nammēius principem locum obtinēbat. 7. Eā legiōne, quam habet, mātūrat ab urbe. 8. Ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētīis dīvidit, vēnit. 9. Tū, quī monitus es, filius meus es. 10. Ea, quae monita erat, filia mea est.

II. 1. The same men, who came to Caesar, were the ambassadors. 2. We have many letters which Cicero wrote. 3. The soldiers, who fight bravely, are loved by the generals. 4. The girl, who was praised, is the farmer's daughter. 5. I, who write this letter, am your friend. 6. The horse, which you gave me, is strong. 7. The wars, which the Romans fought, were severe. 8. The enemy had seized the bridge which is near Geneva. 9. The soldiers, whom you saw, were Romans. 10. Those, who tell across the Rhine, are called Germans.

249. RULE.—*The Relative agrees with its Antecent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case depends on its relation in the clause in which it stands.*

LESSON LVIII.

Passive Voice of EMĀ, *I buy*.

250. 1. PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of emā, *I buy*: stem eme-.

SING. — 1. em-o-r, *I am bought or being bought.*
 2. emē-ris (or -re), *you are bought or being bought.*
 3. emi-tur, *he is bought or being bought.*

PLUR. — 1. emi-mur, *we are bought or being bought.*
 2. emi-mini, *you are bought or being bought.*
 3. emu-ntur, *he is bought or being bought.*

2. IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of emā, *I buy*.

SING. — 1. emē-ba-r, *I was bought or being bought.*
 2. emē-bā-ris (or -re), *you were bought or being bought.*
 3. emē-bā-tur, *he was bought or being bought.*

PLUR. — 1. emē-bā-mur, *we were bought or being bought.*
 2. emē-bā-mini, *you were bought or being bought.*
 3. emē-ba-ntur, *they were bought or being bought.*

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of emā, *I buy*.

SING. — 1. ema-r, *I shall be bought.*
 2. emē-ris (or -re), *you will be bought.*
 3. emē-tur, *he will be bought.*

PLUR. — 1. emē-mur, *we shall be bought.*
 2. emē-mini, *you will be bought.*
 3. eme-ntur, *they will be bought.*

Observe :

That the Future of the third Conjugation is *not* formed with -b-o-r, as in the first and second.

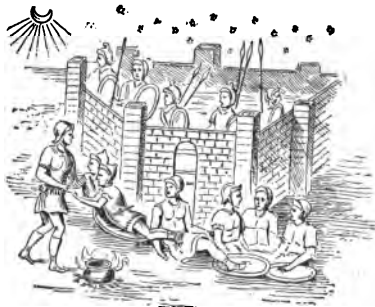
251.

Vocabulary.

praesidium, -i, n. <i>guard, garrison.</i>	nāvis, -is, f. <i>ship.</i>
castellum, -i, n. <i>fort.</i>	vadum, -i, n. <i>ford.</i>
complūrēs, -ia (gen. -ium), adj. <i>many, a great many.</i>	mūnitio, -ōnis, f. <i>fortification, defences.</i>
altitūdō, -inis, f. <i>height, depth.</i>	Rhodanus, -i, m. <i>the Rhone.</i>
perfici-ō, -fic-ere, -fēc-i, -fec-tum, <i>I finish, accomplish.</i>	
dispōn-ō, -pōn-ere, -pos-ui, -posi-tum, <i>I station, place, post.</i>	
commūni-ō, -mūn-ire, -mūn-ivi, -mūn-itum, <i>I fortify.</i>	
iung-ō, iung-ere, iūnx-i, iūnc-tum, <i>I join, join together.</i>	
repell-ō, repell-ere, reppul-i, repul-sum, <i>I drive back, repulse.</i>	

EXERCISES.

252. I. 1. Id opus perficitur et praesidia dispōnuntur. 2. Hic lacus in flūmen Rhodanum influit. 3. Fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis monte Iūrā dīviduntur. 4. Eōdem diē castella commūnit. 5. Proximō diē lēgātī ad eum mittentur. 6. Nullī iter per prōvinciam dedit. 7. Complūrēs nāvēs iungēbantur. 8. Altitūdō flūminis minima erat. 9. Helvētīi aliī vadīs flūmen trānseunt (*cross*). 10. Hī mūnitiōne operis repellēbantur.



CASTELLUM.

II. 1. We shall be ruled by a good king. 2. This work was quickly finished by the Roman people. 3. The guards

were placed on the walls of the town. 4. You will be repulsed by the Helvetians. 5. The depth of the Rhone was very great. 6. Many rafts were joined together. 7. On the same day, the soldiers had come together from the province. 8. I was left behind by my friends. 9. Caesar fortifies the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 10. You are sent to Caesar.

LESSON LIX.

Passive of **EMŌ** Continued. Interrogative Pronouns.

253. 1. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy*.

- Sg.—1. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um sum**, *I have been bought or was bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um es**, *you have been bought or were bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um est**, *he has been bought or was bought.*
 Pl.—1. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a sumus**, *we have been bought or were bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a estis**, *you have been bought or were bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a sunt**, *they have been bought or were bought.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy*.

- Sg.—1. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um eram**, *I had been bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um erās**, *you had been bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um erat**, *he had been bought.*
 Pl.—1. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a erāmus**, *we had been bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a erātis**, *you had been bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a erant**, *they had been bought.*

3. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy*.

- Sg.—1. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um erō**, *I shall have been bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um eris**, *you will have been bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-us, -a, -um erit**, *he will have been bought.*
 Pl.—1. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a erimus**, *we shall have been bought.*
 2. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a eritis**, *you will have been bought.*
 3. **ēmp-t-i, -ae, -a erunt**, *they will have been bought.*

Observe :

That all Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perf. Pass. Participle in *-us, -a, -um* and the verb *sum*.

254. *quis, quid ? who ? which ? what ?*

SINGULAR.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>quis ? who ?</i>	<i>quid ? what ?</i>
Gen.	<i>cūius ? whose ? of whom ?</i>	<i>cūius ? whose ? of what ?</i>
Dat.	<i>cui ? to or for whom ?</i>	<i>cui ? to or for what ?</i>
Acc.	<i>quem ? whom ?</i>	<i>quid ? what ?</i>
Abl.	<i>quō ? by, with, from whom ?</i>	<i>quō ? by, with, from what ?</i>

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>qui ? who ?</i>	<i>quae ? who ?</i>	<i>quae ? what ?</i>
Gen.	<i>quōrum ? whose ? of whom ?</i>	<i>quārum ? whose ? of whom ?</i>	<i>quōrum ? whose ? of what ?</i>
Dat.	<i>quibus ? to or for whom ?</i>	<i>quibus ? to or for whom ?</i>	<i>quibus ? to or for what ?</i>
Acc.	<i>quōs ? whom ?</i>	<i>quās ? whom ?</i>	<i>quae ? what ?</i>
Abl.	<i>quibus ? by, with, from whom ?</i>	<i>quibus ? by, with, from whom ?</i>	<i>quibus ? by, with, from what ?</i>

255. When the interrogative stands alone, it is a Pronoun and has the above-given forms : when it agrees with a Noun, it is an Adjective and has the forms of the Relative (245).

256. Examine the following :

- | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quis hōc fēcit ?</i> | <i>who did this ?</i> (Sing.) | } All interrogative pronouns. |
| 2. <i>Qui hōc fēcērunt ?</i> | <i>who did this ?</i> (Plur.) | |
| 3. <i>Quid fēcisti ?</i> | <i>what did you do ?</i> (Sing.) | |
| 4. <i>Quae fēcisti ?</i> | <i>what did you do ?</i> (Plur.) | |
| 5. <i>Qui homō hōc fēcit ?</i> | <i>what man did this ?</i> (Sing.) | } All interrogative adjectives. |
| 6. <i>Qui hominēs hōc fēcērunt ?</i> | <i>what men did this ?</i> (Plur.) | |
| 7. <i>Quem librum habēs ?</i> | <i>what book have you ?</i> | |
| 8. <i>Quās puellās vidisti ?</i> | <i>what girls have you seen ?</i> | |
| 9. <i>Quae animālia in agrō sunt ?</i> | <i>what animals are in the field ?</i> | |

EXERCISES.

257. I. 1. Per quōs relinqüebātur ūna via? 2. Quī lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt? 3. Cūius rei cupiditāte adductus coniūrātiōnem fēcit? 4. Ex quā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat? 5. Quis Helvētiīs erat amicus? 6. Ā quō haec rēs perficitur? 7. Cui Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam dedērunt? 8. Quod opus ā Caesare perficiētur? 9. Quid pōstulās? 10. Quōrum finēs Helvētīi vāstāvērunt?

II. 1. Who saw this man in the fields? 2. Whose daughter did Dumnorix marry? 3. By whom had ambassadors been sent to Dumnorix? 4. For whom will these things have been accomplished? 5. From what state had the daughter of Orgetorix been married? 6. By whom have you been ruled? 7. For whom has this garden been bought? 8. In whose house had we been left? 9. To whom had you been sent? 10. In what school were you educated?

LESSON LX.**Passive Voice of CAPİÖ.****258.** 1. **PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of capiō, I take.**

SING. —1. capi- o-r ,	<i>I am taken or being taken.</i>
2. capi- ris (or -re),	<i>you are taken or being taken.</i>
3. capi- tur ,	<i>he is taken or being taken.</i>
PLUR. —1. capi- mur ,	<i>we are taken or being taken.</i>
2. capi- mini ,	<i>you are taken or being taken.</i>
3. capi- u-ntur ,	<i>he is taken or being taken.</i>

2. **IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of capiō, I take.**

SING. —1. capi- ē-ba-r ,	<i>I was taken or being taken.</i>
2. capi- ē-bā-ris (or -re),	<i>you were taken or being taken.</i>
3. capi- ē-bā-tur ,	<i>he was taken or being taken.</i>
PLUR. —1. capi- ē-bā-mur ,	<i>we were taken or being taken.</i>
2. capi- ē-bā-mini ,	<i>you were taken or being taken.</i>
3. capi- ē-ba-ntur ,	<i>they were taken or being taken.</i>

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of **capĭō**, *I take*.

SING. — 1. capia-r ,	<i>I shall be taken.</i>
2. capĭē-ris (or -re),	<i>you will be taken.</i>
3. capĭē-tur ,	<i>he will be taken.</i>

PLUR. — 1. capĭē-mur ,	<i>we shall be taken.</i>
2. capĭē-mini ,	<i>you will be taken.</i>
3. capĭē-ntur ,	<i>they will be taken.</i>

259.

Vocabulary.

bellicōsus , -a, -um, <i>warlike</i> .	circum (prep. with Acc.), <i>around</i> ,			
extrā (prep. with Acc.), <i>without</i> ,	<i>near</i> .			
<i>beyond</i> .	angustiae , -arum, f. <i>narrows</i> , <i>defile</i> .			
cōspectus , -ūs, m. <i>sight</i> , <i>view</i> .	servitūs , -ūtis, f. <i>slavery</i> , <i>servitude</i> .			
paene , adv. <i>almost</i> , <i>nearly</i> .	proelium , -i, n. <i>battle</i> .			
absum ,	abesse ,	abfui ,	—	<i>I am away</i> , <i>am distant</i> .
cōscrib-ō ,	-scrib-ere ,	-scrip-si ,	-scrip-tum ,	<i>I enroll</i> , <i>levy</i> .
ēduc-ō ,	-duc-ere ,	-dux-i ,	-duc-tum ,	<i>I lead out</i> , <i>lead forth</i> .

EXERCISES.

260. I. 1. Hic locus ab hostibus capiēbātur. 2. Ea mūnitiō, quae perficitur, ā Labiēnō tenētur. 3. Duae legiōnēs, quae circum Aquilēiam erant, ex hibernīs ēdūcuntur. 4. Homīnēs bellicōsī nōn longē ā prōvinciā aberant. 5. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum. 6. Paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī liberī eōrum in servitūtem dūcentur. 7. Per angustias in Aeduōrum finēs vēnerant et ā Caesare recipiēbantur. 8. Exercitus in opidum, quod est ceteriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, dūcētur. 9. Hōc iter in ūlteriōrem Galliam proximum erat. 10. Ipse in Italiam māgnis itineribus contendit.

II. 1. You will be taken by the enemy. 2. These things are being accomplished. 3. Many legions will be enrolled. 4. Warlike men will not be received into the province. 5. The Romans were six miles distant from the town. 6. Almost all the townsmen were killed in that battle. 7. The

children of the noblest (men) of the state are being led into slavery. 8. What legions were near Aquileia? 9. Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit. 10. You are taken : you will be taken : we were taken.

LESSON LXI.

Passive Voice of **audiō**.

261. 1. PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear*.

SING. — 1. audi-or ,	<i>I am heard or being heard.</i>
2. audi-ris (or -re),	<i>you are heard or being heard.</i>
3. audi-tur ,	<i>he is heard or being heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audi-mur ,	<i>we are heard or being heard.</i>
2. audi-minī ,	<i>you are heard or being heard.</i>
3. audi-untur ,	<i>they are heard or being heard.</i>

2. IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear*.

SING. — 1. audiē-ba-r ,	<i>I was heard or was being heard.</i>
2. audiē-bā-ris (or -re),	<i>you were heard or were being heard.</i>
3. audiē-bā-tur ,	<i>he was heard or was being heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audiē-bā-mur ,	<i>we were heard or were being heard.</i>
2. audiē-bā-minī ,	<i>you were heard or were being heard.</i>
3. audiē-ba-untur ,	<i>they were heard or were being heard.</i>

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear*.

SING. — 1. audia-r ,	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
2. audiē-ris (or -re),	<i>you will be heard.</i>
3. audiē-tur ,	<i>he will be heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audiē-mur ,	<i>we shall be heard.</i>
2. audiē-minī ,	<i>you will be heard.</i>
3. audie-untur ,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

4. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear*.

SING. — 1. audi-t-us, -a, -um sum ,	<i>I have been heard or was heard.</i>
2. audi-t-us, -a, -um es ,	<i>you have been heard or were heard.</i>
3. audi-t-us, -a, -um est ,	<i>he has been heard or was heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a sumus ,	<i>we have been heard or were heard.</i>
2. audi-t-i, -ae, -a estis ,	<i>you have been heard or were heard.</i>
3. audi-t-i, -ae, -a sunt ,	<i>they have been heard or were heard.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of audiŏ, I hear.

SING. — 1. audi-t-us, -a, -um eram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
2. audi-t-us, -a, -um erās,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
3. audi-t-us, -a, -um erat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a erāmus,	<i>we had been heard.</i>
2. audi-t-i, -ae, -a erātis,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
3. audi-t-i, -ae, -a erant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of audiŏ, I hear.

SING. — 1. audi-t-us, -a, -um erō,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
2. audi-t-us, -a, -um eris,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
3. audi-t-us, -a, -um erit,	<i>he will have been heard.</i>
PLUR. — 1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a erimus,	<i>we shall have been heard.</i>
2. audi-t-i, -ae, -a eritis,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
3. audi-t-i, -ae, -a erunt,	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

262.

Vocabulary.

captivus, -i, m. <i>captive.</i>	colloquium, -i, n. <i>conference.</i>
mercātor, -ōris, m. <i>merchant.</i>	aciēs, -iē, f. <i>line of battle.</i>
sci-ō, sci-re, sci-vi, sci-tum,	<i>I know.</i>
impedi-ō, -pedi-re, -pedi-vi, -pedi-tum,	<i>I hinder, prevent.</i>

EXERCISES.

263. I. 1. Nihil dē bellō māgnō scitum erat. 2. Rēs multae ā captivīs audientur. 3. Mercātōrēs ā Gallis impediēbantur. 4. Castra ā primā aciē mūnita erunt. 5. Ad colloquium ā Caesare ventum est. 6. Sermōnēs hominum clārōrum libenter (*gladly*) audientur. 7. Iūre nostrō nōn impediēmur. 8. Castella multa mūnita erunt. 9. Lēgātī dē hāc rē audītī sunt. 10. Vōs ā militibus nostris impediēmini.

II. 1. You are being heard : you were being heard : we shall be heard. 2. Nothing is known about these captives. 3. The city was fortified by the soldiers of the third

legion. 4. Many merchants were coming to the town. 5. He was not hindered in (the exercise of) his right. 6. What had been known by the captives? 7. By whom will you be prevented? 8. Our plans were known by the enemy. 9. I was not and shall not be prevented. 10. The oration, which Cicero delivered (*habēō*), was heard by many.

LESSON LXII.

264.

Infinitive Mood.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRES.—amā-re, to love.

amā-ri, to be loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRES.—monē-re, to advise.

monē-ri, to be advised.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRES.—eme-re, to buy.

em-i, to be bought.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRES.—audi-re, to hear.

audi-ri, to be heard.

Observe :

1. That *all* Present Active Infinitives are formed by adding *-re* to the stem.

2. That all Present Passive Infinitives change final *e* to *i*, except in the Third Conjugation, in which *-re* is dropped and *only -i* is added.

265. Examine the following :

1. Dulce est prō patriā mori, *it is sweet TO DIE for one's country.*
2. Vincere scis, Hannibal, *you know how TO CONQUER, Hannibal.*
3. Debuit pati, *he ought TO SUFFER.*
4. Parātus abire, *ready TO DEPART.*
5. Pugnare coepit, *he began TO FIGHT.*

Observe :

1. That in the first example *morī* is used as a noun in the *neuter gender* and hence *dulce* must be neuter to agree with it.

2. That in the other examples the Infinitives *vincere*, *pati*, *abire*, *pūgnāre* are objects of the verbs.

266.

Vocabulary.

socius, -i, m. *ally*.

deditiō, -ōnis, f. *surrender*.

sine (prep. with Abl.), *without*.

dēbe-ō, *dēbē-re*, *deb-ui*, *dēb-itum*,

— *coepi-isse*, *coep-i*, —

iube-ō, *iubē-re*, *iūs-si*, *iūs-sum*,

impedimenta, -ōrum, n. *baggage*.

inopia, -ae, f. *want*.

ob (prep. with Acc.), *on account of*.

I ought, owe.

began (used only in the Perf. tenses).

I order.

EXERCISES.

267. I. 1. Rōmānī cum sociīs pūgnāre nōn dēbuērunt. 2. Helvētīi lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 3. Cōpia sociōrum sine periculō discēdere coepērunt. 4. Ob eās rēs ad impedimenta equitēs mittere properāvit. 5. Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, pācem facere coāctī sunt. 6. Difficile est hominēs bellicōsōs superāre. 7. Caesar Helvētiōs suum adventum exspectāre iūssit. 8. Līberī eōrum in servitūtem duci nōn dēbuērunt. 9. Dulce est māgnā cum virtūte pūgnāre. 10. Ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legere grātum est.

1. We ought to save money. 2. Caesar was prepared to defend the Aeduians. 3. It is pleasant to run in the fields. 4. The Helvetians had been compelled to leave their baggage. 5. Induced by the want of all things, they began to flee without their baggage. 6. On account of this thing, Caesar ordered the allies to hasten from the city. 7. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify the camp. 8. It was difficult to hold back the soldiers. 9. It is best to hasten to the province across the Rhone. 10. They began to wage war with the Romans.

268. RULE.—*The Infinitive, as a neuter Noun, may be used as a Subject.*

269. RULE.—*The Infinitive may be used as the Object of verbs denoting Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.*

Reading Lessons.

1. Italia.

Italia ab Alpibus usque ad fretum Siculum pertinet, inter mare Tuscum¹ et Adriaticum.² Multo³ longior est quam latio⁴. Nobilissima regio ob fertilitatem soli⁵ caelique salubritatem. Plurimos habet portus; neque⁶ ulla regio tam pulchras urbes habet, inter quas Roma longè praeclarissima est. Felicissima in Italiâ regio est Campania. Multi ibi vitiferi⁷ collès, ubi nobilissima sunt vina.

NOTES.

1. *Tuscan, or Etruscan*; also called *Tyrrhenian*, as in modern times. 2. *Adriatic*. 3. **Multo**: *much, by much*, Abl. of Diff. (165; 168). 4. **latior**: *broad*, here translated like the positive. 5. From **solum**, which is to be distinguished from **solum**. 6. **neque ulla**: *and no*, but the Latin idiom is *nor any*. 7. *vine-bearing*; Nom. **vitifer, -era, -erum**, adj.

2. Proserpina.

Proserpina, Cereris¹ filia, in Sicilia ad² urbem Hennam in campis florès carpēbat³ ludēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campi ibi floribus pulchris sparsi⁴ sunt. Subito terra concussa⁵ est atque Plūtō, inferōrum⁶ deus, ē terrā ēmersit⁷; eius currum equi atrī vehēbant. Deus Proserpinam abdūxit ac clamōrem puellae compressit.⁸ Nunc uxor Plūtōnis atque inferōrum rēgīna facta est.⁹

NOTES.

1. **Cereris**: *Ceres* was the goddess of Agriculture. 2. *near*. 3. *was plucking*. 4. *were strewn*: Perf. Part. from **spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum** (with **sunt**, Perf. Indic. Pass.); it is followed by the Abl. of Means. 5. *was shaken*, Perf. Part. from **concutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum** (with **est**, Perf. Indic. Pass.). 6. **inferōrum**: *of the lower (world)*. 7. *emerged*: Perf. Indic. from **ēmergō**. 8. *restrained*. 9. *was made, i.e. became*.

LESSON LXIII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

270. The most important indefinite Pronouns are the following :

1. <i>Substantive.</i>	aliquis,	aliqua (rare), aliquid,	} <i>somebody, some-one or other.</i>
	quis,	qua, quid,	
<i>Adjective.</i>	aliqui,	aliqua, aliquod,	} <i>some, any.</i>
	qui,	quæ (or quæ), quod,	

Quis and **quī** are properly used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num** : elsewhere **aliquis** and **aliqui**.

2. <i>Substantive.</i>	quidam,	quædam,	quiddam,	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	quidam,	quædam,	quoddam,	<i>a certain.</i>
3. <i>Substantive.</i>	quisquam,		quicquam,	<i>any one (at all),</i> <i>no Pl.</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	ullus,	ulla,	ullum,	<i>any.</i>

Quisquam and **ullus** are chiefly used in *Negative* sentences.

4. <i>Substantive.</i>	quivis,	quævis,	quidvis,	} <i>any one you please, any-one you like.</i>
	quilibet,	quælibet,	quidlibet,	
<i>Adjective.</i>	quivis,	quævis,	quodvis,	} <i>any you please, any you like.</i>
	quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet,	
5. <i>Substantive.</i>	quisque,	quæque,	quidque,	<i>each one.</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	quisque,	quæque,	quodque,	<i>each.</i>

Observe :

That in the indefinite Pronouns, the forms in **quis** and **quid** are *Substantive* (i.e. used alone as nouns), while those in **quī** and **quod** are *Adjective* (i.e. agree with some Noun expressed or understood).

271. Declension of **ALIQUIS** and **QUIDAM**.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid (adj. aliquod),
Gen.	alicuius,	alicuius,	alicuius,
Dat.	alicui,	alicui,	alicui,
Acc.	aliquem,	aliquam,	aliquid (adj. aliquod),
Abl.	aliquo,	aliqua,	aliquo.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
PLUR.—Nom.	aliqui,	aliquae,	aliqua,
Gen.	aliquorum,	aliquarum,	aliquorum,
Dat.	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,
Acc.	aliquos,	aliquas,	aliqua,
Abl.	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus.
SING.—Nom.	quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam (adj. quoddam),
Gen.	cuiusdam,	cuiusdam,	cuiusdam,
Dat.	cuidam,	cuidam,	cuidam,
Acc.	quendam,	quandam,	quiddam (adj. quoddam),
Abl.	quodam,	quādam,	quōdam.
PLUR.—Nom.	quidam,	quaedam,	quaedam,
Gen.	quōrundam,	quārundam,	quōrundam,
Dat.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam,
Acc.	quosdam,	quāsdam,	quosdam,
Abl.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam.

Observe :

1. That these words are compounds of **quis** or **qui**.
2. That *only* the **quis** or **qui** *part* is declined.
3. That Adjective and Substantive forms are *alike* save that the forms with **quod** are *adjective*, while those with **quid** are *substantive*.
4. That **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, and **quārundam** change **m** to **n** before **d**.

EXERCISES.

272. I. 1. Mulier quaedam ad hunc locum vēnit. 2. Ex hōc populō diligitur aliquī dux. 3. Neque (*nor*) ex castris Catilinae quisquam omnium discēsserat. 4. Quodvis animal cor habet. 5. Nōne quisque sēsē dēfendit? 6. Quidam ex Gallis ad Caesarem fēstīnāvērunt. 7. Locum aliquem colloquiō diligent. 8. Quemque causam dicere nōn iūssit. 9. Nec militēs quemque relinquere dēbent. 10. Cōnsilium alicūius māximē optō.

II. 1. Some place (or other) will be fortified. 2. Everyone praises himself. 3. Life is dear to every living being. 4. Nor was anyone ordered to flee. 5. Caesar sent a certain one of the horsemen. 6. War is pleasing to certain men. 7. He will not be ruled by anyone (at all). 8. You will not be blamed by anyone (you please). 9. The leader was saved by some soldier or other. 10. Caesar ordered the soldiers to come.

LESSON LXIV.

Deponent Verbs.

273. 1. Deponent Verbs have PASSIVE FORMS with ACTIVE MEANINGS.

2. The following exceptions, however, occur :

a. ACTIVE FORMS : *Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund and Supine.*

b. PASSIVE MEANINGS : *Always in the Gerundive and often in the Perfect Passive Participle.*

3. The Principal Parts of a deponent verb are :

	PRES. IND. PASS.	PRES. INF. PASS.	PERF. IND. PASS.	
1st conj.	hort-or,	hortā-ri,	hortā-tus sum,	<i>I exhort.</i>
2d conj.	vere-or,	verē-ri,	verī-tus sum,	<i>I fear.</i>
3d conj.	loqu-or,	loqu-i,	locū-tus sum,	<i>I speak.</i>
4th conj.	menti-or,	mentī-ri,	mentī-tus sum,	<i>I tell a lie, lie.</i>

274. CONJUGATION OF *hortor*, *I exhort.*

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hort-o-r, *I exhort, do exhort, am exhorting.*
 2. hortā-ris (-re), *you exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
 3. hortā-tur, *he exorts, does exhort, is exhorting.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-mur, *we exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
 2. hortā-mini, *you exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
 3. hortā-ntur, *they exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hortā-ba-r, *I was exhorting, exhorted.*
 2. hortā-bā-ris (-re), *you were exhorting, exhorted.*
 3. hortā-bā-tur, *he was exhorting, exhorted.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-bā-mur, *we were exhorting, exhorted.*
 2. hortā-bā-mini, *you were exhorting, exhorted.*
 3. hortā-ba-ntur, *they were exhorting, exhorted.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hortā-bo-r, *I shall exhort, shall be exhorting.*
 2. hortā-be-ris (-re), *you will exhort, will be exhorting.*
 3. hortā-bi-tur, *he will exhort, will be exhorting.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-bi-mur, *we shall exhort, shall be exhorting.*
 2. hortā-bi-mini, *you will exhort, will be exhorting.*
 3. hortā-bu-ntur, *they will exhort, will be exhorting.*

4. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum, *I have exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um es, *you have exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um est, *he has exhorted.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus, *we have exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a estis, *you have exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a sunt, *they have exhorted.*

5. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram, *I had exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erās, *you had exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erat, *he had exhorted.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a erāmus, *we had exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a erātis, *you had exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a erant, *they had exhorted.*

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

- Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erō, *I shall have exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um eris, *you will have exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erit, *he will have exhorted.*
- Pl.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a erimus, *we shall have exhorted.*
 2. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a eritis, *you will have exhorted.*
 3. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a erunt, *they will have exhorted.*

275.

Vocabulary.

cervus, -i, m. *stag*.
 rivulus, -i, m. *brook*.
 subito, adv. *suddenly*.
 prope, adv. *near*.

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog*.
 latrātus, -ūs, m. *barking*.
 viātor, -ōris, m. *traveller*.
 solitūdō, -inis, f. *solitude, wilderness*.

toll-ō,	-ere,	sustul-i,	subl-ātum, <i>I raise, lift.</i>
contempl-or,	-ārī,	-ātus sum,	<i>I gaze at, contemplate.</i>
cōnspic-or,	-ārī,	-ātus sum,	<i>I catch sight of, see.</i>
arbitr-or,	-ārī,	-ātus sum,	<i>I think, judge, suppose.</i>
admīr-or,	-ārī,	-ātus sum,	<i>I wonder at, admire.</i>

EXERCISES.

276. I. 1. Dum cervus imāginem suam contemplātur in rivulō, subito prope canēs tollunt latrātum. 2. Duo viātōrēs asinum in solitūdine cōspiciātī sunt. 3. Caesar militēs suōs māximē hortābitur. 4. Locī nātūram ab omnī parte contemplābantur. 5. Eadem loca nōn tūta sibi arbitrātī fuerant. 6. Tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī sunt. 7. Quis nōn admīrātur opera Dei? 8. Nautae sīdera contemplābuntur. 9. Puerī animālium māgnitūdinem admīrātī sunt. 10. In Caesaris hortō leōnēs cōnspiciābimur.

II. 1. The general was exhorting his soldiers. 2. The stag will gaze at his likeness in the brook. 3. You will admire the beautiful flowers. 4. We shall see many asses in the woods. 5. Caesar's soldiers wonder at the great size of the Germans. 6. We judge these things too difficult for us. 7. The dogs will raise a great barking. 8. By whom was this thing accomplished? 9. The travellers were gazing at the stars. 10. We see the works of God with great joy.

Reading Lesson.

Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium.—I.

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī,¹ quī nātū māior erat, rēgnūm relīquit²: sed Amūlius frātrem pepulit³ et rēgnāvit; eum quoque subole⁴ privāre cōnātus est, nam Rhēam Silviam,⁵ ēius filiā, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Ubi ea rēs cōgnita est,⁶ Amūlius ipsam⁷ in vincula cōiēcit. Parvulōs alveō imposuit⁸ ac abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus⁹: sed ubi flūmen est relāpsū, eōs¹⁰ aqua in siccō relīquit.

NOTES.

1. **Numitōrī**: Dat. after **relīquit**, placed first because the most important word in the sentence. 2. **relīquit**: remember that when no subject is expressed in Latin, we supply *he, she, or it, or they* in English. 3. **pepulit**: from **pellō**. 4. **subole**: of *offspring*, Abl. of Separation. 5. **Rhēam Silviam**: object Acc. of **fēcit**, while **sacerdotem** is Pred. Acc. 6. **cōgnita est**: *had been found out*; the Perf. after **ubi**, &c., is translated by our Plupf. 7. **ipsam**: *her*. 8. From **impōnō**. 9. From **effundō**. 10. **eōs**: *them*. The object is emphatic, and hence placed before the subject **aqua**.



VESTAE SACERDŪS.

LESSON LXV.

277. Conjugation of VEREOR; LOQUOR; MENTIOR.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

*I fear, do fear,
or am fearing.**I speak, do speak,
or am speaking.**I lie, do lie,
or am lying.*Sg. — 1. vere-o-r,
2. verē-ris (-re),
3. verē-tur.1. loqu-o-r,
2. loque-ris (-re),
3. loqui-tur.1. menti-o-r,
2. menti-ris (-re),
3. menti-tur.Pl. — 1. verē-mur,
2. verē-mini,
3. vere-ntur.1. loqui-mur,
2. loqui-mini,
3. loquu-ntur.1. menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,
3. menti-u-ntur.

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

*I was fearing, or
feared.**I was speaking, or
spoke.**I was lying, or
lied.*Sg. — 1. verē-ba-r,
2. verē-bā-ris (-re),
3. verē-bā-tur.1. loquē-ba-r,
2. loquē-bā-ris (-re),
3. loquē-bā-tur.1. mentiē-ba-r,
2. mentiē-bā-ris (-re),
3. mentiē-bā-tur.Pl. — 1. verē-bā-mur,
2. verē-bā-mini,
3. verē-ba-ntur.1. loquē-bā-mur,
2. loquē-bā-mini,
3. loquē-ba-ntur.1. mentiē-bā-mur,
2. mentiē-bā-mini,
3. mentiē-ba-ntur.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

*I shall fear
or be fearing.**I shall speak
or be speaking.**I shall lie
or be lying.*Sg. — 1. verē-bē-r,
2. verē-bē-ris (-re),
3. verē-bi-tur.1. loqua-r,
2. loquē-ris (-re),
3. loquē-tur.1. mentia-r,
2. mentiē-ris (-re),
3. mentiē-tur.Pl. — 1. verē-bi-mur,
2. verē-bi-mini,
3. verē-bu-ntur.1. loquē-mur,
2. loquē-mini,
3. loque-ntur.1. mentiē-mur,
2. mentiē-mini,
3. mentie-ntur.

4. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

I feared, did fear, or have feared. *I spoke, did speak, or have spoken.* *I lied, did lie, or have lied.*

Sg.—1. veri-t-us sum,	locū-t-us sum,	menti-t-us sum,
2. veri-t-us es,	locū-t-us es,	menti-t-us es,
3. veri-t-us est.	locū-t-us est.	menti-t-us est.
PL.—1. veri-t-I sumus,	locū-t-I sumus,	menti-t-I sumus,
2. veri-t-I estis,	locū-t-I estis,	menti-t-I estis,
3. veri-t-I sunt.	locū-t-I sunt.	menti-t-I sunt.

5. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

I had feared. *I had spoken.* *I had lied.*

Sg.—1. veri-t-us eram,	locū-t-us eram,	menti-t-us eram,
2. veri-t-us erās,	locū-t-us erās,	menti-t-us erās,
3. veri-t-us erat.	locū-t-us erat.	menti-t-us erat.
PL.—1. veri-t-I erāmus,	locū-t-I erāmus,	menti-t-I erāmus,
2. veri-t-I erātis,	locū-t-I erātis,	menti-t-I erātis,
3. veri-t-I erant.	locū-t-I erant.	menti-t-I erant.

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

I shall have feared. *I shall have spoken.* *I shall have lied.*

Sg.—1. veri-t-us erō,	locū-t-us erō,	menti-t-us erō,
2. veri-t-us eris,	locū-t-us eris,	menti-t-us eris,
3. veri-t-us erit.	locū-t-us erit.	menti-t-us erit.
PL.—1. veri-t-I erimus,	locū-t-I erimus,	menti-t-I erimus,
2. veri-t-I eritis,	locū-t-I eritis,	menti-t-I eritis,
3. veri-t-I erunt.	locū-t-I erunt.	menti-t-I erunt.

278. Examine the following :

1. Quō usque abūtēre **patientiā nostrā**? *how long will you abuse OUR PATIENCE?*

2. Lūx, quā fruimur, ā Deō nobis datur, *the light, WHICH we enjoy, is given to us by God.*

3. Funguntur officiō, *they acquit themselves OF A DUTY.*

Observe :

That the words in black type are in the Ablative in Latin, though the direct object of the verb in English.

279.

Vocabulary.

patientia, -ae, *f.* *patience.* *rēs frūmentāria*, *rei frūmentāriae*, *f.* *provisions.*
officium, -i, *n.* *duty.* *lūx*, *lūcia*, *f.* *light* (no Gen. Plur.).

<i>ūtor</i> ,	<i>ūt-i</i> ,	<i>ūs-us</i>	<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I use.</i>
<i>fruor</i> ,	<i>fru-i</i> ,	<i>frūct-us</i>	<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I enjoy.</i>
<i>fungor</i> ,	<i>fung-i</i> ,	<i>fūnc-tus</i>	<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I perform, acquit myself of.</i>
<i>potior</i> ,	<i>pot-iri</i> ,	<i>pet-itus</i>	<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I get possession of.</i>
<i>vescor</i> ,	<i>vesc-i</i> ,	—		<i>I eat.</i>
<i>proficiscor</i> ,	<i>proficis-ci</i> ,	<i>profeo-tus</i>	<i>sum</i> ,	<i>I set out.</i>

EXERCISES.

280. I. 1. *Patientiā tuā non abūtēmur.* 2. *Filius cōn-sulis officiō suō nōn fūctus erat.* 3. *Numidae lacte vescēbantur.* 4. *Militēs nōn hostem verēbantur, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem silvārum.* 5. *Sine ūllō volnere victōriā potītī sunt.* 6. *Nostri impedimentis hostium potītī sunt.* 7. *Caesar multis cum militibus ad prōvinciam profectus est.* 8. *Rei frūmentāriae causā in urbe diēs multōs mānsērunt.* 9. *Eō frūmentō nōn ūtentur.* 10. *Omnibus in vitā commodis ūnā cum aliquō fruimur.*

II. 1. *We enjoy the light of day.* 2. *Soldiers do not always perform their duty.* 3. *Caesar's soldiers set out on the sixth day.* 4. *They greatly feared the journey through the enemy's country.* 5. *The merchants admired the large stature of the Germans.* 6. *We shall not use the provisions which the Aeduians sent.* 7. *Divitiacus spoke in behalf of (prō with Abl.) these.* 8. *Good boys do not lie.* 9. *The enemy will not get possession of our camp.* 10. *It is not easy to use victory rightly.*

281. RULE.—*The Deponent Verbs ūtor, abūtōr, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor take the Ablative.*

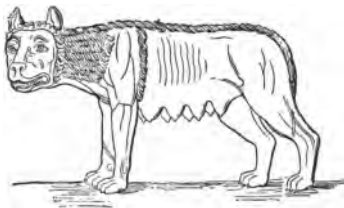
Reading Lesson.

Rōmāni Imperi Exōrdium.—II.

Vāstae tum in eīs locīs solitūdīnēs erant. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est,¹ ad vāgitum accurrit, infāntēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī² admōvit, mātremque sē³ gessit. Ubi lupa saepius⁴ ad parvulōs velutī⁵ ad catulōs revertēbātur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rem animadvertit, ac eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae, cōniugī, dedit ēducandōs.⁶ Adultī⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdīcris certāminibus virēs⁸ auxēre, deinde vēnandō⁹ saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs¹⁰ ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

NOTES.

1. *ut ... trāditum est*: as it is handed down by tradition; *ut* with the Indic. is translated by *as*, *how*, or *when*. 2. *ōrī*, Dat. after *admōvit*: brought her dugs near to their mouth. 3. *sē*: object of *gessit*, while *mātrem* is Pred. Acc.; transl. *played the part of a mother*. 4. *saepius*: again and again. 5. *velutī*: as if. 6. *ēducandōs*: to be educated, Gerundive (404), agreeing with *eōs*. 7. *Adultī* (Perf. Pass. Part. from *adolēscō*): when grown, agrees with *hī*, these. 8. *virēs*: object of *auxēre* (= *auxērunt*). 9. *vēnandō*: while hunting. 10. *latrōnēs*: object of *arcēre*.



LUPA.

LESSON LXVI.

Semi-Deponent Verbs. Genitive Case.

262. 1. Four verbs form their Perfect tenses only as deponents.

<i>audē-ō,</i>	<i>audē-re,</i>	<i>aud-ens sum,</i>	<i>I dare.</i>
<i>fidē-ō,</i>	<i>fidē-re,</i>	<i>fid-ens sum,</i>	<i>I trust.</i>
<i>gaudē-ō,</i>	<i>gaudē-re,</i>	<i>gāv-ens sum,</i>	<i>I rejoice, am glad</i>
<i>solē-ō,</i>	<i>solē-re,</i>	<i>sol-itus sum,</i>	<i>I am accustomed, am used.</i>

2. Semi-deponents, so called because they are half active and half passive in form, but only active in meaning, are conjugated like any other verb of the second or third conjugation.

263. Examine the following :

1. Vir *magnæ auctoritatis*, a man OF GREAT INFLUENCE.
2. Puer *sedecim annorum*, a boy OF SIXTEEN YEARS, i.e. sixteen years old.
3. Fossa *quindacim pedum*, a ditch OF FIFTEEN FEET, i.e. fifteen feet wide.
4. Nomen *magnæ gloriæ*, a name OF GREAT GLORY, i.e. a glorious name.
5. *Statura fuit humilis*, he was (a man) OF LOW STATURE.

Observe :

That the expressions in black type denote a quality or description and are either in the Ablative or Genitive, and are always with an attribute.

264.

Vocabulary.

<i>audacia</i> , -æ, f. boldness, audacity.	<i>arrogantis</i> , -æ, f. arrogance.		
<i>gratia</i> , -æ, f. influence.	<i>mōres</i> , <i>mōrum</i> , m. character (Pl. of <i>mōs</i>).		
<i>incredibilis</i> , -e, incredible.	<i>ingens</i> , -entis, huge, vast, large.		
<i>pertine-ō</i>	<i>pertine-re</i>	<i>pertin-ui</i>	—, <i>I reach, extend.</i>

EXERCISES.

285. I. 1. Mīlītēs cōnsulis proficīscī nōn ausī sunt. 2. Caesar, virtūtis summae vir, nēminem veritus est. 3. Hostēs mīlītēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn gaudent. 4. Dumnorix magnā apud plēbem grātiā erat. 5. Puerī mōribus bonis ā magistrō laudārī solent. 6. Ariovistus fuit audāciae summae. 7. Germānī māgnitūdine corporum incrēdibīlī fuērunt. 8. Bellum ingēns apud Helvētiōs oritur. 9. Hominēs arrogantiae māgnae amārī nōn solent. 10. Caesar fossam quīndecim pedum dūxit.

II. 1. Caesar's name was glorious. 2. We rejoice to see men of good character. 3. Ariovistus, a man of the greatest arrogance, was accustomed to act cruelly. 4. The Belgians extend to the lower part of the Rhine. 5. The Germans were accustomed to contend with the Gauls in almost daily battles. 6. The enemy did not dare to storm the city. 7. The boy was sixteen years old, but of low stature. 8. Cicero was of very great influence among the common people. 9. The Romans rejoiced to wage great wars. 10. It is pleasant to get possession of much power.

286. RULE.—*Quality is expressed by the Genitive or Ablative, but always with an Attribute.*

LESSON LXVII.

Conjugation of AMŌ Continued. Final Subjunctive.

287. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF amō.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT TENSE.			
SG.—1.	ame-m, <i>I may love.</i>	ame-r,	<i>I may be loved.</i>
2.	amē-s, <i>you may love.</i>	amē-ris (-re),	<i>you may be loved.</i>
3.	ame-t, <i>he may love.</i>	amē-tur,	<i>he may be loved.</i>
PL.—1.	amē-mus, <i>we may love.</i>	amē-mur,	<i>we may be loved.</i>
2.	amē-tis, <i>you may love.</i>	amē-mini,	<i>you may be loved.</i>
3.	ame-nt, <i>they may love.</i>	ame-ntur,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Sg.—1. amā-re-m, <i>I might love.</i>
 2. amā-rē-s, <i>you might love.</i>
 3. amā-re-t, <i>he might love.</i></p> <p>Pl.—1. amā-rē-mus, <i>we might love.</i>
 2. amā-rē-tis, <i>you might love.</i>
 3. amā-re-nt, <i>they might love.</i></p> | <p>amā-re-r, <i>I might be loved.</i>
 amā-rē-ris (-re), <i>you might be loved.</i>
 amā-rē-tur, <i>he might be loved.</i></p> <p>amā-rē-mur, <i>we might be loved.</i>
 amā-rē-mini, <i>you might be loved.</i>
 amā-re-ntur, <i>they might be loved.</i></p> |
|---|--|

PERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Sg.—1. amā-v-eri-m, <i>I may have loved.</i>
 2. amā-v-eri-s, <i>you may have loved.</i>
 3. amā-v-eri-t, <i>he may have loved.</i></p> <p>Pl.—1. amā-v-eri-mus, <i>we may have loved.</i>
 2. amā-v-eri-tis, <i>you may have loved.</i>
 3. amā-v-eri-nt, <i>they may have loved.</i></p> | <p>amā-t-us, -a, -um sim, <i>I may have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-us, -a, -um sis, <i>you may have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-us, -a, -um sit, <i>he may have been loved.</i></p> <p>amā-t-i, -ae, -a simus, <i>we may have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-i, -ae, -a sitis, <i>you may have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-i, -ae, -a sint, <i>they may have been loved.</i></p> |
|---|--|

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Sg.—1. amā-v-isse-m, <i>I might have loved.</i>
 2. amā-v-issē-s, <i>you might have loved.</i>
 3. amā-v-isse-t, <i>he might have loved.</i></p> <p>Pl.—1. amā-v-issē-mus, <i>we might have loved.</i>
 2. amā-v-issē-tis, <i>you might have loved.</i>
 3. amā-v-isse-nt, <i>they might have loved.</i></p> | <p>amā-t-us, -a, -um essem, <i>I might have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-us, -a, -um essēs, <i>you might have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-us, -a, -um esset, <i>he might have been loved.</i></p> <p>amā-t-i, -ae, -a essemus, <i>we might have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-i, -ae, -a essētis, <i>you might have been loved.</i>
 amā-t-i, -ae, -a essent, <i>they might have been loved.</i></p> |
|---|--|

288. Examine the following :

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	veniunt, they come,	{ ut rogēnt, that (in order that) they may ask or to ASK. nē pūgnēnt, that (in order that) they may NOT fight, NOT TO FIGHT.
Pure Perf.	vēnerunt, they HAVE come,	
Fut.	venient, they will come,	
Fut. Perf.	vēnerint, they will have come,	

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Imperf.	veniēbant, they were coming,	{ ut rogārent, that (in order that) they might ask, to ASK. nē pūgnārent, that (in order that) they might NOT fight, NOT TO FIGHT.
Pluperf.	vēnerant, they had come,	
Hist. Perf.	vēnerunt, they came or did come,	

Observe :

1. That **ut rogēnt** denotes the *Purpose* of coming and is the *Present Subjunctive* after the *Principal tenses*.
2. That **ut rogārent** denotes the *Purpose* of coming and is the *Imperfect Subjunctive* after the *Historical tenses*.
3. That when the *Latin Perfect* is translated by *have*, it is a *Principal tense*.
4. That a *positive* sentence of *Purpose* is introduced by **ut, that**, and a *negative* sentence by **nē, that not, lest**.
5. That the *Subjunctive* in a *Purpose* sentence may be translated by our *Infinitive*, but the *Latin Infinitive* cannot denote *Purpose*.

289.

Vocabulary.

ut (final conj.), that, in order that.

nē (final conj.), that not, in order that not, lest.

perfacilis, -e, easy.

prō (prep. with Abl.), in proportion to, in behalf of.

persuāde-ō,	-ēre,	-suās-i,	-suās-sum,	I persuade (with Dat.).
praest-ō,	-ēre,	-stit-i,	-sti-tum,	I excel, surpass (with Dat.).
bell-ō,	-ēre,	-āv-i,	-ātum,	I wage war.

EXERCISES.

290. I. 1. Militēs imperātōrī persuādent ut pūgnet. 2. Imperātor militibus persuāsīt nē pūgnārent. 3. Magister discipulis suis persuādēbat ut omnibus praestārent. 4. Helvētīī Rōmānōs rogāvērunt nē bellārent. 5. Militēs omnēs semper optāvērunt ut ā ducibus amentur. 6. Perfacile est hōc facere. 7. Prō multitūdine hominum et glōriā bellī angustōs finēs habent. 8. Orgetorīx civitātī persuādēbit ut pūgnet. 9. Oppidānī cum prohibuerint nē oppidum oppūgnet. 10. Dux fūgerat ne volnerārētur.

II. 1. The soldiers have persuaded the generals to fight. 2. The Helvetians begged us not to storm the town. 3. The master wishes his pupils to excel all in virtue. 4. Caesar exhorted his soldiers to fight bravely. 5. The soldiers desired to ride into the town. 6. The soldiers had fought in order that their country might be saved. 7. We desire to be praised. 8. You asked to be free. 9. I remained in order that I might not be conquered. 10. They came in order that they might be praised.

291. RULE.—*Purpose is expressed by the Subjunctive with ut or nē, the Present Subjunctive being used after Principal tenses, the Imperfect after Historical tenses.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperi Exōrdium.—III.

Quā rē¹ ubi eīs insidiātī sunt latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus necessitatē compulsus² indicāvit Rōmulō³ omnia.⁴ Rōmulus statim pāstōrēs armāvit āc Albam⁵ properāvit.

Intereā Remum⁶ latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt quod,⁷ ut accūsant, Numitōris agrōs infestāre solitus

est : itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad ⁸ supplicium trāditus est ; at ubi Numitor, adulēscētis vultum cōsiderāns, ⁹ aetātem minimēque ¹⁰ servilem indolem comparābat, statim nepōtem āgnōvit. Nam Remus ōris lineāmentis ¹¹ erat mātī ¹² simillimus, aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus ¹³ congrēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium ¹⁴ tenet, repente Rōmulus supervenit, ¹⁵ frātrem liberat, ¹⁶ interēmit ¹⁶ Amūlium, avum Numitōrem in rēgnū restituit. ¹⁶

NOTES.

1. *Quā rē* : *wherefore*. 2. *necessitāte compulsus* : *driven by necessity* ; *compulsus* (from *compel-lō*) is Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with *Faustulus*. 3. *Rōmulō* : Dat. after *indicāvit*. 4. *omnia* : *all things* ; the neuter adj. is often used as a noun instead of *rēs* with an adjective. 5. *Albam* : *to Alba*, Acc. of Place Whither. With names of Towns and Small Islands no Preposition is used to denote Motion. 6. *Remum* : note the position of the object *Remum* before the subject *latrōnēs*. 7. *quod . . . solitus est* : *because he was accustomed*. 8. *ad* : *for*. 9. *cōsiderāns* : *considering*, Pres. Part. 10. *minimēque servilem* : *and not at all servile*. 11. *ōris lineāmentis* : *in the outlines of his face*. 12. *mātī* : Dat. after *simillimus*, Superl. of *similis*. 13. *temporibus* : *with the time*, Dat. after *congruēbat*. 14. *anxium* : Pred. Acc. after *tenet* and agreeing with *animum*. 15. Note the frequent omission of the conjunction in Latin.



AUSPICIA.

LESSON LXVIII.

Conjugation of **MONĒO** Continued. Consecutive Subjunctive.**292.** SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **monēō**, *I advise*.

ACTIVE.		PRESENT TENSE.		PASSIVE.	
SG. — I.	monēa-m, <i>I may advise.</i>	monēa-r, <i>I may be advised.</i>			
2.	monēa-s, <i>you may advise.</i>	monēa-ris (-re), <i>you may be advised.</i>			
3.	monēa-t, <i>he may advise.</i>	monēa-tur, <i>he may be advised.</i>			
PL. — I.	monēa-mus, <i>we may advise.</i>	monēa-mur, <i>we may be advised.</i>			
2.	monēa-tis, <i>you may advise.</i>	monēa-mini, <i>you may be advised.</i>			
3.	monēa-nt, <i>they may advise.</i>	monēa-ntur, <i>they may be advised.</i>			
IMPERFECT TENSE.					
SG. — I.	monē-re-m, <i>I might advise.</i>	monē-re-r, <i>I might be advised.</i>			
2.	monē-rē-s, <i>you might advise.</i>	monē-rē-ris (-re), <i>you might be advised.</i>			
3.	monē-rē-t, <i>he might advise.</i>	monē-rē-tur, <i>he might be advised.</i>			
PL. — I.	monē-rē-mus, <i>we might advise.</i>	monē-rē-mur, <i>we might be advised.</i>			
2.	monē-rē-tis, <i>you might advise.</i>	monē-rē-mini, <i>you might be advised.</i>			
3.	monē-rē-nt, <i>they might advise.</i>	monē-rē-ntur, <i>they might be advised.</i>			
PERFECT TENSE.					
SG. — I.	mon-u-eri-m, <i>I may have advised.</i>	moni-t-us, -a, -um sim, <i>I may have been advised.</i>			
2.	mon-u-eri-s, <i>you may have advised.</i>	moni-t-us, -a, -um sis, <i>you may have been advised.</i>			
3.	mon-u-eri-t, <i>he may have advised.</i>	moni-t-us, -a, -um sit, <i>he may have been advised.</i>			

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PL.—I.	mon-u-eri-mus, we may have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a simus, we may have been advised.	
2.	mon-u-eri-tis, you may have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a sitis, you may have been advised.	
3.	mon-u-eri-nt, they may have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a sint, they may have been advised.	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sg.—1.	mon-u-isse-m, I might have advised.	moni-t-us, -a, -um essem, I might have been advised.
2.	mon-u-issē-s, you might have advised.	moni-t-us, -a, -um essēs, you might have been advised.
3.	mon-u-isse-t, he might have advised.	moni-t-us, -a, -um esset, he might have been advised.
PL.—I.	mon-u-issē-mus, we might have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a essēmus, we might have been advised.
2.	mon-u-issē-tis, you might have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a essētis, you might have been advised.
3.	mon-u-isse-nt, they might have advised.	moni-t-I, -ae, -a essent, they might have been advised.

293. Examine the following :

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	tam bonus est, he is so good,	} ut eum amem, that I am loving or love him.
Pure Perf.	tam bonus fuit, he has been so good,	

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Impf.	tam bonus erat, he was so good,	} ut eum amārem, that I was loving or loved him.
Hist. Perf.	tam bonus fuit, he was so good,	
Plupf.	tam bonus fuerat, he had been so good,	ut eum diū amāvissem, that I had long loved him.

Observe :

1. That *ut amem* and *ut amāverim* denote the *Result* of the goodness, and that after *Principal tenses* the *Present Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action*.

2. That *ut amārem* and *ut amāvíssem* denote the *Result* of the goodness, and that after *Historical tenses* the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action*.

3. That the Latin Subjunctive in a Consecutive sentence is usually translated by the English Indicative.

294.

Vocabulary.

ut (positive consecutive conj.), *that*, *ut nōn* (negative consecutive conj.),
so that, *that not, so that not*.

contentiō, -ōnis, f. *contest, strife*.

novus, -a, -um, *new*.

auspiciū, -i, n. *augury* (from birds).—p. 139.

vultur, -uris, m. *vulture*.

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*.

tam, adv. *so*.

adhibe-ō,

-ēre,

-hib-ui,

-hib-itur,

I consult (of auspices).

inride-ō,

-ēre,

-ris-i,

-ri-sum,

I laugh at, ridicule.

EXERCISES.

295. I. 1. *Accidit ut Rōmulus et Remus auspicia adhiberent.* 2. *Tanta inter eōs erat contentiō ut Remus frātre suum inrideret.* 3. *Puer tam malus est ut magister eum nōn laudāverit.* 4. *Militēs tam fortiter pūgnant ut oppidum dēleant.* 5. *Rōmulus duodecim vulturēs vidit ut nōmen novae urbī daret.* 6. *Puella tam bonīs mōribus est ut ab omnibus magistris laudāta sit.* 7. *Accidit ut nepōtem nōn videat.* 8. *Nōmen Rōmulī tam clārum est ut id memoriā semper teneāmus.* 9. *Caesar tantae virtūtis erat ut hostēs eum timērent.* 10. *Cōsul rem publicam tam sapienter administrāvit ut ea servāta sit.*

II. 1. *Caesar's soldiers fought so bravely that they took the town by storm.* 2. *It happened that the auguries had not been consulted.* 3. *So great is the strength of virtue that we praise it in an enemy.* 4. *Caesar ordered the soldiers not to hurl any darts.* 5. *The journey was so difficult that the general recalled the soldiers.* 6. *The citizens*

fought so fiercely that the town was saved. 7. I am not such a one (*is*) as to use this money. 8. So great fear seized the army that it terrified the minds of all. 9. So great was the storm that many ships were destroyed. 10. They came in order to see.

296. RULE.—*Result is expressed by the Subjunctive with ut, that, or ut nōn, that not.*

LESSON LXIX.

Conjugation of **emō** Continued. **cum** Historical and **cum** Causal.

297. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF emō, I buy.

ACTIVE.		PRESENT TENSE.		PASSIVE.	
Sg.—1.	ema-m, <i>I may buy.</i>	ema-r,	<i>I may be bought.</i>		
2.	emā-s, <i>you may buy.</i>	emā-ris (-re),	<i>you may be bought.</i>		
3.	ema-t, <i>he may buy.</i>	emā-tur,	<i>he may be bought.</i>		
Pl.—1.	emā-mus, <i>we may buy.</i>	emā-mur,	<i>we may be bought.</i>		
2.	emā-tis, <i>you may buy.</i>	emā-mini,	<i>you may be bought.</i>		
3.	ema-nt, <i>they may buy.</i>	ema-ntur,	<i>they may be bought.</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sg.—1.	eme-re-m, <i>I might buy.</i>	eme-re-r,	<i>I might be bought.</i>
2.	eme-rē-s, <i>you might buy.</i>	eme-rē-ris (-re),	<i>you might be bought.</i>
3.	eme-re-t, <i>he might buy.</i>	eme-rē-tur,	<i>he might be bought.</i>
Pl.—1.	eme-rē-mus, <i>we might buy.</i>	eme-rē-mur,	<i>we might be bought.</i>
2.	eme-rē-tis, <i>you might buy.</i>	eme-rē-mini,	<i>you might be bought.</i>
3.	eme-re-nt, <i>they might buy.</i>	eme-re-ntur,	<i>they might be bought.</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

Sg.—1.	ēm-eri-m,	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um	ēm,
	<i>I may have bought.</i>		<i>I may have been bought.</i>
2.	ēm-eri-s,	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um	ēs,
	<i>you may have bought.</i>		<i>you may have been bought.</i>
3.	ēm-eri-t,	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um	sit,
	<i>he may have bought.</i>		<i>he may have been bought.</i>

144 THIRD CONJUGATION—CUM HISTORICAL, CAUSAL.

ACTIVE.

- PL.—I. *em-eri-mus*,
we may have bought.
 2. *em-eri-tis*,
you may have bought.
 3. *em-eri-nt*,
they may have bought.

PASSIVE.

- emp-t-i, -ae, -a simus*,
we may have been bought.
emp-t-i, -ae, -a sitis,
you may have been bought.
emp-t-i, -ae, -a sint,
they may have been bought.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|---|---|
| SG.—I. <i>em-isse-m</i> ,
<i>I might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-us, -a, -um essem</i> ,
<i>I might have been bought.</i> |
| 2. <i>em-issē-s</i> ,
<i>you might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-us, -a, -um essēs</i> ,
<i>you might have been bought.</i> |
| 3. <i>em-isse-t</i> ,
<i>he might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-us, -a, -um esset</i> ,
<i>he might have been bought.</i> |
| PL.—I. <i>em-issē-mus</i> ,
<i>we might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-i, -ae, -a essēmus</i> ,
<i>we might have been bought.</i> |
| 2. <i>em-issē-tis</i> ,
<i>you might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-i, -ae, -a essētis</i> ,
<i>you might have been bought.</i> |
| 3. <i>em-isse-nt</i> ,
<i>they might have bought.</i> | <i>emp-t-i, -ae, -a essent</i> ,
<i>he might have been bought.</i> |

298. Examine the following :

1. *Agēsilaus, cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur*, dēcēssit, *Agésilauis died*,
 AS HE WAS RETURNING *from Egypt.*
2. *Cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāvisset*, urbem reliquimus, *WHEN*
Caesar HAD OCCUPIED Ancōna, I (we) left the city.

Observe :

That the clauses with **cum** (called *Historical*) characterize the circumstances under which the actions took place, and that only the *Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive* are used, and that the Subjv. is translated like the Indic.

299. Examine the following :

1. *Quae cum ita sint*, veniam, *SINCE these things ARE so, I shall come.*
2. *Quae cum ita essent*, vēnī, *SINCE these things WERE so, I came.*
3. *Aeduōs accūsāt, cum bellum susceperint*, *he blames the Aeduans*,
SINCE (because) they HAVE UNDERTAKEN the war.
4. *Cum haec fecisset*, interfectus est, *SINCE he HAD DONE this, he was killed.*

Observe :

That the clauses with *cum* (called *Causal*) denote the cause of the action, and that here *any tense* of the Subjunctive may be used, and that the Subjunctive is translated like the Indicative.

300.

Vocabulary.

prior, -ōris (comp. of <i>prae</i>), <i>first</i> (of <i>tuto</i>), <i>former</i> .	tūtala, -ae, f. <i>defence, protection</i> .
salvus, -us, m. <i>leap, jump</i> .	irātus, -a, -um, <i>angry, in anger</i> .
moenia, -um, n. pl. <i>walls, city walls</i> .	ubi (adv. of Place and Time), <i>where, when</i> .
expōn-ō, -ere, -pos-ūl, -pos-itum, <i>I expose</i> .	
cond-ō, -ere, -did-i, -di-tum, <i>I build</i> .	
ori-or, -i, or-irī, or-tus sum, <i>I arise, start, begin</i> .	
dēcern-ō, -ere, -crēv-i, -crē-tum, <i>I decide, determine</i> .	
suffici-ō, -ere, -fēc-i, -fec-tum, <i>I suffice</i> .	
vide-or, -āri, vi-sus sum, <i>I seem, appear</i> .	
trāci-ō, -ere, -iēc-i, -iec-tum, <i>I throw across, cross over</i> .	
trānsili-ō, -ire, sil-ūl, ———, <i>I leap across, jump over</i> .	

EXERCISES.

301. I. 1. Cum Rōmulus et Remus urbem conderent, Rōmulus irātus Remum interfēcīt. 2. Cum Remus prior sex voluturēs vīdisset, ad Rōmulum vēnit. 3. Cum contentiō orta esset, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre. 4. Rōmulus irātus esse vidēbātur, cum Remus saltū moenia trāiēcisset. 5. Urbs ā Rōmulō et Remō in eīsdem locīs, ubi expositī erant, condita est. 6. Rōmulus tam irātus erat, ut nēmō alius eius moenia trānsilīret. 7. Frātrēs mūrūm condunt ut ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficiat. 8. Rōmulus cum pāstōrēs armāvisset, ad suum frātre m fēstīnāvit. 9. Amūlius, cum frātre m pepulisset, rēgnāvit. 10. Cum Rhēam Silviam in vincula coniēcisset, parvulōs abiēcīt in Tiberim.

II. 1. When Romulus had built a city, he called it Rome. 2. Romulus was angry, since Remus had laughed at him. 3. So angry was Romulus that he killed Remus, his brother. 4. When Faustus saw the boys, he took them into his

hut. 5. His wife brought them up in order that they might defend the flocks. 6. The boys were so strong that, when Remus was captured, Romulus freed him. 7. Since the wall seems to be so strong, it will suffice. 8. As we were coming into the city, we saw many soldiers. 9. Since you have come, I shall remain. 10. Romulus slew Remus, that he might get possession of the city alone.

302. RULE.—**Cum** (*Historical*), when or as, defining the circumstances of an action, takes the *Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect tense*; but **Cum** (*Temporal*), when, defining the time of an action, takes the *Indicative*.

303. RULE.—**Cum** (*Causal*), as or since, takes the *Subjunctive (any tense)*.

Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium.—IV.

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem¹ in eisdem locis, ubi expositi² ubique educāti erant, condidērunt; sed, cum³ esset orta inter eōs contentiō dē nōmine atque imperiō novae urbis, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre. Remus prior sex volturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vīdit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam⁴ vocāvit. Ad⁵ novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum⁶ vidēbātur. Cūius⁷ angustias inridēns⁸ cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs⁹ increpāns¹⁰ verbis: "Sic deinde, quicumque alius¹¹ trānsiliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potitus est imperiō Rōmulus.

NOTES.

1. **urbem**: object of **condidērunt**. Note the position of the verb, for relative and adverbial clauses are frequently thus inserted in the principal clause. 2. **expositi**: **erant** belongs with this verb also. 3. **cum** . . . **contentiō**: *since dispute had arisen, &c.*; **cum** Causal, §§ 299 and 303.

4. **Rōmam**: Pred. Acc., while *urbem* is Object Acc. 5. **Ad: for.** 6. **vallum**: subject of **videbatur**. 7. **Cūius . . . trāscissset**: *And when Remus, laughing at its narrowness, had crossed it with a bound.* **Cūius**: Gen. of **qui**, which at the beginning of a sentence is translated by **et** and a Dem. or Pers. Pron. **cum**: Causal, though translated by *when*; see note 3. 8. **inridēns**: Pres. Part. from **inrideō** (294). 9. **his . . . verbis**: *upbraiding him with these words.* 10. **increpāns**: Pres. Part. from **increpō**. 11. **quicumque alius**: *whoever else.*

LESSON LXX.

Conjugation of **CAPIŌ** Continued. Indirect Question.

304. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **capīō**, *I take.*

ACTIVE.		PRESENT TENSE.		PASSIVE.	
Sg. — 1.	capia-m, <i>I may take.</i>	capia-r,	<i>I may be taken.</i>		
2.	capia-s, <i>you may take.</i>	capia-ris (-re),	<i>you may be taken.</i>		
3.	capia-t, <i>he may take.</i>	capia-tur,	<i>he may be taken.</i>		
Pl. — 1.	capia-mus, <i>we may take.</i>	capia-mur,	<i>we may be taken.</i>		
2.	capia-tis, <i>you may take.</i>	capia-mini,	<i>you may be taken.</i>		
3.	capia-nt, <i>they may take.</i>	capia-ntur,	<i>they may be taken.</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sg.—1.	cap-e-re-m , <i>I might take.</i>	cap-e-re-r , <i>I might be taken.</i>
2.	cap-e-rē-s , <i>you might take.</i>	cap-e-rē-ris (-re) , <i>you might be taken.</i>
3.	cap-e-re-t , <i>he might take.</i>	cap-e-rē-tur , <i>he might be taken.</i>
PL.—1.	cap-e-rē-mus , <i>we might take.</i>	cap-e-rē-mur , <i>we might be taken.</i>
2.	cap-e-rē-tis , <i>you might take.</i>	cap-e-rē-mini , <i>you might be taken.</i>
3.	cap-e-re-nt , <i>they might take.</i>	cap-e-rē-ntur , <i>they might be taken.</i>

The other Subjunctive tenses of **capīō** are regular.

305. Examine the following -

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	rogat,	he asks,	{ quid faciās, what you do or
Pure Perf.	rogāvit,	he HAS asked,	{ are doing.
Put.	rogābit,	he will ask,	{ quid feceris, what you have
Put. Perf.	rogāverit,	he will have asked,	{ done, have been doing,
			{ were doing, did.

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Impf.	rogābat,	he was asking,	{ quid facerēs, what you were
Plupf.	rogāverat,	he had asked,	{ doing or did.
Hist. Perf.	rogāvit,	he asked,	{ quid fecisēs, what you had
			{ done or had been doing.

Observe :

1. That *quid faciās, quid feceris, quid facerēs*, and *quid fecisēs* denote a question that is dependent upon some verb : e.g. *quid facis? what are you doing?* (Direct Question) ; *rogat quid faciās, he asks what you are doing* (Indirect Question).

2. That after *Principal tenses* the *Present Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action*. Cf. 293, 1.

3. That after *Historical tenses* the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action*. Cf. 293, 2.

4. That the Subjunctive is translated by the English Indicative.

306.

Vocabulary.

lūcus, -ī, m. a wood, grove.	mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, amazing.
statim, adv. immediately, forthwith.	ing.
vērū, adv. (post-positive), in truth :	vicinus, -a, -um, neighboring, near.
conj. but, however.	cōnūbium, -ī, n. marriage, right of marriage.
societās, -ātis, f. alliance.	
asylum, -ī, n. place of refuge, asylum.	

dēsum,	dēceae,	dēful,	I want, lack.
cōnfugi-ō,	-ere,	-fugi-	— I flee, take refuge.
aperi-ō,	-ire,	-erui,	-ertum, I open, disclose.

EXERCISES.

307. I. 1. Urbī Rōmulī dēerant incolae, ut lūcum asy-lum faceret. 2. Multī rogāvērunt ubi Rōmulus asy-lum fēcisset. 3. Gentēs vicīnae statim rogāvērunt cūr ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habērent. 4. Rōmulus ab eis petit ut societātem cōnūbiumque cum novō populō faciant. 5. Cum hōc recūsātum esset, mīra vīs hominum ad asy-lum cōnfūgit. 6. Rōmulus nunc indicat cūr asy-lum aperu-erit. 7. Multī veniunt ut videant quid incolae faciant. 8. Hī vērō societātem cōnūbiumque nōn facient. 9. Rōmulus ā Remō quaerit cur moenia trānsiluerit. 10. Contentiō inter eōs orta est uter nōmen novae urbī daret.

II. 1. The people asked Romulus why he had not opened an asylum for women. 2. You see why Romulus sought the right of marriage with the neighboring tribes. 3. They will come to see what you are doing. 4. Since Ro-mulus had opened an asylum, many men fled to it. 5. We all know why Romulus called the city Rome. 6. It is easy to see why the soldiers are storming the town. 7. When Remus had been captured, Romulus defended himself. 8. We often wonder why Remus laughed at his brother. 9. They consult the auguries in order to see who shall give his name to the new city. 10. Everyone knows with what design an alliance was sought.

308. RULE.—*The Indirect Question is always in the Subjunctive.*

LESSON LXXI.

Conjugation of **audiō** Continued. Final and Consecutive Subjunctive Continued.

309. SUBJUNCTIVE OF **audiō**, *I hear.*

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT TENSE.			
Sg.—1. audia-m,	<i>I may hear.</i>	audia-r,	<i>I may be heard.</i>
2. audiā-s,	<i>you may hear.</i>	audiā-ris (-re),	<i>you may be heard.</i>
3. audia-t,	<i>he may hear.</i>	audiā-tur,	<i>he may be heard.</i>

ACTIVE.

- PL.—1. audi-mus, *we may hear.*
 2. audi-tis, *you may hear.*
 3. audia-nt, *they may hear.*

PASSIVE.

- audi-mur, *we may be heard.*
 audi-mini, *you may be heard.*
 audia-ntur, *they may be heard.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sg.—1. audi-re-m,
 I might hear.
 2. audi-rē-s,
 you might hear.
 3. audi-re-t,
 he might hear.

- audi-rē-r,
 I might be heard.
 audi-rē-ris (-re),
 you might be heard.
 audi-rē-tur,
 he might be heard.

- PL.—1. audi-rē-mus,
 we might hear.
 2. audi-rē-tis,
 you might hear.
 3. audi-re-nt,
 they might hear.

- audi-rē-mur,
 we might be heard.
 audi-rē-mini,
 you might be heard.
 audi-re-ntur,
 they might be heard.

PERFECT TENSE.

- Sg.—1. audi-v-eri-m,
 I may have heard.
 2. audi-v-eri-s,
 you may have heard.
 3. audi-v-eri-t,
 he may have heard.

- audi-t-us, -a, -um sim,
 I may have been heard.
 audi-t-us, -a, -um sis,
 you may have been heard.
 audi-t-us, -a, -um sit,
 he may have been heard.

- PL.—1. audi-v-eri-mus,
 we may have heard.
 2. audi-v-eri-tis,
 you may have heard.
 3. audi-v-eri-nt,
 they may have heard.

- audi-t-i, -ae, -a simus,
 we may have been heard.
 audi-t-i, -ae, -a sitis,
 you may have been heard.
 audi-t-i, -ae, -a sint,
 they may have been heard.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sg.—1. audi-v-isse-m,
 I might have heard.
 2. audi-v-isse-s,
 you might have heard.
 3. audi-v-isse-t,
 he might have heard.

- audi-t-us, -a, -um essem,
 I might have been heard.
 audi-t-us, -a, -um essee,
 you might have been heard.
 audi-t-us, -a, -um esset,
 he might have been heard.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Pl.—I. audi-v-issē-mus, <i>we might have heard.</i>	audi-t-I, -ae, -a essē-mus, <i>we might have been heard.</i>
2. audi-v-issē-tis, <i>you might have heard.</i>	audi-t-I, -ae, -a essētis, <i>you might have been heard.</i>
3. audi-v-isse-nt, <i>they might have heard.</i>	audi-t-I, -ae, -a essent, <i>they might have been heard.</i>

310. Examine the following :

1. Vereor nō hostis veniat, *I fear LEST the enemy COME, OR THAT he IS COMING.*
2. Vereor nō hostis venerit, *I fear LEST the enemy HAVE COME, OR THAT he HAS COME.*
3. Vereor ut amicus veniat, *I fear LEST my friend COME NOT, THAT he IS NOT COMING OR WILL NOT COME.*
4. Vereor ut amicus venerit, *I fear LEST my friend HAVE NOT COME, OR THAT he HAS NOT COME.*

Observe :

1. That after verbs of *fearing* nō = *that*, and ut = *that not*.
2. That the Subjunctive may be translated by the Future.

311. Examine the following :

1. Nōn dubium est quin veniat, *there is no doubt THAT HE IS COMING, OR OF HIS COMING.*
2. Nōn dubium erat quin veniret, *there was no doubt THAT HE WAS COMING, OR OF HIS COMING.*
3. Nōn dubium est quin fuerint ante Homērum poētae, *there is no doubt THAT THERE WERE poets before Homer, OR OF THERE BEING poets before Homer.*

Observe :

1. That quin is used for *that* after verbs of *Doubt* and *Uncertainty*.
2. That the Subjunctive is always used and the Tenses are the same as in the Interrogative Sentence (305).

312.

Vocabulary.

<i>lūdibrium</i> , -ī, n. <i>derision, mockery.</i>	<i>aegritūdō</i> , -inis, f. <i>vexation, sickness.</i>
<i>lūdus</i> , -ī, m. <i>game, play.</i>	
<i>studium</i> , -ī, n. <i>zeal.</i>	<i>cōniunx</i> or <i>cōniux</i> , <i>cōniugis</i> , m. and f. <i>married person, husband, wife.</i>
<i>spectāculum</i> , -ī, n. <i>show, spectacle.</i>	

<i>add</i> -ō,	-ere,	-did-ī,	-di-tum,	<i>I add.</i>
<i>dissimul</i> -ō,	-āre,	-sī,	-stum,	<i>I hide, conceal.</i>
<i>indīc</i> -ō,	-ere,	-dix-ī,	-dic-tum,	<i>I point out, show, inform, announce.</i>
<i>conveni</i> -ō,	-īre,	-vēn-ī,	-ven-tum,	<i>I come together, assemble.</i>
<i>discurr</i> -ō,	-ere, {	-cur-rī, }	-cur-sum,	<i>I run different ways, run to and fro, wander.</i>
		-cucur-rī, }		

EXERCISES.

313. I. 1. *Populus veritus est ut Rōmulus aegritūdinem dissimulāret.* 2. *Nōn dubium est quā lūdibrium additum sit.* 3. *Nōn dubium erat quā multī convenirent ut lūdōs vidērent.* 4. *Verentur nē virginēs discurrant.* 5. *Rōmulus finitimīs spectāculum indicī iūssit ut cum liberīs et cōniugibus venīrent.* 6. *Rōmānī timent ut lēgātī mittantur.* 7. *Nōn dubium est quā virginēs raptae sint.* 8. *Tantum erat studium Rōmānōrum ut virginēs multās raperent.* 9. *Cum spectāculī tempus vēnisset, omnēs in urbe erant.* 10. *Nōn dubium est quā Rōmulus lūdōs paret.*

II. 1. *There is no doubt that Romulus has prepared games.* 2. *We fear that the people have not come together.* 3. *We fear that the people have come together.* 4. *There was no doubt that Romulus concealed his vexation.* 5. *When the games had been prepared, Romulus ordered the show to be announced to the neighbors.* 6. *The Romans ran in different ways in order to seize the maidens.* 7. *The virgins asked why they had been seized.* 8. *Since the Romans had no wives, they seized the virgins.* 9. *The Romans feared that the neighboring tribes would not come.* 10. *We fear that we may be wounded.*

314. RULE.—*Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with nē = that and ut = that not.*

315. RULE.—*Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty are followed by the Subjunctive with quin.*

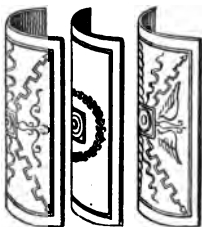
Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx.—I.

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae dēerant. Erat in proximō¹ lūcus: hunc² asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō³ mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō⁴ uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent,⁵ lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsīt, quī⁶ societātem cōnūbiumque novō⁷ populō peterent. Nūsq̄uam benignē audita⁸ lēgātiō est: lūdibrium etiā additū⁹: “Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id¹⁰ enim compār foret cōnūbium.” Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns¹¹ lūdōs parat; indicī¹² deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet.

NOTES.

1. in proximō: near by. 2. hunc: object, while asyllum is predicate. 3. eō: thither, adv. 4. vērō: usually placed second in the sentence, i.e. postpositive. 5. habērent: Subjv. with Causal cum (303). 6. quī... peterent: to seek. The relative quī (= ut is) is often used in sentences of Purpose and Result (426). 7. novō populō: for the new people. 8. audita: goes with est. 9. additū: supply est. 10. Id... cōnūbium: for this would be a right of marriage on equal terms. foret is an old form for esset, Impf. Subjv. of sum. 11. dissimulāns: concealing, Pres. Part. 12. indicī: Pres. Inf. pass. and second Acc. after iubet, spectāculum being the Object Acc.



SCŪTA.

LESSON LXXII.

Conjugation of SUM Continued. Wishes.

316. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF SUM.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

SING. — 1. *sim*, *I be.*
 2. *sis*, *you be.*
 3. *sit*, *he be.*

PLUR. — 1. *simus*, *we be.*
 2. *sitis*, *you be.*
 3. *sint*, *they be.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. *essem*, *I were.*
 2. *essēs*, *you were.*
 3. *esset*, *he were.*

PLUR. — 1. *essēmus*, *we were.*
 2. *essētis*, *you were.*
 3. *essent*, *they were.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. *fuérim*, *I have or may have been.*
 2. *fuéris*, *you have or may have been.*
 3. *fuérít*, *he have or may have been.*

PLUR. — 1. *fuérimus*, *we have or may have been.*
 2. *fuérítis*, *you have or may have been.*
 3. *fuérínt*, *they have or may have been.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. *fuíssem*, *I had or might have been.*
 2. *fuísse*, *you had or might have been.*
 3. *fuísset*, *he had or might have been.*

PLUR. — 1. *fuíssemus*, *we had or might have been.*
 2. *fuíssetis*, *you had or might have been.*
 3. *fuísset*, *they had or might have been.*

317. Examine the following :

1. *Stet* haec urbs, MAY *this city* CONTINUE TO STAND !
2. *Utinam* haec urbs *stāret*, WOULD THAT *this city* WERE STANDING !
3. *Utinam* haec urbs *stetisset*, WOULD THAT *this city* HAD STOOD !
4. *Utinam* nō *vēnisset*, WOULD THAT HE HAD NOT COME !

Observe :

1. That in wishes the Present Subjunctive is used with or without *utinam*, but the *utinam* must be used with the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*.
2. That the *Pres. Subjv.* refers to the *Future*, the *Impf. Subjv.* to the *Present*, and the *Plupf. Subjv.* to the *Past*.
3. That the negative is *nō*.

318. Vocabulary.

ob (prep. with Acc.), on account of.	adversus (prep. with Acc.), against
Sabinī, -ōrum, m. the Sabines.	optiō, -ōnis, f. choice. [156.
mūnus, -eris, n. gift.	ānulus, -i, m. finger-ring, ring.—p.
sūm-ō, -ere,	sūmp-si, sūmp-tum, I take, begin, get.
nanciscō-or, nanciscō-I,	nac-tus or nanc-tus sum, I get, meet with, find.
praesum, -esse,	-ful, I am over, have charge of (with Dat.).
perducō-ō, -ere,	-dūx-I, -duc-tum, I lead through, lead.

EXERCISES.

319. I. 1. Haec nō causa bellī sit ! 2. Utinam nō Sabinī bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmerent ! 3. Utinam nō Sabinī puellae optiōnem mūneris dedissent ! 4. Rōmānī virginēs Sabinōrum rapuērunt, eamque ob rem bellum sūmptum est. 5. Cum hūius pater Rōmānae praeesset arcī, exercitum in urbem perdūxit. 6. Utinam arx Rōmāna nunc stāret ! 7. Cum Caesar ad urbem vēnisset, obsidēs pōstulāvit. 8. Utinam nō virgō ānulōs naeta esset ! 9. Rōmulus Faustulum rogāvit quis esset eōrum avus. 10. Utinam haec vēra essent !

II. 1. May the Sabines not capture the city ! 2. The general gave the maiden rings that she might lead his men into the city. 3. When the army was approaching the

city, the leader found a maiden. 4. Would that he had not found her! 5. Would that we were in the city! 6. Since you give me the choice of a gift, I shall take the rings. 7. We do not wonder why she asked for the rings. 8. Would that her father had not had charge of the citadel! 9. The rings were so beautiful that the maiden wished for them. 10. The Sabines came in order to see the show.

320. RULE.—*Wishes are expressed by the Subjunctive, the Present (with or without utinam) being used when the wish refers to the Future, the Imperfect (always with utinam) when the wish refers to the Present, and the Pluperfect (always with utinam) when the wish refers to the Past.*



ANULUS.

LESSON LXXIII.

Compounds of sum. Dative Case.

321. There are several compounds of sum, all which take the *Dative*, except possum and absum.

absum,	abesse,	āfui,	<i>I am away, absent.</i>
adsum,	adesse,	affui,	<i>I am present.</i>
dēsum,	dēesse,	dēfui,	<i>I am wanting.</i>
insum,	inesse,	infui,	<i>I am in.</i>
intersum,	interesse,	interfui,	<i>I am between.</i>
obsum,	obesse,	offui,	<i>I am against.</i>
possum,	posse,	potui,	<i>I am able.</i>
praesum,	praeesse,	praefui,	<i>I am over.</i>
prōsum,	prōdesse,	prōfui,	<i>I profit.</i>
subsum,	subesse,	—	<i>I am under.</i>
supersum,	superesse,	superfui,	<i>I am or remain over.</i>

These are all conjugated like the single verb **sum**, except **possum** and **prösum**, which will be conjugated later.

322. Examine the following :

1. **Urbi** dēerant incolae, *inhabitants were wanting TO THE CITY, OR THE CITY lacked inhabitants.*

2. **Piger ipse sibi** obstat, *the lazy fellow himself stands IN HIS OWN WAY (i.e. stands AGAINST HIMSELF).*

Observe :

That **urbi** and **sibi** are Datives after the prepositions **dē** and **ob** compounded with verbs.

323. Examine the following :

1. **Canis similis lupō** est, *the dog is like (unto) the WOLF.*

2. **Castris** idōneum locum deligit, *he chooses a place suitable FOR A CAMP.*

3. **Omni aetāti** mors est communis, *death is common TO EVERY TIME OF LIFE.*

Observe :

That **lupō**, **castris**, and **aetāti** are Datives dependent upon the adjectives **similis**, **idōneum**, and **communis** respectively.

324.

Vocabulary.

utilis, -e, *useful (to).*

contrārius, -a, -um, *opposite (to).*

communis, -e, *common (to), in common with.*

vitiū, -i, n. *vice, fault, error.*

pār, *paris, match (for), equal (to).*

armilla, -ae, f. *bracelet, armlet.—p. 160.*

EXERCISES.

325. I. 1. **Hūius** pater **Rōmānae** praeerat arcī. 2. **Lupa** ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit. 3. **Aetās** **Remī** expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. 4. **Nam** **Remus** ōris lineāmentis erat mātři simillimus. 5. **Vitium** virtūtī contrārium est. 6. **Rēs** multae bellō ūtilēs sunt. 7. **Sabīni** **Rōmānis** parēs nōn fuērunt. 8. **Militēs** **armillās** **puellis** idōneās habuērunt. 9. **Commūnia** sunt inter amīcōs omnia. 10. **Hīs** artibus prūdētia māior inest.

II. 1. This boy is like his father. 2. When the general had chosen a place suitable for the camp, the army advanced. 3. The lieutenant, who had charge of the army, fled. 4. Provisions were wanting to the army. 5. The townsmen had collected many things suitable for war. 6. Many Gauls were present at the council. 7. Love is opposite to hate. 8. No ancient nation was a match for the Romans. 9. No one knows how much (*quantum*) the Romans loved Rome. 10. Man has many things in common with God.

326. RULE.—*Compounds of ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, and super take the Dative.*

327. RULE.—*Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, and Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative.*

LESSON LXXIV.

Conjugation of AMŪ Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc.

328. CONJUGATION OF amō, *I love.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

I.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SING. — 2. amā,	love you.	2. amā-re,	be you loved.
PLUR. — 2. amā-te,	love ye.	2. amā-mini,	be ye loved.

FUTURE.

SING. — 2. amā-tō,	you shall love.	2. amā-tor,	you shall be loved.
3. amā-tō,	he shall love.	3. amā-tor,	he shall be loved.
PLUR. — 2. amā-tōte,	ye shall love.	2. ———	
3. amā-ntō,	they shall love.	3. amā-ntor,	they shall be loved.

2.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. amā-re,	to love.	amā-ri,	to be loved.
PERF. amā-v-isae,	to have loved.	amā-t-um, -am, -um esse,	to have been loved.
FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse],	to be about to love.	amā-t-um iri,	to be about to be loved.

3. PARTICIPLES.

PRES.—amā-us, *loving*. PERF.—amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved*,
amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being* *having been loved*.
about to love.

4. GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

GEN. ama-nd-i, *of loving*.
DAT. ama-nd-ō, *to loving*. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) *to be*
ACC. ama-nd-um, *loving, to love*. *loved*.
ABL. ama-nd-ō, *by loving*.

5. SUPINE.

ACC. amā-tum, *to love*.
ABL. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving*.

329. Examine the following :

- | | | |
|------|--|------------------------------|
| 1. { | 1. Amamus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. | } First Person
Plural. |
| 2. { | 2. Nō difficilia optamus, LET US NOT DESIRE what
is hard to do. | |
| 2. { | 1. Amā tuōs parentēs, LOVE THY parents. | } Second Person
Singular. |
| 2. { | 2. Nōli hōc facere, DON'T do that. | |
| 3. { | 1. Amāte vestrum patrem, LOVE YOUR father, | } Second Person
Plural. |
| 2. { | 2. Nōlite hōc facere, DON'T do that. | |

Observe :

1. That the 1st Person Plural Present Subjv. supplies the lacking 1st Person of the Imperative. Negative, nō.
2. That the Singular Imperative (amā) must have Singular Pronoun (tuus) to refer to it and the Plural Imperative (amā-te) must have Plural Pronoun (vester).
3. That the Negative Imperative is expressed by nōli (nōlite, Pl.) with the Infinitive.

330.

Vocabulary.

nōli (Sing.), do not.	prōmissum, -i, n. promise.
nōlite (Plur.), do not.	scūtum, -i, n. shield.—p. 153.
laeva, -ae, f. left hand.	prōditiō, -ōnis, f. treason, betrayal.
obru-ō, -ere, -ui, -u-tum,	I overwhelm, cover, slay.
vindio-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	I avenge, punish.
cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum,	I try, attempt.

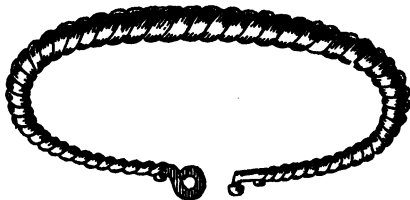
EXERCISES.

331. I. 1. Semper amicōs tuōs amā. 2. Nōlite, puerī, canem vestrum vindicāre. 3. Date mihi quod in laevis habētis. 4. Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus ānulōs et armillās habuērunt et scūta quoque. 5. Virgō ānulōs et armillās optāvit, sed mīlitēs eī scūta dedērunt. 6. Dux dīxit: "Date eī scūta." 7. Itaque virgō scūtīs obruta est. 8. Sūmāmus, Sabīnī, bellum adversus Rōmānōs. 9. Nē lēgātiōnem benīgnē audiāmus. 10. Rogēmus Rōmulum cūr asyllum aperuerit.

II. 1. My son, bring back glory from the war. 2. Punish the lazy boys. 3. Let us fight in behalf of our country. 4. Overcome all difficulties. 5. Do not give the maiden the choice of a gift. 6. Avenge impious treason quickly. 7. Let us not seek an alliance and right of marriage with the Sabines. 8. Let us always keep our promises. 9. Do not tell the boys who their grandfather was. 10. Let us always try to keep our promises.

332. RULE.—*Positive Commands are expressed by the Imperative, and Negative by nōlī, nōlite, with the Infinitive.*

333. RULE.—*Exhortations are expressed by the 1st Person Plural Present Subjunctive. Negative, nē.*



ARMILLA.

LESSON LXXV.

334. Conjugation of MONEŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

I.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sg.—2. monē, *advise you.* 2. monē-re, *be you advised.*

Pl.—2. monē-te, *advise ye.* 2. monē-mini, *be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

Sg.—2. monē-tō, *you shall advise.* 2. monē-tor, *you shall be advised.*

3. monē-tō, *he shall advise.* 3. monē-tor, *he shall be advised.*

Pl.—2. monē-tōte, *you shall advise.* 2. ———

3. mone-ntō, *they shall advise.* 3. mone-ntur, *they shall be advised.*

2.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. monē-re, *to advise.*

monē-ri, *to be advised.*

PERF. mon-u-isse, *to have advised.*

moni-t-um, -am, -um esse, *to have been advised.*

FUT. moni-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to advise.*

moni-tum iri, *to be about to be advised.*

3.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monē-us, *advising.*

PERF. moni-t-us, -a, -um, *advised,*

moni-tūr-us, -a, um, *being about to advise.*

having been advised.

4.

GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

GEN. mone-nd-i, *of advising.*

DAT. mone-nd-ō, *to advising.*

ACC. mone-nd-um, *advising, to advise.*

mone-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) *to be advised.*

ABL. mone-nd-ō, *by advising.*

5.

SUPINES.

ACC. moni-tum, *to advise.*

ABL. moni-tū, *to advise, in the advising.*

335. Examine the following :

1. Rōmulus aegritūdinem **dissimulāns** lūdōs parat, *Romulus, concealing his vexation, prepares games.*
2. Parvulōs alveō **impositōs** abiēcit in Tiberim, *he cast the boys (who had been) PLACED in a boat into the Tiber.*
3. Faustus, necessitate **compulsus**, indicāvit Rōmulō, *Faustus, DRIVEN by necessity, told Romulus.*

Observe :

1. That the *Participle*, like any other *Adjective*, must agree with its noun in *Gender, Number, and Case.*
2. That *Active Participles* (also *Passive forms of Deponents*) can have an *Accusative Case.*

336.

Vocabulary.

deinde, adv. *then, next, thereafter.* **insignia**, -e, *distinguished, eminent.*
forum, -i, n. *forum, market-place.* **interitus**, -ūs, m. *overthrow, death.*
perfidus, -a, -um, *dishonest, faithless.* **hospes**, -itis, m. *entertainer, host.*

cōnser-ō,	-ere,	-seru-I,	-ser-tum,	<i>I connect, join.</i>
dīmīc-ō,	-āre,	-āv-I,	-ā-tum,	<i>I fight, struggle.</i>
cad-ō,	-ere,	cecid-I,	cē-sum,	<i>I fall, die, be slain.</i>
cōnstern-ō,	-āre,	-āv-I,	-ātum,	<i>I dismay, terrify.</i>

EXERCISES.

337. I. 1. Deinde Hostilius ad certāmen prōcēssit et dīmīcāns cecidit. 2. Rōmānī, hūius interitū cōnsternātī, fugere coepērunt. 3. Sabīnī, Rōmānōs perfidōs vocantēs, pūgnam cōnservērunt. 4. Remus, vāllī angustīās inrīdēns, saltū id trāiēcit. 5. Numitor, ā frātre pulsus, in suīs agrīs habitāvit. 6. Rōmulus, imperiō potītus, sōlus rēgnāvit. 7. Sabīnī Hostīlium fortissimē dīmīcantem interfēcērunt. 8. Rōmulus, suōs milītēs hortātus, in eō locō, ubi nunc Rōmānum Forum est, pūgnam cōnservuit. 9. Amūlius parvulōs alveō impositōs in Tiberim abiēcit. 10. Faustus lupam infantēs linguā lambentem vidit.

II. 1. Many soldiers fell fighting bravely. 2. The soldiers, being conquered, fled. 3. Romulus, dismayed by

the death of this distinguished Roman, fought more bravely. 4. Fight bravely in order to save your country. 5. Do not be dismayed. 6. Let us fight bravely in behalf of our country. 7. So great was the terror of the Romans that they attempted to flee. 8. When the Romans had advanced to the struggle, they joined battle. 9. The Romans feared that they would be conquered. 10. There is no doubt that Hostilius died fighting bravely.

338. RULE.—*Participles, like Adjectives, agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case, and active Participles (also the passive forms of deponents) govern the Accusative Case.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—II.

Multi convēnere studiō¹ etiam videndae novae urbis, m̄ximē Sabīnī² cum liberīs et cōniugibus. Ubi spectaculī tempus vēnit eōque³ conversae⁴ mentēs cum oculīs erant, tum signō⁵ datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt. Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs⁶ raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt et, cum Rōmae⁷ appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte⁸ extrā moenia petītum⁹ ierat. Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, si¹⁰ exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxisset.

NOTES.

1. studiō...urbis: from the desire of seeing the new city. studiō: Abl. of Cause. videndae: Gen. of Gerundive. The Gerundive is an Adjective and always agrees with its Noun (405). 2. Sabīnī: subject of convēnere (= convēnērunt). 3. eō: upon it; eō is an adv. 4. conversae: goes with erant, of which mentēs is the subject. 5. signō datō: at a given signal. Abl. Abs. Note that a Noun and a Participle, not identical with the subject, object, or other case in the leading clause, are put in the Abl. Abs. The construction is exactly that of our

Nominative Absolute. 6. *ob...raptās*: on account of the seizure of the maidens (lit. on account of the maidens having been seized), *raptās* being a Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with *virginēs*. 7. *Rōmae*: Dat. after *ad* in *adpropinquārent* (= *adpropinquārent*). 8. *forte*: by chance. 9. *petitum ierat*: had gone to seek. 10. *si...perdūxisset*: if she should have led his army into the Capitol.

LESSON LXXVI.

339. Conjugation of EMŪ Concluded: Imperative, etc. Dative Case.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

1.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SING.—2. *eme*, buy you.2. *eme-re*, be you bought.PLUR.—2. *emi-te*, buy ye.2. *emi-mini*, be ye bought.

FUTURE.

SING.—2. *emi-tō*, you shall buy.2. *emi-tor*, you shall be bought.3. *emi-tō*, he shall buy.3. *emi-tor*, he shall be bought.PLUR.—2. *emi-tōte*, you shall buy.

2. ———

3. *emu-ntō*, they shall buy.3. *emu-ntor*, they shall be bought.

2.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. *eme-re*, to buy.*em-I*, to be bought.PERF. *em-isse*, to have bought.*Emp-t-um, -am, -um esse*, to have been bought.FUT. *Emp-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]*, to be about to buy.*Emp-tum iri*, to be about to be bought.

3.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *emē-n-s*, buying.PERF. *Emp-t-us, -a, -um*, bought,FUT. *Emp-tūr-us, -a, -um*, being about to buy.*having been bought.*

4.

GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

GEN. *eme-nd-i*, of buying.DAT. *eme-nd-ō*, to buying.*eme-nd-us, -a, -um*, (one) to be bought.ACC. *eme-nd-um*, buying, to buy.ABL. *eme-nd-ō*, by buying.

5.

SUPINE.

ACC. *Emp-tum*, to buy.ABL. *Emp-tū*, to buy, in the buying.

340. Examine the following :

1. Probus *invidet* nēminī, *the good man ENVIES nobody.*
2. Virtūtī suōrum *crēdit*, *he TRUSTS (to) the valor of his men.*

Observe :

That in these two sentences, the Dative is used in Latin, although *to* is not found in the first and can be omitted in the second.

341. Examine the following :

1. *Nēminī* meus adventus labōrī fuit, *TO NO ONE was my arrival (FOR) A BURDEN, i.e. burdensome.*
2. Virtūs sōla nōn datur dōnō, *virtue alone is not given AS A PRESENT.*

Observe :

That the Datives in these sentences denote the object *for which* and are usually translated as Nominatives, and often are associated with a Dative of the *person for or to whom*.

342.**Vocabulary.**

quaestus, -ūs, m. *profit, gain.* sūptus, -ūs, m. *cost, expense.*
 turpitūdō, -inis, f. *baseness, shame.* odium, -i, n. *hatred, hate.*
 vove-ō, -ēre, vōv-i, vō-tum, *I vow, promise solemnly.*
 invidē-ō, -ēre, -vid-i, -vi-sum, *I envy, grudge.*
 infer-ō, -ferre, -tul-i, -lā-tum, *I bring in, wage, carry in : aē inferre, to betake oneself, go.*

EXERCISES.

343. I. 1. Rōmulus Iovī dōnō aedem vōvit. 2. Fortūnae tuae mihi cūrae sunt. 3. Aedui Caesarī auxiliō equitēs misērunt. 4. Dumnorix equitātui, quem Aedui Caesarī auxiliō misērunt, praeerat. 5. Bonus invidet nēminī. 6. Caesar huic legiōnī māximē indulget. 7. Hōc est mihi odiō. 8. Turpitūdini est mentiri. 9. Habere quaestui rem publicam turpe est. 10. Hostēs, necessitatē compulsī, pacem fēcērunt.

II. 1. You are a great care to me. 2. Do not envy the rich. 3. Baseness is hateful (= a hatred) to me. 4. The army is a great expense to the state. 5. Caesar trusts the thirteenth legion especially. 6. Your advice is a great help to me. 7. Do not trust faithless hosts. 8. A temple was solemnly promised to Jupiter as a gift. 9. We shall persuade you to do this. 10. The Sabines gave the maiden their shields as a gift.

344. RULE.—*Intransitive verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, take the Dative.*

345. RULE.—*Certain verbs, especially To Be, Have, Give, and Send, take a Dative of the Object For Which and often a Dative of the Person To or For Whom.*

LESSON LXXVII.

346. Conjugation of AUDIŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc. Genitive Case.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

1.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SING. — 2. audi, *hear you.*

2. audi-re, *be you heard.*

PLUR. — 2. audi-te, *hear ye.*

2. audi-mini, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

SING. — 2. audi-tō, *you shall hear.*

2. audi-tor, *you shall be heard.*

3. audi-tō, *he shall hear.*

3. audi-tor, *he shall be heard.*

PLUR. — 2. audi-tōte, *ye shall hear.*

2. ———

3. audiu-ntō, *they shall hear.* 3. audiu-ntor, *they shall be heard*

2.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. audi-re, *to hear.*

audi-ri, *to be heard.*

PERF. audi-v-isse, *to have heard.*

audi-t-um, -am, -um esse, *to have been heard.*

FUT. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to hear.*

audi-tum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

3. PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiē-n-s, *hearing*. PERF. audi-t-us, -a, -um, *heard*,
 FUT. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being* *having been heard*.
about to hear.

4. GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

GEN. audie-nd-i, *of hearing*.
 DAT. audie-nd-ō, *to or for hearing*. audie-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) *to be*
 ACC. audie-nd-um, *hearing, to hear*. *heard*.
 ABL. audie-nd-ō, *by hearing*.

5. SUPINE.

ACC. audi-tum, *to hear*.
 ABL. audi-tū, *to hear, in the hearing*.

347. Examine the following :

1. Cupidus pecūniae, *grasping* AFTER MONEY.
2. Multārum rērum peritus, *versed* IN MANY THINGS.
3. Tē veteris amicitiae commonefecit, *he reminded* you OF YOUR OLD FRIENDSHIP.
4. Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditionis, *Miltiades was accused* OF TREASON.

Observe :

1. That in 1 and 2, the Genitive is used with *Adjectives*.
2. That in 3, the Genitive is used with *Memory- Verbs*.
3. That in 4, the Genitive is used with *Judicial Verbs*.

348.

Vocabulary.

cupidus, -a, -um, <i>eager for, grasping</i>	peritus, -a, -um, <i>versed in, skilled</i>
after, desirous of (with Gen.).	in, skilful in (with Gen.).
plēnus, -a, -um, <i>full, full of, filled</i>	inscius, -a, -um, <i>ignorant of</i> (with Gen.).
with (with Gen.).	
oblītus, -a, -um, <i>forgetful of</i> (with Gen.).	incaustus, -a, -um, <i>unused to</i> (with Gen.).
commonefaciō, -ere, -fēc-i, -fac-tum, <i>I remind</i> (with Gen.).	
obliviscor, oblivisc-i, obli-tus sum, <i>I forget</i> (with Gen.).	
meminisse, meminī, ———, <i>remember</i> (with Gen.).	
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>I accuse</i> (with Gen.).	
absolvō, -solv-ere, -solv-i, -solv-tum, <i>I absolve, acquit</i> (with Gen.).	
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>I condemn</i> . [Gen.).	

EXERCISES.

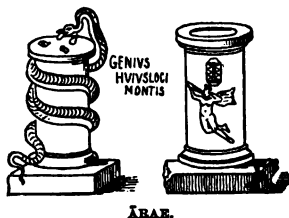
349. I. 1. Orgetorix, regni cupidus, coniurationem nobilitatis fecit. 2. Romulus irae plenus, fratrem interfecit. 3. Soror, fratrum oblita, interfecta est. 4. Puer, insuetus laboris, piger est. 5. Homo rerum omnium inscius erat. 6. Imperator, belli peritus, milites ad victoriam mittet. 7. Pater me officii commonefaciet. 8. Deus iubet te mortis meminisse. 9. Caesar avaritiae accusatus est. 10. Iudex absolvit eum iniuriarum.

II. 1. The Gauls, eager for a revolution, prepared for war. 2. Cicero was ignorant of war, but versed in law. 3. Do not forget a kindness. 4. Many soldiers, who were unused to war, were slain. 5. The man, accused of theft, was quickly condemned. 6. Caesar reminded Ariovistus of his kindness. 7. Let us acquit Caesar of (the charge of) avarice. 8. There is no doubt that Miltiades was accused of treason. 9. What place is not filled with our distress? 10. Since we are ignorant of many things, we shall try to learn.

350. RULE.—*Adjectives of Fulness, Participation, Power, Knowledge, Ignorance, Desire, and Disgust take the Genitive.*

351. RULE.—*Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting take the Genitive.*

352. RULE.—*Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive.*



LESSON LXXVIII.

353. Conjugation of **CAPIŌ** Concluded: Imperative, etc.
Ablative Absolute.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
1.		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT.			
Sg.—2. cape.	Pl.—2. capi-te.	Sg.—2. cape-re.	Pl.—2. capi-mini.
FUTURE.			
Sg.—2. capi-tō.	Pl.—2. capi-tōte.	Sg.—2. capi-tor.	Pl.—2. ———
3. capi-tō.	3. capiu-ntō.	3. capi-tor.	3. capiu-ntor.
2.		INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES. cap-ere.		cap-i.	
PERF. cēp-isse.		cap-t-um, -am, -um esse.	
FUT. cap-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].		cap-tum iri.	
3.		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES. capie-n-s.		PERF. cap-t-us, -a, -um.	
FUT. cap-tūr-us, -a, -um.			
4.		GERUND.	
GEN. capie-nd-i.		GERUNDIVE.	
DAT. capie-nd-ō.		capie-nd-us, -a, -um.	
ACC. capie-nd-um.			
ABL. capie-nd-ō.			
5.		SUPINE.	
ACC. cap-tum.			
ABL. cap-tū.			

354. 1. Examine the following :

1. **Xerxe rēgnante**, XERXES REIGNING, WHEN *Xerxes was reigning, or in the reign of Xerxes.*
2. **Xerxe victŏ**, *Xerxes being or having been defeated, when Xerxes had been defeated, after the defeat of Xerxes.*
3. **Messālā et Pisōne cōsullibus**, *Messala and Piso being consuls, in the consulship of Messala and Piso.*

Observe :

1. That the Latin *Ablative Absolute* corresponds to English *Nominative Absolute*.

2. That the *Ablative Absolute* is made up of a *Noun* as subject and a *Participle* or predicate *Adjective* or *Noun* as predicate.

3. That the Abl. Abs. admits of *several translations*.

2. Examine the following :

1. Imperātor **urbem expūgnātā**m incendit, *the general, HAVING TAKEN THE CITY, set it on fire.* [THE CITY, returned.

2. Imperātor, **urbe expūgnātā**, rediit, *the general, HAVING TAKEN*

Observe :

1. That in the first sentence, **urbem** is *Direct Object* of **incendit**, and hence cannot be Ablative Absolute, though the English translation is the same.

2. That in the second sentence, **urbe**, having *no connection* with the *Subject or Object* of the verb, must be in the Ablative Absolute.

355.

Vocabulary.

arx, **arcis**, f. *citadel*.

poena, -ae, f. *punishment*.

imbellis, -e, *unwarlike*.

foedus, -eris, n. *treaty*.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīs-i, -mīs-sum, *I promise.* [make a treaty.

[**icō**, -ere], **icī**, **ic-tus**, *I strike, hit* : with **foedus**, *I*

EXERCISES.

356. I. 1. Rōmulus, foedere icō, Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit. 2. Hīs rēbus prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in urbem perdūxit. 3. Prōditiōne cōgnitā, virgō celerī poenā vindicāta est. 4. Sabīnīs in arcem perductīs, Tatius virginem scūtīs obrui iūssit. 5. Rōmānīs fugātīs, Sabīnī dicēbant : "Vicimus imbellēs hostēs." 6. Amūlius, frātre pulsō, rēgnāvit. 7. Faustulus, rē animadversā, parvulōs tulit in casam. 8. Rōmulus, armātīs pāstōribus, profectus est. 9. Interēptō Amūliō, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit. 10. Ortā inter eōs contentiōne, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre.

II. 1. In the consulship of Cicero many things were done. 2. Caesar, having occupied the town, set out. 3. The signal being given, the Roman youths run to and fro. 4. The maidens having been seized, the Sabines began the war. 5. This battle having been fought, the enemy send ambassadors to Caesar. 6. The Helvetians, being conquered, sought peace. 7. The treaty being made, the Sabines and Romans were friends. 8. The general, having set-fire-to the city, departed. 9. When Romulus was king, the Sabines almost captured Rome. 10. Romulus, having prepared games, sent ambassadors among the neighboring tribes.

357. RULE.—*A Noun and a Participle, a Noun and a predicate Adjective or Noun, not identical with the Subject or Object of the verb, are put in the Ablative (called Absolute) to denote Cause, Time, Manner, Condition, and Concession.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx.—III.

Illa petiit quod¹ Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant, vidēlicet² et ānulōs et armillās. Quibus³ dolōsē prōmissis, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit, ubi Tatius scūtīs eam⁴ obrui iūssit; nam et⁵ ea in laevīs habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est. Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcēssit, et in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est, pūgnam cōnseruit. Primō impetū,⁶ vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmīcāns cecidit: cūius interitū cōsternātī Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: “Vicimus perfidōs hostēs, imbellēs hostēs.”

NOTES.

1. quod ... gerēbant: *what they wore on their left hands.* Quod = id quod is our *what = that which*.
2. vidēlicet: *meaning.*
3. See 354.
4. eam ... iūssit: *ordered her to be buried.*
5. et ea: *these also.*
6. Primō impetū: *At the first onslaught.*

LESSON LXXIX.

Conjugation of **SUM** Concluded. Names of Places.358. CONJUGATION OF **sum**.

1. IMPERATIVE.

2. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Sg.—2. <i>es, be you.</i>	Sg.—2. <i>estō, you shall be.</i>	PRES. <i>esse, to be.</i>
PL.—2. <i>este, be ye.</i>	3. <i>estō, he shall be.</i>	PERF. <i>fuisse, to have been.</i>
	PL.—2. <i>estote, ye shall be.</i>	FUT. <i>futūr-um, -am,</i>
	3. <i>suntō, they shall be.</i>	<i>-um esse, to be about to be.</i>

3. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

*futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.**esse, to be, lacks Pres. Part., Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine.*

359. Examine the following :

1. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Rōmæ erat, he was AT or IN ROME.} \\ \text{Dyrrāchiū hiemāvit, he wintered AT or IN DYRRACHIUM.} \\ \text{Carthāgini habitat, he lives AT or IN CARTHAGE.} \\ \text{Athēnis erimus, we shall be AT or IN ATHENS.} \end{array} \right.$
2. *Albam properāvit, he hastened TO ALBA.*
3. *Dēlō proficiscitur, he sets out FROM DELOS.*

Observe :

1. That in block 1 all the names of places (proper names) denote *Place Where*, that *no preposition is used*, and that the expressions are in *the Locative Case*, which has the same form as the *Genitive in the singular of the Second Declension*, but the same form as the *Dative everywhere else*.

2. That in 2 the *Accusative* is used *without a preposition* to denote motion *to* a place (*Place Whither*), if name of a town.

3. That in 3 the *Ablative* is used *without a preposition* to denote motion *from* a place (*Place Whence*), if name of town.

360. In the same way, *domus* and *rūs* are used ; e.g. :

<i>domi</i> , at home.	<i>rūri</i> , in the country.
<i>domum</i> , home.	<i>rūs</i> , to the country.
<i>domō</i> , from home.	<i>rūre</i> , from the country.
Similarly, <i>humī</i> , on the ground.	

361. Vocabulary.

<i>Athēnae</i> , -ārum, f. Pl. <i>Athens</i> .	<i>Carthāgō</i> , -inis, f. <i>Carthage</i> .
<i>Delphī</i> , -ōrum, f. <i>Delphi</i> .	<i>Alba</i> , -ae, f. <i>Alba</i> .
<i>Capua</i> , -ae, f. <i>Capua</i> .	<i>Tarentum</i> , -ī, n. <i>Tarentum</i> .
<i>dum</i> , conj. <i>while</i> .	<i>ubi</i> , conj. <i>when</i> .

<i>nāvig-ō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>I sail</i> .
<i>discēd-ō</i> , -ere, -cēss-I, -cēss-sum, <i>I depart</i> .

EXERCISES.

362. I. 1. Lēgātōs Athēnās mittēmus. 2. Dum lēgātī Athēnīs erant, domum properāvimus. 3. Dux omnī cum exercitū Capuam profectus est. 4. Imperātor Delphīs discēssit et Tarentum vēnit. 5. Crās pater rūs mē mittet. 6. Caesar Athēnās nāvigāvit. 7. Dominus domī nōn est ; rūri est ; crās rūre revertētur. 8. Cum Sabīnī Rōmam vēnissent, virginēs raptae sunt. 9. Discēdāmus Tarentō et Capuam properēmus. 10. Duōs mēnsēs Delphīs mānsit.

II. 1. Ambassadors were sent to Athens. 2. Many never returned home. 3. We shall send the slave to the country. 4. While you are in Rome, write to me. 5. Don't hasten from Delphi. 6. We remained two days at Capua. 7. We sailed from Tarentum to Athens. 8. When you were at Delphi, we were at Carthage. 9. We both came to Rome at the same time. 10. The army sailed from Athens to Tarentum.

363. RULE.—*Names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative to denote Place Where.*

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

1. 100 1. 100

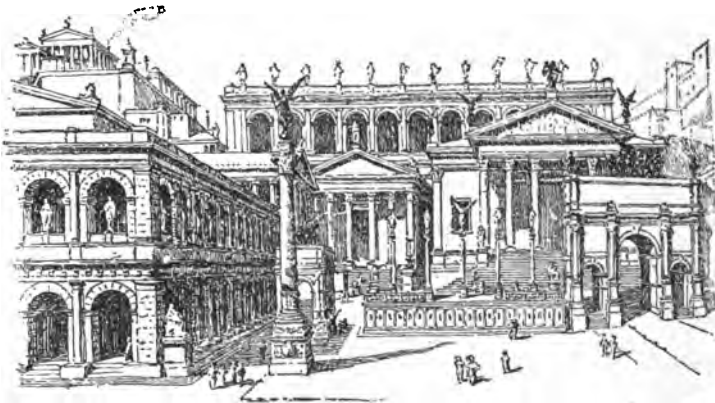
1. 100	1. 100	1. 100	1. 100
1. 100	1. 100	1. 100	1. 100
1. 100	1. 100	1. 100	1. 100
1. 100	1. 100	1. 100	1. 100
1. 100	1. 100	1. 100	1. 100

EXERCISES.

369. I. 1. Tē tuae stultitiae paenitet. 2. Mē hūius labōris piget. 3. Militēs sociōrum miseruit. 4. Omnēs decet rēctē facere. 5. Oportet nōs Rōmam proficīscī. 6. Nōn licet tibi Athēnīs discēdere. 7. Mē tuī cōnsiliī taedet. 8. Nēmīnem bene facere pudet. 9. Nōn mē vīxisse paenitet. 10. Tē Dýrrāchiī manēre oportet.

II. 1. Men often repent of their folly. 2. It becomes a man to fight bravely, but it dishonors him to desert. 3. The Sabines soon tired of the war. 4. I am ashamed of your misdeeds. 5. You ought to depart from Rome immediately. 6. Let us do good, since we pity the poor. 7. We ought to hasten home. 8. The Romans were tired of the treaty. 9. It is irksome for me to remain in the country. 10. You ought to sail to Tarentum.

370. RULE.—*The Impersonal verbs miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, and pertaesum est take the Accusative of the Person who Feels and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause.*



FORUM.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Accusative and Infinitive.

371. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT.

INDIRECT.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Errās, you are going wrong. | Dicit tē errāre, he says THAT YOU ARE GOING WRONG. |
| 2. Puer errat, the boy is going wrong. | Dicit puerum errāre, he says THAT THE BOY IS GOING WRONG. |
| 3. Dēciperis, you are (being) deceived. | Dicit tē dēcipi, he says THAT YOU ARE (BEING) DECEIVED. |
| 4. Puer dēcipitur, the boy is (being) deceived. | Dicit puerum dēcipi, he says THAT THE BOY IS (BEING) DECEIVED. |

Observe :

1. That the statements in the first column are *Direct* : i.e. just as they were uttered ; but those in the second column are *Indirect* : i.e. quoted by some one other than the speaker or by the speaker himself.

2. That in the *Direct* statement, the *Nominative* is used with a *finite verb*, but in the *Indirect*, the *Accusative* is used with the *Infinitive*.

3. That in sentences 1 and 3, *no subject* is expressed in the *Direct statement*, but the *pronoun must be used in the Indirect*.

4. That in English, the *Indirect statement* is usually introduced by the Declarative Conjunction *that*, which *cannot be translated* into Latin.

372. Examine the following :

I. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION (PRESENT INFINITIVE).

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

dicat, he says,	} tē errāre, that you are going wrong, that you go wrong,	} tē dēcipi, that you are (being) deceived.
dixit, he has said,		
dicet, he will say,		
dixerit, he will have said,		

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dicēbat, he was saying,	} tē errāre, that you were going wrong, that you went wrong,	} tē dēcipi, that you were (being) de- ceived.
dixit, he said,		
dixerat, he had said,		

2. PRIOR ACTION (PERFECT INFINITIVE).

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

dicīt, he says,	} tē errāvisse, that you have gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you have been going wrong,	} tē dēceptum esse, that you have been de- ceived, that you were deceived.
dixit, he has said,		
dicet, he will say,		
dixerit, he will have said,		

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dicēbat, he was saying,	} tē errāvisse, that you had gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you had been going wrong,	} tē dēceptum esse, that you had been de- ceived, that you were deceived.
dixit, he said,		
dixerat, he had said,		

3. SUBSEQUENT ACTION (FUTURE INFINITIVE).

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

dicīt, he says,	} tē errātūrum esse, that you will go wrong, that you are about to go wrong, that you will be going wrong,	} tē dēceptum iri, that you will be de- ceived, are going to be deceived.
dixit, he has said,		
dicet, he will say,		
dixerit, he will have said,		

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dicēbat, he was saying,	} tē errātūrum esse, that you would go wrong, that you were about to go wrong,	} tē dēceptum iri, that you would be de- ceived, that you were going to be deceived.
dixit, he said,		
dixerat, he had said,		

Observe :

1. That the *Present Infinitive* denotes *Contemporaneous Action* ; that is, an action going on at the time of the leading verb, and hence the *Present Infinitive* denotes *Past time* after an *Historical tense*.

2. That the *Perfect Infinitive* denotes *Prior Action*; that is, an action happening before the time of the leading verb, and hence the *Perfect Infinitive* denotes *Past time* after a *Principal tense*.

3. That the *Future Infinitive* denotes *Subsequent Action*; that is, an action that is to happen *after the time* denoted by the leading verb.

373.

Vocabulary.

crēd-ō,	-ere,	crēdid-i,	crēdi-tum,	<i>I believe.</i>
neg-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-ātum,	<i>I deny, say not.</i>
spēr-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-ātum,	<i>I hope.</i>
put-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-ātum,	<i>I think.</i>
pollice-or,	-ārī,	pollici-tus sum,		<i>I promise.</i>

EXERCISES.

374. I. 1. Dicit Germānōs in Galliam proficīscī. 2. Dicit Gallōs in Itāliam profectōs esse. 3. Cōsul spērat ducem ventūrum nōn esse. 4. Remus negāvit sē Numitōris agrōs infestāre. 5. Sabīnī pollicitī sunt sē, quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, datūrōs esse. 6. Nōn crēdimus cōsulem vēnisse. 7. Imperātor pūtāvit hostēs pācem petere. 8. Rōmānī crēdidērunt Rōmulum deum esse. 9. Caesar negāvit sē imperiō potīrī cupere. 10. Dictum est Gallōs tōtius Galliae principātum obtinēre.

II. 1. We thought that Caesar had departed from Tarantum. 2. You did not believe that these things were true. 3. Romulus said that he had opened an asylum. 4. The Sabines said that they would not give the right-of-marriage. 5. We hope that we shall soon be at Rome. 6. You promised that you would be at Athens. 7. The consul saw that there were many soldiers in the town. 8. He said that the king was preparing war. 9. The father thought that the letter had been written. 10. The consul promised that the prisoners would be freed.

375. RULE.—*The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative Case.*

376. RULE.—*Verbs of Saying, Thinking, Knowing, Believing, Showing, Perceiving, Hearing, Hoping, and Promising, and like expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx.—IV.

“Nunc sciunt longē¹ aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs.” Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit et exercitus seu² forte seu dīvinitus restitit. Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs³ ausae sunt sē⁴ inter tēla volantia inferre et hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs,⁵ pācem conciliārunť. Rōmulus, foedere cum Tatiō ictō et Sabinōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm nōn ita⁶ multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit.

NOTES.

1. longē aliud . . . aliud: one thing to seize . . . and quite another to fight, etc. 2. seu . . . seu: whether . . . or. 3. crīnibus passīs: with dishevelled hair. 4. sē: object of inferre. 5. ōrantēs: begging, agrees with mulierēs and governs patrēs and virōs. 6. nōn ita multō post: not long afterwards (lit. afterwards by not so much).

LESSON LXXXII.

Conjugation of **POSSUM**, *I can*. Conditional Sentences.

377. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I am able, I can.

SING. — 1. pos-sum,
2. pot-es,
3. pot-est.

PLUR. — 1. pos-sumus,
2. pot-estis,
3. pos-sunt.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may be able.

SING.—1. pos-sim,	PLUR.—1. pos-simus,
2. pos-sis,	2. pos-sitis,
3. pos-sit.	3. pos-sint.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

*I was able, I could.**I were, might be, able.*

SING.—1. pot-eram,	SING.—1. pos-sem,
2. pot-erās,	2. pos-sēs,
3. pot-erat.	3. pos-set.
PLUR.—1. pot-erāmus,	PLUR.—1. pos-sēmus,
2. pot-erātis,	2. pos-sētis,
3. pot-erant.	3. pos-sent.

FUTURE.

I shall be able.

SING.—1. pot-erō,
2. pot-eris,
3. pot-erit.
PLUR.—1. pot-erimus,
2. pot-eritis,
3. pot-erant.

PERFECT.

*I have been able, I could.**I have, may have, been able.*

SING.—1. pot-ui,	SING.—1. pot-uerim,
2. pot-uisti,	2. pot-ueris,
3. pot-uit.	3. pot-uerit.
PLUR.—1. pot-uimus,	PLUR.—1. pot-uerimus,
2. pot-uistis,	2. pot-ueritis,
3. pot-uērunt (or -uēre).	3. pot-uerint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been able.**I had, might have, been able.*

SING.—1. pot-ueram,	SING.—1. pot-uissem,
2. pot-uerās,	2. pot-uisēs,
3. pot-uerat.	3. pot-uisset.
PLUR.—1. pot-uerāmus,	PLUR.—1. pot-uissemus,
2. pot-uerātis,	2. pot-uissetis,
3. pot-uerant.	3. pot-uisent.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

I shall have been able.

SING.—1. pot-uerim,
2. pot-ueris,
3. pot-uerit.

PLUR.—1. pot-uerimus,
2. pot-ueritis,
3. pot-uerint.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. pos-se, *to be able.*

PERF. pot-uisse, *to have been able.*

Possum is compounded of **pot** (**potis**, **pote**) and **sum**: **t** becomes **s** before **s**: in the perfect forms, **f** (as in **pot-fui**) is dropped.

378. Examine the following :

1. **Si id crēdis, errās**, if you believe that, you are going wrong.
2. **Si id crēdebās, errābās**, if you believed that, you were going wrong.
3. **Si id crēdidisti, errāvistī**, if you (have) believed that, you (have gone) went wrong. [wrong.]
4. **Si id crēdēs, errābis**, if you (shall) believe that, you will (be) go(ing)
5. **Si id crēdideris, errāveris**, if you (shall have) believe(d) that, you will have gone (will go) wrong.
6. **Si quid crēdidisti, errās**, if you have believed anything, you go wrong. [wrong.]
7. **Si quid crēdiderās, errābās**, if you had believed anything, you went

Observe :

1. That all these sentences contain two parts, the *Condition*, or **IF-CLAUSE** (called *Prótlasis*), and the *Conclusion* (called *Apódosis*).
2. That they are simple statements : if this is so, then that is so.

379.

Vocabulary.

si, cond. conj. *if*.

spíritus, -ūs, m. *breath*.

nisi, cond. conj. *if not, unless*.

rēctē, adv. *rightly*.

sequ-or,

seq-ui,

secū-tus sum,

I follow.

aberr-ō,

-āre,

-āvi,

-ātum,

I go astray.

condole-ō,

-āre,

-ui,

—

I pain, give pain.

EXERCISES.

380. I. 1. Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit. 2. Sī pēs condoluit, ferre nōn possumus. 3. Vivam, sī illa vīvet. 4. Nisi tū Rōmā discēsseris, errābis. 5. Nunc sī potes, gaudē. 6. Nātūram sī sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus. 7. Cum haec perficere nōn possīmus, domum revertēmur. 8. Caesar dīxit sē hōc facere nōn posse. 9. Amēmus patriam et fortiter pūgnēmus. 10. Sabīnī vērunt ut lūdōs vidērent.

II. 1. If he lives, he is drawing breath. 2. We shall not be able to depart from Rome. 3. If I can, I shall sail to Athens. 4. If you followed your guide, you were not going astray. 5. Since we could not storm the town, we wintered in that place. 6. Caesar said the town could be taken. 7. The general promised that he would come quickly. 8. If you have conquered your anger, you have done rightly. 9. If the town shall be captured, we shall all be killed. 10. The boy hoped that the letter would be written.

381. RULE.—*The Logical Condition, assuming a thing to be a fact, takes the Indicative in both Pro-tasis and Apodosis.*

LESSON LXXXIII.

Conjugation of PRŌSUM. Conditional Sentences Continued.

382. PRINCIPAL PARTS: prŏsum, prŏdesse, prŏfuī, prŏfūtūrus, *I profit.*

INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
SING. — 1. prŏ-sum, 2. prŏd-es, 3. prŏd-est.		SING. — 1. prŏ-sim, 2. prŏ-sis, 3. prŏ-sit.
PLUR. — 1. prŏ-sumus, 2. prŏd-estis, 3. prŏ-sunt,		PLUR. — 1. prŏ-simus, 2. prŏ-sitis, 3. prŏ-sint.

IMPERFECT.

SING. — 1. prōd-eram,
2. prōd-erās, &c.

SING. — 1. prōd-essem,
2. prōd-essēs, &c.

FUTURE.

SING. — 1. prōd-erō,
2. prōd-eris, &c.

PERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fui,
2. prō-fuisti, &c.

SING. — 1. prō-fuerim,
2. prō-fueris, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fueram,
2. prō-fuerās, &c.

SING. — 1. prō-fuissem,
2. prō-fuisssēs, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fuerō,
2. prō-fueris, &c.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōd-esse. PERF. prō-fuisse. FUT. prō-futūrum esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prō-futūrus.

In the forms of **prōsum**, **prōd-** is used before vowels.

383. Examine the following :

1. *Si id crēdās, errēs, if you should (were to) believe that, you would be going wrong.*

2. *Si id crēdās, errāveris, if you should (were to) believe that, you would go wrong.*

3. *Si id crēdideris, errēs, if you should have believed (come to believe) that, you would be going wrong.*

Observe :

1. That in these sentences the idea is *Future* and still in suspense, and that the supposition is more or less fanciful.

2. That the *Subjunctive* is found in both *Protasis* and *Apodosis*, the *Present* being used for *Continued Action* and the *Perfect* for *Completed Action*.

384.

Vocabulary.

senior, -ōris, m. <i>old man.</i>	senātōr, -ōris, m. <i>senator.</i>
senectūs, -ūtis, f. <i>old age.</i>	cōntiō, -ōnis, f. <i>assembly, meeting.</i>
campus, -i, m. <i>field, plain.</i>	palūs, -ūdis, f. <i>swamp, marsh.</i>
tempestās, -ātis, f. <i>storm: time.</i>	subitō, adv. <i>suddenly.</i>

distribu-ō,	-ere,	-u-i,	-ū-tum,	<i>I divide, distribute.</i>
ōrdin-ō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>I set in order, arrange.</i>
coōri-or,	-oriri,	-ortus sum,		<i>I arise.</i>

EXERCISES.

385. I. 1. Omnia faciant, si eōs senātōrēs nōminet. 2. Si haec rēs accidat, cōntiōnem habuerit. 3. Senectūs est plēna voluptātis. 4. Dum cōntiōnem in campō ad (*near*) palūdem habet, subitō coōrta est tempestās. 5. Hīs rēbus ordinātis, discēdat, si possit. 6. Rōmulus seniōrēs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. 7. Si populum dēcēperis, errāveris. 8. Si Tatius occidātur, Rōmulus rēx sōlus sit. 9. Rōmānī Rōmulum deum esse putāverunt. 10. Dum haec geruntur, Rōmam proficiāmur.

II. 1. If they (will) do this, we shall make a treaty. 2. If they should do this, we should make a treaty. 3. If they should have done this, we should be making a treaty. 4. We should hold an assembly, if we should be able. 5. While he was holding an assembly, a storm suddenly arose. 6. We saw that many soldiers were in the plain. 7. The senators repented of their folly. 8. Since we cannot arrange these things, let us depart. 9. The lieutenant hoped that a battle would be fought. 10. There is no doubt that a battle was fought.

386. RULE.—*The Ideal Condition, representing the matter as still in suspense and implying doubt, takes the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Present being used for Continued Action and the Perfect for Completed Action.*

LESSON LXXXIV.

Conjugation of **eō**, *I go*. Conditional Sentences Concluded.

387. PRINCIPAL PARTS : **eō**, *ire*, **ivī** (ii), *itum*, *I go*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I go, am going, do go.

I be going, may go.

SING. — 1. **e-ō**,

SING. — 1. **ea-m**,

2. **i-s**,

2. **eā-s**,

3. **i-t**.

3. **ea-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-mus**,

PLUR. — 1. **eā-mus**,

2. **i-tis**,

2. **eā-tis**,

3. **eu-nt**.

3. **ea-nt**.

IMPERFECT.

I was going, did go, went.

I were going, might go.

SING. — 1. **i-ba-m**,

SING. — 1. **i-re-m**,

2. **i-bā-s**,

2. **i-rā-s**,

3. **i-ba-t**.

3. **i-re-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-bā-mus**,

PLUR. — 1. **i-rā-mus**,

2. **i-bā-tis**,

2. **i-rā-tis**,

3. **i-ba-nt**.

3. **i-re-nt**.

FUTURE.

I shall go.

SING. — 1. **i-b-ō**,

2. **i-bi-s**,

3. **i-bi-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-bi-mus**,

2. **i-bi-tis**,

3. **i-bu-nt**.

PERFECT.

I have gone, or I went.

SING. — 1. **i-v-i** (or **ii**),

SING. — 1. **i-v-eri-m** (or **ierim**),

2. **i-v-isti** (or **istī**),

2. **i-v-eri-s**,

3. **i-v-it** (or **it**).

3. **i-v-eri-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-v-i-mus** (or **imus**),

PLUR. — 1. **i-v-eri-mus**,

2. **i-v-istis** (or **istis**),

2. **i-v-eri-tis**,

3. **i-v-ērunt** (or **ērant**).

3. **i-v-eri-nt**.

186 CONJUGATION OF **ēō**—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

INDICATIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

I had gone.

SING. — 1. **i-v-erā-m** (or **ieram**),
2. **i-v-erā-s**,
3. **i-v-erā-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-v-erā-mus**,
2. **i-v-erā-tis**,
3. **i-v-erā-nt**.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SING. — 1. **i-v-isse-m** (**iassem** or
2. **i-v-issē-s**, [**iassem**],
3. **i-v-isse-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-v-issē-mus**,
2. **i-v-issē-tis**,
3. **i-v-issē-nt**.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have gone.

SING. — 1. **i-v-er-ō** (or **ierō**),
2. **i-v-er-i-s**,
3. **i-v-er-i-t**.

PLUR. — 1. **i-v-er-i-mus**,
2. **i-v-er-i-tis**,
3. **i-v-er-i-nt**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SING. — 2. **i**, *go* *you*. FUT. SING. — 2. **i-tō**, *you shall go*.
3. — 3. **i-tō**, *he shall go*.

PLUR. — 2. **i-te**, *go ye*. PLUR. — 2. **i-tōte**, *ye shall go*.
3. — 3. **eu-ntō**, *they shall go*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **i-re**, *to go*.
PERF. **i-v-isse**, *to have gone*.
FUT. **i-tūr-um, -am, -um** [**esse**], *to be about to go*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. **iē-ns** (Gen. **eu-nt-is**), *going*.
FUT. **i-tūr-us, -a, -um**, *about to go*.

GERUND.

GEN. **eu-nd-i**, *of going*.
DAT. **eu-nd-ō**, *to going*.
ACC. **eu-nd-um**, *going*.
ABL. **eu-nd-ō**, *by going*.

SUPINE.

ACC. **i-tum**, *to go*.
ABL. **i-tū**, *to go*.

Observe :

That the stem **i** becomes **e** before **a**, **o**, and **u**.

388. Examine the following :

1. **Si id crēderēs, errārēs**, *if you believed (were believing) that, you would be going wrong*.

2. **Si id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs**, *if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong*.

Observe :

1. That the idea here is *past*, and hence *impossible*, so that in each sentence the negative is implied : e.g. *if you believed that* implies *you do not*, and *if you had believed that* implies *you did not*.

2. That the *Subjunctive* is found in both *Protasis* and *Apodosis*, the *Imperfect* being used for *Continued Action* (opposed to Present) and the *Pluperfect* for *Completed Action* (opposed to Past).

389.

Vocabulary.

sapientia, -ae, f. *wisdom*.
inopia, -ae, f. *want, need*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. *dictator*.
nihil (indecl.), n. *nothing*.

expet-ō,	-ere,	-petiv-ī,	-peti-tum,	<i>I seek after.</i>
effici-ō,	-ere,	-fēc-ī,	-fēc-tum,	<i>I effect, do.</i>
recūs-ō,	-āre,	-āvī,	-ātum,	<i>I refuse.</i>

EXERCISES.

390. I. 1. Si Caesar adesset, oppidum occupāret. 2. Si Caesar adfuisset, oppidum occupāvisset. 3. Sapientia nōn expeterētur, si nihil efficeret. 4. Si ibi tē esse scissem, ad tē ipse vēnissem. 5. Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs. 6. Si fortēs essētis, hostibus resisterētis. 7. Si haec vēra esse scīrem, Rōmam īrem. 8. Si mihi hōc dīxissēs, adfuissēm. 9. Si cōsul oppidum occupāvisset, oppidānōs omnēs interfēcisset. 10. Si militēs nōn territī essent, nōn fūgissent.

II. 1. If you would tell me this, I should be glad. 2. If you were telling me this, I should be glad. 3. If you had told me this, I should have been glad. 4. If you had asked Caesar, he would not have refused. 5. If the army had fled, Rome would have been captured. 6. The Helvetians would not have made a conspiracy, if they had not been led on by want. 7. If you had been dictator, the enemy would not have done this. 8. If you were

worthy, we should make peace. 9. If the maidens had not been seized, the Sabines would not have fought. 10. If Caesar were in Rome, the senate would flee.

391. RULE.—*The Unreal Condition, denoting that which is not or was not true, takes the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect being used for that which is not, the Pluperfect for that which was not, true.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx.—V.

Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōrum¹ cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectutem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trigintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs² ita ōrdinātīs, cum ad³ exercitum lūstrandum cōtiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habēret, subitō coōrta est tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.⁴

NOTES.

1. quōrum . . . ageret: by whose advice he should do all things. quōrum (= ut eōrum): the Relative is often used instead of ut with the forms of *is* to denote Purpose or Result. 2. Hīs, Abl. Abs. 3. ad . . . lūstrandum: for (the purpose of) reviewing the army. 4. ablātus est: from auferō (393).

LESSON LXXXV.

392. Conjugation of FERŌ: Active and Passive.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, I bear.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>I bear, I am bearing, do bear.</i>			<i>I be bearing, may bear.</i>		
PRES. SG. 1. fer-ō,	PL. 1. fer-i-mus,	SG. 1. fera-m,	PL. 1. ferā-mus,		
2. fer-s,	2. fer-tis,	2. ferā-s,	2. ferā-tis,		
3. fer-t.	3. fer-u-nt.	3. fera-t.	3. fera-nt.		

IMPF. SG. 1. *ferš-ba-m*, *I was bearing*. SG. 1. *fer-re-m*, *I were bearing*.
2. *ferš-bā-s*, &c. 2. *fer-rē-s*, &c.

FUT. 1. *fera-m*, *I shall bear*.
2. *ferš-s*, &c.

PERF. 1. *tul-i*, *I have borne*. 1. *tul-eri-m*, *I have (may have) borne*.
2. *tul-istī*, &c. 2. *tul-eri-s*, &c.

PLUPF. 1. *tul-era-m*, *I had borne*. 1. *tul-isse-m*, *I had (might have) borne*.
2. *tul-erš-s*, &c. 2. *tul-issē-s*, &c.

FUT. PF. 1. *tul-er-š*, *I shall have borne*.
2. *tul-eri-s*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG. 2. *fer*, *bear you*. FUT. SG. 2. *fer-tō*, *you shall bear*.
3. — 3. *fer-tō*, *he shall bear*.

PL. 2. *fer-te*, *bear ye*. PL. 2. *fer-tōte*, *you shall bear*.
3. — 3. *feru-ntō*, *they shall bear*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fer-re*, *to bear*.
PERF. *tul-isse*, *to have borne*.
FUT. *lā-tūr-um*, *-am*, *-um* [*esse*], *to be about to bear*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *fer-š-na*, *bearing*.
FUT. *lā-tūr-us*, *-a*, *-um*, *about to bear*.

GERUND.

GEN. *ferē-nd-i*, *of bearing*.
DAT. *ferē-nd-ō*, *to bearing*.
ACC. *ferē-nd-um*, *bearing*.
ABL. *ferē-nd-ō*, *by bearing*.

SUPINES.

ACC. *lā-tum*, *to bear*.
ABL. *lā-tū*, *to bear*.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

I am borne.
PRES. SG. 1. *fer-o-r*, PL. 1. *feri-mur*,
2. *fer-ris* 2. *feri-mini*,
(or *-re*),
3. *fer-tur*. 3. *fer-u-ntur*.
IMPERF. 1. *ferš-ba-r*, *I was borne*.
2. *ferš-bā-ris* (or *-re*), &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be (may be) borne.
SG. 1. *fera-r*, PL. 1. *ferā-mur*,
2. *ferā-ris* 2. *ferā-mini*,
(or *-re*),
3. *ferā-tur*. 3. *fera-ntur*.
1. *fer-re-r*, *I were (might be) borne*.
2. *fer-rē-ris* (or *-re*), &c.

190 CONJUGATION OF FERŌ: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

FUT. SG. 1. *fera-r*, *I shall be borne.*
2. *ferē-ris* (or *-re*), &c.

PERF. 1. *lā-tus sum*, &c., *I have been borne, or was borne.*

PLUPF. 1. *lā-tus eram*, &c., *I had been borne.*

FUT. PF. 1. *lā-tus erō*, &c., *I shall have been borne.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *lā-tus sim*, &c., *I have (may have) been borne.*

1. *lā-tus essem*, &c., *I had (might have) been borne.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG. 2. *fer-re*, *be you borne.*

3. —

PL. 2. *feri-mini*, *be ye borne.*

3. —

FUT. SG. 2. *fer-tor*, *you shall be borne.*

3. *fer-tor*, *ye shall be borne.*

PL. 2. —

3. *feru-ntor*, *they shall be borne.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fer-ri*, *to be borne.*

PERF. *lā-tum, -am, -um esse*, *to have been borne.*

FUT. *lā-tum iri*, *to be about to be borne.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. *lā-t-us, -a, -um*, *borne, having been borne.*

GERUNDIVE.

ferē-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) to be borne.

393.

Vocabulary.

volgō, adv. *commonly.*

seditiō, -ōnis, f. *sedition, mutiny.*

iūsiŕandum, iūrisiŕandi, n. *oath.*

fōrma, -ae, f. *form, shape, figure.*

af-fer-ō, af-fer-re, at-tul-i, al-lā-tum, I bear to.

au-fer-ō, au-fer-re, abs-tul-i, ab-lā-tum, I bear away.

cōn-fer-ō, cōn-fer-re, con-tul-i, col-lā-tum, I bear together, collect.

dif-fer-ō, dif-fer-re, dis-tul-i, di-lā-tum, I put off, differ.

of-fer-ō, of-fer-re, ex-tul-i, ē-lā-tum, I carry out.

of-fer-ō, of-fer-re, ob-tul-i, ob-lā-tum, I offer.

EXERCISES.

394. I. 1. Populus volgō Rōmulum deum esse crēdidit. 2. Cum sēditio orta esset, in cōtione procēssit Iūlius. 3. Dicit Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā esse. 4. Populō Rōmānō pācem et otium attulisti. 5. Tempestāte ortā, Rōmulus ablātus est. 6. Impedimenta omnia in ūnum locum cōferuntur. 7. Castris ante oppidum positīs in posterum diem pūgnam differt. 8. Caesar omnia arma ab oppidō efferri iubet. 9. Tē ad mortem offerō. 10. Tē in oppidum cōfer.

II. 1. He affirmed with an oath that he had seen Romulus. 2. Romulus having been borne away, a sedition arose between the fathers and the common people. 3. He promised that he would bring letters to me. 4. He said that he would sail from Tarentum to Athens. 5. If you had brought together all the baggage, you would not have been conquered. 6. You would put off the battle, if you could. 7. Do not carry the standards out of town. 8. Let us not expose ourselves to dangers without cause. 9. Would that you were not bearing aid to the enemy. 10. Let us go into town.

LESSON LXXXVI.

395. Conjugation of **FIŌ**. Predicate Nominative.

1. **FIŌ** supplies the lacking *Passive of faciō*.
2. When **faciō** is compounded with a *preposition*, the Passive is formed regularly from the same stem, but *otherwise* from **fiŏ**: e.g. **interficiō**, passive **interficior**; **patefaciō**, passive **patefiō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **fiŏ**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *I become*, *I am made*.

INDICATIVE.

I am made, I become.

PRES. SG.	1. fiŏ ,	PL. 1. (firmus),
	2. fis ,	2. (fitis),
	3. fit .	3. fiunt .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may become, be made.

SG. 1. fiam ,	PL. 1. fiamus ,
2. fies ,	2. fiatis ,
3. fiat .	3. fiant .

192 CONJUGATION OF FĪŪ—PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

IMPF. SG. 1. fībā m, <i>I was made,</i> <i>I became.</i>	1. fīerem , <i>I might become, be</i> <i>made.</i>
2. fībās , &c.	2. fīerēs , &c.
FUT. 1. fīam , <i>I shall be made,</i> <i>become.</i>	
2. fīēs , &c.	
PERF. 1. factus sum , &c., <i>I have</i> <i>been made, become.</i>	1. factus sim , &c., <i>I may have been</i> <i>made, become.</i>
PLUPF. 1. factus eram , &c., <i>I had</i> <i>been made, become.</i>	1. factus essem , &c., <i>I might have</i> <i>been made, become.</i>
FUT. PF. 1. factus erō , &c., <i>I shall</i> <i>have been made, become.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG. 2. fī , <i>become you.</i>
PL. 2. fī-te , <i>become ye.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. fieri , <i>to become.</i>
PERF. factum, -am, -um esse , <i>to have</i> <i>become.</i>
FUT. factum iri , <i>to be about to be</i> <i>made.</i>

396. Examine the following :

1. **Nēmō** nāscitur **dīves**, *no one is born* RICH.
2. **Servius rēx** est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING.
3. **Beātus** esse sine virtūte **nēmō** potest, *no one can be* HAPPY *without*
virtue.

Observe :

1. That the words in black type are in the *Nominative Case*, and that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number, and Case*.
2. That the *Nominative* is retained with the *Infinitive* if the *Adjective* agrees with the *Subject* of the *principal verb*.

397.

Vocabulary.

nāsc-or,	nāsc-I,	nā-tus sum,	<i>I am born.</i>
ēvād-ō,	-ere,	ēvās-I, ēvā-sum,	<i>I come out, escape, become.</i>
exist-ō,	-ere,	exist-I, —	<i>I step out : I appear, become.</i>
habe-or,	-eri,	habi-tus sum,	<i>I am held, am considered.</i>

EXERCISES.

398. I. 1. Aristidēs iūstus appellātur. 2. Rōmulus deus habitus est. 3. Rōmānī gentium dominī exstitērunt. 4. Rōmulus Quirīnus est appellātus. 5. Ex illā pūgnā nēmō ēvāsīt incolumis. 6. Paucī nāscuntur divītēs. 7. Nēmō ante mortem beātus appellārī potest. 8. Caesar cōsul creātus est. 9. Is homō peritissimus bellī habēbātur. 10. Caesar, tū nunquam fiēs rēx Rōmānōrum.

II. 1. After the death of Romulus, Numa became king. 2. Romulus seemed to be angry. 3. Caesar escaped safe from the battle. 4. He said the Romans would become masters of the world. 5. Cicero was considered a very great orator. 6. When Caesar had been made consul, he set out for Gaul. 7. Alexander was born king of Macedonia. 8. One became consul, the other, king. 9. If Remus should leap over the wall, Romulus would become angry. 10. If Caesar had been present, the Romans would have conquered.

399. RULE.—*Verbs of Seeming and Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Naming, Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing, and Thinking, take two Nominatives, one of the Subject, the other of the Predicate.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Primus Rēx.—VI

Ad deōs trānsisse¹ volgō crēditus est; cui rei fidem² fēcīt Iūlius Proculus, vir nōbilis. Ortā enim inter patrēs et plēbem sēditionē, in cōtiōnem prōcēssit iūre-iūrāndō adfirmāns vīsum³ ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā,⁴ eundemque⁵ praecipere ut⁶ sēditionibus abstinērent et rem militārem colerent; futūrum⁷ ut omnium gentium dominī exsisterent. Aedēs in colle Quirinālī

Rōmulō cōstitutā,* ipse prō deō* cultus et Quirīnus est appellātus.

NOTES.

1. *trānsisse... est*: he was believed to have crossed or it was believed that he crossed. 2. *fidem fecit*: gave faith. 3. *visum*: sc. *esse*, Infin. with Rōmulum after *adfirmāns*. 4. Abl. of Quality (286). 5. *eundemque*: and he; *eundem*: subject Acc. of *praecipere*. 6. *ut*: of Purpose. 7. *futūrum ut... exsisterent*: (it would happen) that the Romans would become masters of the world; *ut*: of Result after a verb of *happening*. 8. *cōstitutā*: sc. *est*, of which *aedēs* is subject. 9. *prō deō*: as a god.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Conjugation of volŭ; nŏlŏ; mālŏ.

400. PRINCIPAL PARTS :

volŭ, <i>I am willing,</i>	velle,	volui.
nŏlŏ, <i>I am unwilling,</i>	nŏlle,	nŏlui.
mālŏ, <i>I prefer,</i>	mālle,	mālui.

INDICATIVE.

	<i>I am willing.</i>	<i>I am unwilling.</i>	<i>I prefer.</i>
PRES. SG.			
1.	volŭ,	1. nŏlŏ,	1. mālŏ,
2.	vis,	2. nŏn vis,	2. māvīs,
3.	vult.	3. nŏn vult.	3. māvult.
PL.			
1.	volumus,	1. nŏlumus,	1. mālumus,
2.	vultis,	2. nŏn vultis,	2. māvultis,
3.	volunt.	3. nŏlunt.	3. mālunt.
IMPF.	volēbam, &c., <i>I was willing.</i>	nŏlēbam, &c., <i>I was unwilling.</i>	mālēbam, &c., <i>I was preferring.</i>
FUT.			
1.	volam, <i>I shall be willing.</i>	nŏlam, <i>I shall be unwilling.</i>	mālam, <i>I shall prefer.</i>
2.	volēs, &c.	nŏlē, &c.	mālēs, &c.
PERF.	volui, &c., <i>I have been willing.</i>	nŏlui, &c., <i>I have been unwilling.</i>	mālui, &c., <i>I have preferred.</i>
PLUPERF.	volueram, &c., <i>I had been willing.</i>	nŏlueram, &c., <i>I had been unwilling.</i>	mālueram, &c., <i>I had preferred.</i>
FUT. PERF.	voluerō, &c., <i>I shall have been willing.</i>	nŏluerō, &c., <i>I shall have been unwilling.</i>	māluerō, &c., <i>I shall have preferred.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may be willing. I may be unwilling. I may prefer.

PRES. SG.	1. velim ,	1. nōlim ,	1. mālim ,
	2. velis ,	2. nōlis ,	2. mālis ,
	3. velit .	3. nōlit .	3. mālit .
PL.	1. velimus ,	1. nōlimus ,	1. mālimus ,
	2. velitis ,	2. nōlitis ,	2. mālitis ,
	3. velint .	3. nōlint .	3. mālint .
IMPF.	vellem , &c., <i>I might be willing.</i>	nōllem , &c., <i>I might be unwilling.</i>	māllem , &c., <i>I might prefer.</i>
PERF.	voluerim , &c., <i>I may have been willing.</i>	nōluerim , &c., <i>I may have been unwilling.</i>	māluerim , &c., <i>I may have preferred.</i>
PLUPERF.	voluissem , &c., <i>I might have been willing.</i>	nōluissem , &c., <i>I might have been unwilling.</i>	māluissem , &c., <i>I might have preferred.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG. 2. **nōli**, *be you unwilling.*

3. —

PL. 2. **nōlite**, *be ye unwilling.*

3. —

FUT. SG. 2. **nōlitō**, *you shall be unwilling.*

3. **nōlitō**, *he shall be unwilling.*

PL. 2. **nōlitōte**, *ye shall be unwilling.*

3. **nōluntō**, *they shall be unwilling.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle , <i>to be willing.</i>	nōlle , <i>to be unwilling.</i>	mālle , <i>to prefer.</i>
PERF.	voluisse , <i>to have been willing.</i>	nōluisse , <i>to have been unwilling.</i>	māluisse , <i>to have preferred.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	volēns , <i>willing.</i>	nōlēns , <i>unwilling.</i>	(<i>Wanting.</i>)
-------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------

(*Wanting.*)

(*Wanting.*)

401.

Vocabulary.

infestus, -a, -um, <i>hostile.</i>	aliās, adv. <i>at another time.</i>
tūtus, -a, -um, <i>safe.</i>	sublicius, -a, -um, <i>resting on piles.</i>
cōgnōmen, -inis, n. <i>surname.</i>	oculus, -i, m. <i>eye.</i>
restitu-ō, -ere, restitu-I, restitu-tum, <i>I restore.</i>	
saepi-ō, -ire, saep-sl, saep-tum, <i>I hedge in, fortify.</i>	
āmitt-ō, -ere, -mis-I, -mis-sum, <i>I lose, send away.</i>	

EXERCISES.

402. I. 1. Rēx Etruscōrum in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restituere voluit. 2. Rōmānī autem Tarquiniōs rēgēs habēre nōluērunt. 3. Liberī esse māluērunt. 4. Sī Rōmam venīre vīs, nōlī tempus āmittere. 5. Urbs tūta esse vidēbātur. 6. Rōmānī ad Pontem Sublicium Horātium mīsērunt. 7. Horātius Cocles appellātus est, quod (*because*) oculum āmiserat. 8. Puer magistrum rogāvit cūr illō cōgnōmine appellātus esset. 9. Magister dixit sē aliās respōnsūrum esse. 10. Tīmoleōn māluit sē diligī quam metuī.

II. 1. If you wish, let us go. 2. He came in order to restore the Tarquins. 3. The Romans said that they preferred to be free. 4. Romulus wished the city to be fortified with garrisons. 5. If he had been unwilling, he would not have gone. 6. We shall be unwilling to go. 7. There is no doubt that he would have preferred to remain. 8. Are you unwilling to fight in behalf of your country? 9. If you were willing, I should go at another time. 10. We shall be unwilling to lose our liberty.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

403.

Gerund and Gerundive.

1. The *Infinitive* is used only in the *Nominative* and *Accusative cases*, the other cases being supplied by the *Gerund*. After prepositions, the *Gerund*, not the *Infinitive*, is used. Cf. 265.

2. The *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Neuter Gender*. The *Gerundive* is a *Verbal Adjective* and agrees with its Noun.

404. Examine the following :

1. Puer studiōsus est **legendi**, the boy is zealous OF READING.
2. Puer operam dat **legendō**, the boy devotes himself TO READING.
3. Puer prōpēnsus est ad **legendum**, the boy is prone to READING.
4. Puer discit **legendō**, the boy learns BY READING.

Observe :

That the *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.*, and that it is governed by other words just like any other noun.

405. Examine the following :

1. Puer studiōsus est { **legendi epistulam**, } the boy is zealous OF
 { **legendae epistulae**, } READING THE LETTER.
2. Puer operam dat { **legendō epistulam**, } the boy devotes himself TO
 { **legendae epistulae**, } READING THE LETTER.
3. Puer prōpēnsus est { **ad legendum epistulam**, } the boy has a bent toward
 { **ad legendam epistulam**, } READING THE LETTER.
4. Puer discit { **legendō epistulam**, } the boy learns BY READING THE
 { **legendā epistulā**, } LETTER.

Observe :

1. That in each of the above sentences, two expressions are in black type.
2. That the first expression in each sentence is a *Gerund*, with its object.
3. That the second expression in each sentence shows the object attracted into the case of the *Gerund*, and the *Gerundive* (not *Gerund*) used as an *Adjective* agreeing with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

Caution :

Remember that the *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *neuter Gender*, while the *Gerundive* is an *Adjective* and must agree with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

408.

Vocabulary.

studiōsus, -a, -um, *zealous.*opportūnus, -a, -um, *fit, opportune.*prōpēsus, -a, -um, *prone to.*parātus, -a, -um, *prepared.*al-ō, al-ere, al-ui, ali-tum and al-tum, *I nourish, support.*explōr-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *I search out, examine, explore.*suscipi-ō, -ere, -cep-I, -cep-tum, *I undertake.*

EXERCISES.

407. I. 1. Divitiacus loquendī finem fēcit. 2. Puer est studiōsus scribendae epistulae. 3. Memoria exercendō alitur. 4. Cōsul ad suscipiendam rem parātus erat. 5. Caesar ad explōrandum militēs praemisit. 6. Pueri prōpēsi sunt ad omnia dēlenda. 7. Hic locus opportūnus est proeliō cōserendō. 8. Multī convēnere studiō videntae novae urbis. 9. Rōmulus et Remus vēnandō saltūs peragrāvērunt. 10. Ad lūstrandum exercitum cōtiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habuit.

II. 1. The Etruscans came to Rome for the purpose of restoring the kings. 2. All things were opportune for crossing the river. 3. Caesar was desirous of storming the city. 4. The enemy deliberated about building a tower. 5. Books are useful for reading. 6. The mind is nourished by reading and writing. 7. The army was prepared for storming the town. 8. The lieutenant devotes himself to exploring the region. 9. The general thought that all things were prepared for setting out. 10. A beginning of crossing was made by the enemy.

408. RULE.—*As a verbal form, the Gerund governs the same case as its verb.*

409. RULE.—*Instead of the Gerund with an Accusative object, the Object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.*

LESSON LXXXIX.

The Supines.

410. The *Supine* is a Verbal noun used only in the *Accusative* and *Ablative Cases*.

411. Examine the following :

1. *Lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum vēnērunt, ambassadors came to Caesar to CONGRATULATE him.*
2. *Id dictū quam rē facilius est, that is easier IN THE SAYING than in the deed.*

Observe :

1. That in the first sentence, *grātulātum*, used after a verb of *Motion*, denotes the Purpose of the coming.
2. That in the second sentence, *dictū* is used after the Adjective *facile* to limit its meaning (Abl. of Respect, 145).

412. Examine the following :

1. *Dixit puerōs interfectum irī, he said that the boys would be killed.*
2. *Dixit puellās interfectum irī, he said that the girls would be killed.*

Observe :

That the Future Infinitive passive is made up of the Supine in *-um* and the Infinitive passive of *eo*, *I go*, and therefore *no change is made for gender or number*.

413.

Vocabulary.

invitus, -a, -um, unwilling.
iucundus, -a, -um, pleasant.
fās (indecl.), n. right.

mirābilis, -e, wonderful.
optimus, -a, -um, best.
nefās (indecl.), n. wrong.

nūb-ō, -ere, nūp-si, nūp-tum, I veil myself for, marry (Dat.).
exclud-ō, -ere, -clū-si, -clū-sum, I shut out, exclude.
salūt-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, I salute.

EXERCISES.

414. I. 1. Rōmam vēnit auxilium pōstulātum. 2. Eōs exclūsī, quōs tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. 3. Hōc est mirābile dictū. 4. Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invitās canēs. 5. Fīliam suam nūptum dedit. 6. Pācem petītum ōrātōrēs Rōmam mittuntur. 7. Hōc est iūcundum cōgnitū. 8. Nefās est hōc factū. 9. Dixit puerōs et puellās exclūsum iri. 10. Virgō, quam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat, filia Tarpēi erat.

II. 1. The Sabines came to demand the maidens. 2. This is pleasant to hear. 3. It is more difficult to do than to say. 4. Ambassadors were sent to ask peace. 5. This is right in the doing. 6. Many had come to see the city. 7. If you had come you would have seen the city. 8. Since you are here, I shall stay. 9. He said that the letters would be written. 10. Cicero was desirous of obtaining glory.

415. RULE.—*The Accusative Supine (in -tum) is used after Verbs of Motion to express Purpose.*

416. RULE.—*The Ablative Supine (in -tū) is used to limit the meaning of Adjectives.*

Reading Lesson.

Horātius Cocles.—I.

Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnum Tarquiniōs, infestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Primō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn¹ umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsīt; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat māgnūque² Porsenae nōmen. Ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant: urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia³ urbis pars mūrīs, alia Tiberī obiectō tūta vidēbātur. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit,⁴ nisi ūnus vir fuisset Horātius

Cocles, illō cōgnōmine appellātus,¹ quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat.

NOTES.

1. *Nōn . . . ante*: never before (lit. not at any other time before). 2. *māgnūmque*: and so great was. 3. *Alia . . . videbatur*: One part of the city seemed protected by walls, another by the position of the Tiber before it. 4. *dedit*: sc. et dedisset, and transl. almost gave and would have given, if it had not been for one man (= unless there had been, &c.), the regular expression for this idiom in Latin. 5. Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with *Horātius Cocles*.

LESSON XC.

Periphrastic Conjugations. Dative Case.

417. The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive with forms of the verb *sum*.

ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>sum</i> , I am about to love.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>sim</i> , I <i>be</i> (may be) about to love.
IMPF.	amātūrus, -a, um <i>eram</i> , I was about to love.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>essem</i> , I <i>were</i> (might be) about to love.
FUT.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>erō</i> , I shall be about to love.	
PERF.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>fui</i> , I have been, was, about to love.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>fuerim</i> , I <i>have</i> , may have, been about to love.
PLUFF.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>fueram</i> , I had been about to love.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>fuisse</i> , I <i>had</i> , might have, been about to love.
FUT. PR.	amātūrus, -a, -um <i>fuerō</i> , I shall have been about to love.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amātūrum, -am, -um *esse*, to be about to love.
PERF. amātūrum, -am, -um *fuisse*, to have been about to love.

* PASSIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amandus, -a, -um sum, <i>I have to be loved.</i>	amandus, -a, -um sim, <i>I have (may have) to be loved.</i>
IMPF.	amandus, -a, -um eram, <i>I had to be loved.</i>	amandus, -a, -um essem, <i>I had (might have) to be loved.</i>
FUT.	amandus, -a, -um erō, <i>I shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	amandus, -a, -um fui, <i>I have had to be loved.</i>	amandus, -a, -um fuerim, <i>I have (may have) had to be loved.</i>
PLUPF.	amandus, -a, -um fueram, <i>I had had to be loved.</i>	amandus, -a, -um fuisset, <i>I had (might have) had to be loved.</i>
FUT. PR.	amandus, -a, -um fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	amandum, -am, -um esse, <i>to have to be loved.</i>
PERF.	amandum, -am, -um fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved.</i>

418. Examine the following :

1. { Cōgnōscō, *I am finding out,* } quid factūrus sis, *what you (are going to do) WILL DO.*
2. { Cōgnōvī, *I have found out,* }
 { Cōgnōscēbam, *I was trying to find out,* } quid factūrus es, *what you (were going to do) WOULD DO.*
 { Cōgnōvī, *I found out,* }
 { Cōgnōveram, *I had found out,* }

Observe :

1. That the *Active Periphrastic* supplies the lacking *Future Subjunctive*, when the leading verb is *not Future*.
2. That the *Present* (factūrus sis) is used after *Principal tenses* and the *Imperfect* (factūrus es) after *Historical tenses*.

419. Examine the following :

1. Diligentia colenda est nobis, *carefulness IS TO BE (MUST BE) CULTIVATED BY US.*
2. Delenda est Carthāgō, *Carthage MUST BE DESTROYED.*
3. Tibi parcendum est, *you MUST BE SPARED (lit. IT MUST BE SPARED to you).*
4. Civibus ē vōbis cōsulendum est, *the interest of the citizens MUST BE CONSULTED by you.*

Observe :

1. That the *Passive Periphrastic* acquires a sense of *necessity*.

2. That the *Agent*, with the *Passive Periphrastic*, is expressed by the *Dative*, *except* when the *verb governs the Dative* (Ex. 4) : then *ā* or *ab* with the *Ablative* is used.

420.

Vocabulary.

quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much.* quālis, -e, *of what kind, what kind of.*

luxuria, -ae, *f. luxury.*

statua, -ae, *f. statue.*

iūdic-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I judge, decide.*

cōnsuēsc-ō, -suēsc-ere, -suēvī, -suē-tum, *I be accustomed.*

ēgredi-or, -gred-ī, -gres-sus sum, *I go out, come out.*

prōgredi-or, -gred-ī, -gres-sus sum, *I go forward, advance.*

EXERCISES.

421. I. 1. Antea dubitābam ventūraene (ne = *whether*) essent legiōnēs. 2. Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quā ventūrae nōn sint. 3. Cum luxuriā certandum est nobīs. 4. Gallī rogāre cōnsuēverunt quantum datūrī essent. 5. Statua Horātiō pōnenda est. 6. Is dixit nobīs prōgrediendum esse. 7. Dē hāc rē imperātōrī iūdicandum erit. 8. Rēs publica militibus dēfendenda est. 9. Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vita futūra sit. 10. Epistula puerō scribenda erat.

II. 1. Who doubts that the Romans will conquer? 2. We must judge concerning the character of Caesar. 3. You must go out from Rome immediately. 4. The consul asked what kind of soldiers he would have. 5. The state must be spared by us. 6. All things had to be done by Caesar. 7. Do not doubt that the soldiers will follow you. 8. We must read good books. 9. The teacher said that we must write the letter. 10. We must advance to battle.

422. RULE.—*The lacking Future Subjunctive is supplied by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, the Present being used after Principal tenses and the Imperfect after Historical tenses.*

423. RULE.—*The Indirect Question is always in the Subjunctive Mood.*

424. RULE.—*With the Passive Periphrastic denoting necessity, the Agent is expressed by the Dative.*

LESSON XCI.

Relative Sentences.

425. The *Relative*, as such, takes the *Indicative Mood*.

426. Examine the following :

1. *Helvētīī lēgātōs mīserunt qui pācem peterēt, the Helvetians sent ambassadors TO SEEK peace.*
2. *Nihil est quod metuum, there is nothing FOR me TO FEAR.*
3. *Illā dixit sē petere quod in sinistrīs manibꝯ gererēt, she said that she SOUGHT WHAT THEY WORE on their left hands.*

Observe :

1. That in the first sentence, **qui** = **ut** **ī** and denotes *Purpose* (cf. 288).
2. That in the second sentence, **quod** = **ut** **id** and denotes *Result* (cf. 293).
3. That in the third sentence, **quod** is a simple relative, but the *Subjunctive* is used because the verb is dependent upon the *Infinitive* **petere** (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*).

427.

Vocabulary.

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy*.
indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*.
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.
pecus, -oris, n. *flock*.

aptus, -a, -um, *fit*.
idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit*.
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*.
grātia, -ae, f. *influence*.

cōnsist-ō,	-ere,	-stit-I,	—	<i>I stand together, stop.</i>
resist-ō,	-ere,	-stit-I,	—	<i>I resist.</i>
trānse-ō,	-ire,	-i-I,	-i-tum,	<i>I go across, cross.</i>
viv-ō,	-ere,	-vix-I,	-vix-tum,	<i>I live.</i>
infer-ō,	-ferre,	intul-I,	illā-tum,	<i>I bring in.</i>

EXERCISES.

428. I. 1. Dignus est quī amētur. 2. Sōlus es quī hōc facere possis. 3. II, quī idōneī sunt, cōsistunt. 4. Caesar equitēs, quī flūmen trānsirent, prae-misit. 5. Cicerō, vir māgnae grātiae, aptus erat quī rem publicam administrāret. 6. Caesar eās rēs, quās lēgātī dīxissent, memoriā tenēbat. 7. Multī sunt quī hōc facere nōn possint. 8. Rōmulus lēgātōs mittit quī cōnūbium petant. 9. Rōmulus centum ex seniōribus, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, ēlēgit. 10. Nōn is sum quī improbōs laudem.

II. 1. He is worthy to be praised. 2. They were fit to guard the flocks. 3. Let us stand together and resist the enemy. 4. They were unworthy to be honored. 5. Let us cross the river quickly. 6. He sent forward men to explore that region. 7. There were some who believed that those things were true. 8. There is no one who does not fear you. 9. I am the only man who could not be induced. 10. Caesar hears that he has lost the influence which he had.

429. RULE.—*The Relative, instead of ut with a Demonstrative, is often used to denote Purpose.*

430. RULE.—*After dignus, indignus, aptus, idōneus, sōlus, and ūnus, the Relative is used instead of ut with a Demonstrative to denote Result.*

431. RULE.—*The Verb of the Relative Clause, if dependent upon Infinitives or Subjunctives, is put in the Subjunctive.*

Reading Lesson.

Horātius Cōoles.—II.

Is, extrēmā¹ pontis parte occupātā, aciem hostium sō-
lus² sustinuit dōnec³ pōns ā tergō interrumperetur. Ipsa
audācia obstupescit hostēs: ponte rescissō armātus⁴ in
Tiberim dēsiliit et multīs superincidentibus tēlis inco-
lumis ad suōs⁵ trānāvit. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem
cīvītās fuit; eī tantum⁶ agrī publicē datum est quan-
tum ūnō diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī⁷ in Comitīō
posita.⁸

NOTES.

1. Abl. Abs. 2. sōlus: *he alone*. 3. dōnec... interrumperetur:
until the bridge should be cut in the rear. 4. Pred. Nom. *fully armed*.
5. ad suōs: *to his own people*. 6. tantum agrī... quantum: *as much*
ground... as. 7. ei: *in his honor* (lit. *to him*). 8. posita: sc. est.

LESSON XCII.

Sequence of Tenses.

432. 1. In dependent sentences which take the Sub-
junctive, the choice of tenses in the dependent clause is
determined largely by the time of the leading verb, so
that—

PRINCIPAL TENSES ARE FOLLOWED BY PRINCIPAL TENSES.

HISTORICAL TENSES ARE FOLLOWED BY HISTORICAL TENSES.

2. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Present, Pure Perfect, Future, Future Perfect,	} are followed by	{ the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action). the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action).

3. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Imperfect, Historical Perf., Pluperfect,	} are followed by	{ the IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action). the PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action).

4. FUTURE RELATIONS.

- A. { Future,
Fut. Perf., } are followed by { the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action in the future).
the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action in the future).
- B. { Present,
Pure Perf., } are followed by { PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.
- C. { Imperfect,
Hist. Perf., } are followed by { IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.
Pluperfect,

433.

Vocabulary.

ferus, -a, -um, <i>wild, savage.</i>	innumerābilis, -e, <i>innumerable.</i>
negōtium, -i, n. <i>business, affair.</i>	-ne (in questions), <i>whether.</i>
quod, Causal conj. <i>because.</i>	mundus, -i, m. <i>world.</i>
abstinēns, -entis, <i>abstinent, temperate.</i>	incertus, -a, -um, <i>uncertain.</i>
mīlēsco-ō, -ere, ———	———— I become mild, soften.
removē-ō, -ēre, -mōv-I,	-mō-tum, I remove.
dēici-ō, -ere, -iēc-I,	-iēc-tum, I cast down.

EXERCISES.

434. I. 1. Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit. 2. Post mortem in morte nihil est, quod metuum, malī. 3. Laudat eum quod abstinēns fuerit. 4. Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocāverit. 5. Multī fuērunt quī ā negōtiis pūblicis sē removērint. 6. Epamīnōndās quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus. 7. Ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset. 8. Creāvērunt decem praetōrēs, quī exercitūi praeessent. 9. Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur. 10. Tam ea rēs facilis est ut innumerābilis nātūra mundōs effec-tūra sit.

II. 1. We shall find out what he is doing, has done, will do. 2. I was uncertain how long life would be. 3. There are many who cannot resist anger. 4. Caesar asked

whether the lieutenant had come. 5. Some came to see, others to be seen. 6. I do not doubt that she is weeping. 7. They ask Caesar to spare them. 8. Agesilaus died as he was returning home. 9. He was worthy to be chosen leader. 10. I fear that my friend will not come.

LESSON XCIII.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua or Indirect Discourse.

435. *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* or *Indirect Discourse* is opposed to *Ōrātiō Rēcta* or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech, not the exact words.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua depends upon some verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* expressed or implied.

436. Examine the following :

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :

Ō. R. "Omnēs in eō quod **sciunt** satis **sunt** ēloquentēs."

Socrates used to say : "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."

Ō. O. omnēs in eō quod **sciērent** satis **esse** ēloquentēs.

Socrates used to say THAT all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.

Observe carefully :

1. That in the first sentence, *Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs* are the *exact* words of Socrates, and are contained in quotation marks.

2. That in the second sentence, *omnēs in eō quod sciērent satis esse ēloquentēs* are *not* the exact words of Socrates, though they contain the main drift of the thought, and that no quotation marks are used ; but in Latin, the **PRINCIPAL** verb *sunt* is now in the **INFINITIVE** with subject **Accusative**, and the **DEPENDENT** verb *sciunt* is now in the **Subjunctive**, and in English the whole is introduced by the declarative conjunction *that* (cf. 371 and 431).

437.

Reading Lesson.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Arivovistus respondit :

Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis: nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque prae-
miis domum propinquōsque reliquisse: sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs: stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuerint. Nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pul-
sās ac superātās esse.

Ōrātiō Rēcta.

Trānsiit Rhēnum nōn meā sponte sed rogātus et arces-
situs ā Gallis; nōn sine mā-
gnā spē māgnisque prae-
miis domum propinquōsque re-
liquit: sēdēs habēō in Galliā
ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs
ipsōrum voluntāte datōs: stipendium capio iūre bellī,
quod victōrēs victīs impō-
nere cōnsuerunt. Nōn ego
Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum
intulerunt; omnēs Galliae
civitātēs ad mē oppugnā-
dum vēnērunt et contrā mē
castra habuērunt; eae omnēs
cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pul-
sae ac superatae sunt.

Observe :

1. That in transferring from Ō. O. to Ō. R. or from Ō. R. to Ō. O. changes are made only in *Nouns* that are subjects of the leading verb, in *Pronouns*, and in *Verbs*.

2. That the *principal verbs* are changed to the *Infinitives* and their *Nominative subjects* to *Accusative subjects*, and that *dependent verbs* are changed from the *Indicative* to the *Subjunctive*.

438. RULE.—In Ōrātiō Oblīqua, the *Principal Clauses* are put in the *Infinitive* with *Subject Accusative* and the *Dependent Clauses* in the *Subjunctive*.

READING LESSONS.

I. Gaius Iūlius Caesar.

102-44 B.C.



C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum genitus familiā, annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem amisit.

[GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born B.C. 102 and was assassinated March 15th (Ides of March), B.C. 44. He was a great general, statesman, orator, and author. For a full account of his life, see Abbott's "History of Julius Caesar," Froude's "Caesar," Plutarch's "Life" of Caesar, and Dodge's "Caesar"; also read Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar."]

1. 1. Iūliōrum: name of a patrician gens, that claimed descent from Iulus, son of Aeneas, who founded the Roman race. Several Caesars before Julius had been prominent men in the affairs of the republic. —genitus: Past Part. of *gignō*, denoting parentage.—familiā: Abl. of Origin, without a preposition except in case of remote progenitors.

1. 2. annum agēns, &c.: *in his sixteenth year.*

Cornēliam, Cinnæ filiam, dūxit uxōrem; cūius pater cum esset Sullæ inimicissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere, ut eam repudiāret; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar bonis spoliātus cum etiam ad necem quaereretur, mūtātā veste nocte urbe elāpsus est et,

1. 3. **Cornēliam**: Acc. obj. of **dūxit**: women usually had only the gentile name of the father, the words **prima, secunda, tertia, &c.** being added to distinguish them.—**Cinna**, famous in the party of Marius (157–86 B.C.) and bitter enemy of Sulla (138–78 B.C.)—**dūxit**: sc. **in mātrimonium**.—**uxōrem**: *as a wife*, the phrase in **mātrimonium dūcere uxōrem**, being translated *to marry*.—**cūius**: *his*, the Relative at the beginning of a clause is best translated by a Demons. or Person. Pron.: in such sentences, it is best in English to begin with the conjunction; transl. *since his father, &c.*, and note carefully the difference in order of the Latin and the English.

1. 4. **is**: *he*, refers to Sulla, the conqueror of Marius, and afterwards a merciless dictator.—**Caesarem**: object of **compellere**, and placed here for emphasis.—**compellere**: object Infin. with **voluit**: verbs of *Wishing, &c.*, may take a noun object or verb object to complete their meaning.

1. 5. **ut eam repudiāret**: a sentence of *Purpose*, after **compellere**: transl. *to divorce her*; divorces in Rome at this time were frequently made for no good reasons at all.—**neque potuit**: *but he could not*: notice that a negative sentence in Latin is added by **neque** or **nec**, not by **et**, **sed**... **non**, as in Eng.—**id**: *it*, i.e. **ut eam repudiāret**. Caesar showed great courage in thus defying Sulla.

1. 6. **Quā rē**: transl. *therefore* and begin the sentence in Eng. with **cum**, as in 1. 3.—**bonis**: Abl. of Separation, rendered in Eng. by *of* after **spoliātus**.—**spoliātus**: Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **Caesar**: transl. *when, therefore, Caesar had been robbed, &c.*, supplying *and* before **quaereretur**. A Part. agreeing with the subj. or obj. of the verb is often best rendered into English by a finite verb and a conjunction. See below, 1. 9.—**etiam**: *even*, emphasizing the harshness of the dictator.

1. 7. **quaereretur**: Subjv. with *Historical cum* and translated like an Indic.—**mūtātā veste**: Abl. Abs. *having changed* or *after he had changed* (lit. *his clothes having been changed*); carefully distinguish Abl. Abs. from the Part. agreeing with subj. or obj. of the verb. Cf. with **spoliātus**, 1. 6.—**nocte**: Abl. of Time; **urbe**: Abl. of Separation.

quamquam tunc quārtānae morbo labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae libertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur, 10 vix datā pecūniā ēvāsīt. Postrēmō per propinquōs et adfinēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis cōnstat Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amīcissimīs et ōrnatissimīs virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāsset atque illī pertināciter contenderent, expūgnātum tandem prōclāmāsse, vincerent, dum modo 15

l. 8. **quārtānae**: sc. febris and trans. *he was suffering from intermittent fever*: **quārtānae**: a fever that returns every fourth day.—**morbō**: Abl. of Cause.—**prope**...**noctēs**: *almost every night*.

l. 9. **comprehēnsus**: agrees with *he*, contained in **ēvāsīt**: transl. *he was arrested*, and supply *and* before **vix**. Cf. **spoliātus** above, l. 6.

l. 10. **nē**...**perdūcerētur**: expresses the Purpose of **datā pecūniā**: note that **nē** is negative of **ut**, denoting Purpose: it may be translated *lest, that not, in order not to, not to, in order that not*.

l. 11. **datā pecūniā**: Abl. Abs. *by giving money* (lit. *money having been given*), cf. with notes on ll. 6, 7, and 9.

l. 12. **veniam**: *pardon*, obj. Acc. after **impetrāvit**.—**satis cōnstat**: *it is well known that*, followed by the Acc. with the Inf. **Sullam**...**prōclāmāsse** (= **prōclāmāvisse**) as its subject. Verbs of *saying, showing, believing, perceiving, knowing*, &c., are followed by the Acc. with the Inf. in Latin. The Acc. is translated in English by the *Nom.* and the *Inf.* by a *finite verb*, the whole expression being preceded by the declarative conjunction *that*.—**Sullam**: subj. Acc. of **prōclāmāsse** in l. 15. Before translating an Acc. with an Inf. introduce the conj. *that* and then transl. the Acc. as *Nom.* and the Inf. as a *finite verb*: e.g. *that Sulla... cried out*.

l. 13. **dēprecantibus**: agrees with **virīs** and is best translated by a Rel. clause, *who tried to beg him off*.—**virīs**: Dat. with **dēnegāsset** (= **dēnegāvisset**), of which *he*, referring to Sulla, is subject.

l. 14. **illī**: *they*, expressed for emphasis and to contrast strongly with *he* contained in **dēnegāsset**.

l. 15. **expūgnātum**: agrees with **Sullam** and may be rendered, *was overcome*, if we supply *and* before **prōclāmāsse**, or simply *overcome*, if we omit *and*. Cf. note on **spoliātus**, l. 6.—**vincerent**: *that they should have their way*: **vincerent** represents **vincite**, *have your way*, in *Ōratiō Rēcta*, which by regular rule becomes Subjv. in *Ōratiō Oblīqua*. *Ōratiō Oblīqua* occurs after verbs of *saying*, &c., when the Acc. with Inf. is used.—**dum modo**: *provided that*.

scirent, eum, quem incolumem tantopere cuperent, aliquandō optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futurum; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.

- 20 Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expūgnātiōne Mytilēnārū corōnā civicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc

1. 16. **scirent**: *they realize*, representing **sciātis** of *Ō. R.*—**eum**: *that he*, subject Acc. of **futūrum** (**esse**), 1. 18, an Acc. with Inf. after **scirent**, which is a verb of *knowing*.—**quem**: obj. of **cuperent**: arrange thus: **quem** (**esse**) **incolumem tantopere cuperent**.—**cuperent**: *they desired*, is Subjv. in a Rel. clause in *Ō. O.* (i.e. dependent upon a verb of *saying*, &c.), and is usually translated like an Indicative.

1. 17. **partibus**: Dat. of Disadvantage with **exitiō futurum**, 1. 18.—**quās**: object Acc. of **dēfendissent**, and has **partibus** for its antecedent.—**sēcum**: *with him*, referring back to Sulla, represents **mēcum** in *Ō. R.*—**cum** with Personal Pronouns is always put last, e.g. **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **sēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **vōbiscum**, never **cum mē**, &c.—**dēfendissent**: represents **dēfenditis** in *Ō. R.*

1. 18. **exitiō futurum** (**esse**): *would prove destructive* (lit. *would be for a destruction*).—**exitiō**: Dat. of the Object For Which, sometimes called Purpose.—**futūrum**: sc. **esse**, the Future Inf. of **sum**, used in *Ō. O.* with the subject **eum** in 1. 16.—**Caesarī**: Dat. after **in** in composition with **esse** in **inesse**, used instead of the simple Dat. of Possession.—**Mariōs inesse**: still *Ōrātiō Obliqua* after **scirent** and translated in the same way as the other Accusatives with Infinitives.

1. 21. **corōnā civicā**: a crown of oak leaves awarded for saving a citizen's life in battle. It exempted the holder from taxes for himself, father, and paternal grandfather.—**Mortuō Sullā**: Abl. Abs. after *Sulla's death* or *after Sulla had died* (lit. *Sulla being dead*).—**Rhodum**: *to Rhodes*. Names of Towns and Small Islands being used in Latin *without* a preposition to denote Motion, we must supply *to* in English.

1. 22. **ut**: *in order to*, or *in order that he might*, sentence of Purpose.—**per ōtium**: *at leisure*.

1. 23. **dīcendī**: *of oratory* (lit. *of speaking*), Gen. of Gerund of **dīcō**.—**operam daret**: *attend the lectures of* (lit. *give attention to*).

dum trāicit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud
 eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spa- 25
 tium ita sē gessit, ut pirātis pariter terrōri venerātiōnique
 esset. Comitēs interim servōsque ad expediendās pecū-
 niās, quibus redimerētur, dīmīsīt. Vīginti talenta pirātae
 pōstulāverant; ille quīnquāgintā datūrum sē spondit.
 Quibus numerātis cum expositus esset in litore, cōn- 30
 festim Milētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit,
 ibique contrāctā clāsse invectus in eum locum, in quō

l. 24. *dum trāicit*: *while he was*, etc. Note that the *Present* with *dum* is translated by our *Imperfect*.

l. 26. *ut . . . esset*: *that he was*, sentence of Result, transl. by the Indic. usually. Note the difference from sentence of Purpose, l. 22, *ut . . . daret*.—*pirātis . . . terrōri*: same construction as *partibus . . . exitiō*, l. 17. Transl. *terrōri venerātiōnique* by *object of terror*, &c.

l. 27. *ad expediendās pecūniās*: *to procure money* (lit. *for procuring money*). Purpose is often expressed by *ad* with the Acc. of the Gerund and Gerundive. Carefully distinguish the Gerund from the Gerundive, remembering that the former is a *Noun* and the latter an *Adjective*. If the Gerund governs the Accusative case, the object Accusative is generally attracted into the case of the Gerund, and the Gerund, now become Gerundive, agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

l. 28. *quibus* = *ut eis*, the Rel. being often used thus to denote Purpose.

l. 29. *sē*: *that he*, subj. Acc. of *datūrum (esse)*; *sē* is used instead of *eum*, because reference is made to the subject of the sentence.—*datūrum*: sc. *esse*, Fut. Inf. in Ō.O. After a *primary* leading tense, the Fut. Inf. is translated by *will*; after a *secondary* leading tense, by *would*.—*spondit*: from *spondeō*.

l. 30. *Quibus numerātis*: Abl. Abs. *after this had been counted* (lit. *which having been counted*).—*expositus*: from *expōnō*; with *esset* it forms the Plupf. Subjv. translated like the Indic. after *eum Historical*.

l. 31. *Milētum*: see note on *Rhodom*, l. 21.—*quae urbs*: *urbs* should really be in the clause with *Milētum*, and we should have *Milētum urbem*, but by a peculiar Latin idiom, an Appositive or Attributive is attracted from the principal clause into the relative clause and made to agree with the relative. This is called *Incorporation*: transl. *Miletus, a city which*.—*proximē aberat*: *was very near by*.

l. 32. *que*: joins *invectus*, &c., with *properāvit*.—*contrāctā clāsse*:

ipsi praedonēs erant, partem clāssis fugāvit, partem mersit, aliquot nāvēs cēpit pīrātāsque in potestūtem redāctōs
 35 eō suppliciō, quod illis saepe minātus inter iocum erat, adfēcit crucique suffixit.

Quaestōrī ūltior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret et ad cōspectum pauperis cūiusdam vicī comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent, num illic
 40 etiam esset ambitīōnī locus, sēriō dixit Caesar, malle sē

Abl. Abs. *having collected a fleet* (lit. *a fleet having been collected*).—**invectus**: Pass. Part. of **invehō**, which in the Pass. means *sail*: transl. *having sailed* or *he sailed*, and supply *and* before **fugāvit**. Cf. ll. 6 and 9.

l. 33. **ipsi**: *themselves*, agrees with **praedonēs**, and indicates his boldness.—**fugāvit**, **mersit**, **cēpit**: notice the absence of conjunctions (called *Asyndeton*) and see how much more lively the description is made by the omission.

l. 34. **pīrātāsque . . . redāctōs**: *the pirates, who had been brought into subjection*: **pīrātās** is direct object of **adfēcit**, and **redāctōs** is Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **pīrātās**, and here best rendered by a Rel. clause, though *being brought* would be a true translation.

l. 35. **eō suppliciō adfēcit**: *inflicted upon the pirates, who, &c., that punishment* (lit. *affected with that punishment*).—**quod . . . minātus erat**: *with which he had threatened them* (lit. *which he had threatened to them*): notice carefully the difference between the English and Latin constructions.

l. 37. **Quaestōrī**: *as quaestor*: sc. **ei**, *to him*, as obj. of **obvēnit**. This was the *quaestor provinciālis*, who was the assistant of a consul or of a praetor in charge of a province: for a full account see Peck's Class. Dict. s. v. *quaestorēs*.—**ūltior Hispānia**: the southern third of Spain, the northern two-thirds being called **Citerior Hispānia**.—**obvēnit**: *fell by lot*.—**quō profectus**: begin with **cum** and transl. *on his way thither* (lit. *whither setting out*).

l. 38. **trānsīret**: transl. as if Impf. Indic. The Subjv. with *Historical cum* and with *Causal* or *Concessive cum* is generally transl. by the Indic.—**ad cōspectum**: *at the sight of*.

l. 39. **inter sē**: *with one another*: reciprocal relations are regularly expressed by **inter**.—**num**: *whether*.

l. 40. **etiam**: emphasizes the insignificance of the place.—**esset**: Subjv. in an Indirect Question, i.e. a question dependent upon some

ibi primum esse, quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā primā aetāte rēgnūm concupiscēbat semperque in ore habēbat hōs Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, versūs :

Nam sī violāndum est iūs, rēgnāndī grātiā
Violāndum est, aliīs rēbus pietatēm colās.

45

Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, animadversā apud Herculis templum māgnī Alexandrī imāgine ingemuit et quasi pertaesus ignāviam suam, quod

verb.—**mālle** : Inf. with **sē** for Acc. subj. after **dixit** ; transl. *would rather*.

l. 41. **esse** : *be*, obj. Inf. with **mālle**.—**Rōmae** : Loc. at Rome. With names of towns and small islands, Place at Which is expressed by the Locative Case.

l. 42. **avidus** : Adj. agreeing with *he* contained in **concupiscēbat**.—**ā primā aetāte** : *from his earliest youth*.

l. 43. in **ore** : *on his tongue* (lit. *in his mouth*).—**hōs** : agrees with **versūs**.

l. 44. **violandum est** : *must be outraged* : Periphrastic Pass. composed of the Gerundive with the tenses of **esse**.—**rēgnāndī** : see note on **dicendī**, l. 23.—**grātiā** and **causā** : these words regularly *follow* their Genitives.

l. 45. **violandum est** : sc. *id, it*, referring to **iūs** for subject.—**aliīs rēbus** : *in other respects*.—**colās** : second pers. Pres. Subjv. used as an Imperative ; note that the “you” is ideal, i.e. refers to no definite person. Transl. *you must*, &c.

l. 46. **Gādēs** : see note on **Rhodum**, l. 21.—**quod** : has **Gādēs** for its antecedent, but by Latin idiom the Relative is attracted into the Gender and Number of the predicate Noun, which is here **oppidum**.

l. 47. **animadversā** : Abl. Abs. with **imāgine**.—**Alexandrī** : Alexander had conquered the known world at 33.

l. 48. **quasi pertaesus** : *as if disgusted with* ; **pertaesus** agrees with *he*, contained in **efflagitavit**. Notice that in reading Latin we must carefully exclude all the dependent sentences till we find the leading verb. A dependent sentence is one that begins with a subordinate Conjunction or a Relative Pronoun or Adverb : the dependent sentences here are

nihildum ā sē memorābile āctum esset in eā aetāte, quā
50 iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem con-
tinuō efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam primum māiōrum
rērū occāsiōnēs in urbe.

Aedilis praeter Comitium ac Forum etiam Capitōlium
ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque et cum
55 conlēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēdidit; quō factum est,
ut commūnium quoque impēnsārū sōlus grātiā caperet.
His autem rēbus patrimonium effūdīt tantumque cōn-

quod... āctum esset in eā aetāte and quā... subēgisset, both which we must pass over to find the principal verb efflāgitāvit.

1. 49. nihildum: *nothing yet*.—āctum esset: Subjv. with *Causal* quod in Ō. O., translated like a Plupf. Indic.

1. 50. subēgisset: Subjv. in Rel. clause in Ō. O. and translated like an Indic.

1. 51. ad captandās occāsiōnēs: see note on ad expediendās, l. 27.—quam primum: *as soon as possible*. Quam with the Superlative degree of an Adj. or Adv. is our *as... as possible*.

1. 53. Aedilis: the Aediles had control of the public buildings and works, and also exercised the function of police magistrates; they also had charge of the public games and often entertained the people with magnificent shows at their own expense. Transl. *as Aedile*; it is in apposition with *he* contained in ōrnāvit.—Comitium: the Comitium was an open space next to the Forum. Forum: The Forum Rōmānum was a large open space between the Capitoline and Palatine hills and was surrounded with porticoes, temples, and shops; it was used for holding courts and public meetings of all kinds.—Capitōlium: this was the name given to the two summits of the Capitoline Hill, upon one of which was the Arx or Citadel, and upon the other the temple of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva.

1. 54. porticibus: the porticoes were long, narrow walks covered by a roof resting on columns; they were magnificently constructed and adorned with handsome statues and paintings.—Vēnātiōnēs: hunts were celebrated in the amphitheatre.—et... et: *both... and*.

1. 55. quō factum est: *from which it happened that*.

1. 56. ut... caperet: sentence of Result after quō factum est.—sōlus: *he alone*.—grātiā caperet: *got the credit of*.

1. 57. tantum: agrees with *aes*.

flāvit aes aliēnum, ut ipse diceret, sibi opus esse mīliēns sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

Cōsul deinde creātus cum M. Bibulō, societātem cum 60 Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit Caesar, nē quid agerētur in rē publicā, quod displicuisset ulli ex tribus. Deinde lēgem tulit, ut ager Campānus plēbi dīvideretur. Cui lēgi cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. Bibulus conlēga in Forum vēnit, ut lēgi obsisteret, sed 65 tanta in eum commōta est sēditio, ut in caput eius cophinus stercore plēnus effunderetur fascēsque ei frange-

1. 58. *aes aliēnum: debt.—ut:* denotes Result after *tantum*.—*sibi:* Dat. of Possession: transl. *sibi opus esse, that he had need or that he needed.*—*mīliēns sēstertium:* a hundred million sesterces = about \$4,100,000, when the purchasing power of money was far greater than it is now. *mīliēns sēstertium* is a contracted expression for *mīliēns centēna milia sēstertium*.

1. 59. *ut . . . nihil:* so that he might have nothing, i.e. he needed all this money to pay his debts.

1. 60. *Cōsul:* pred. Nom. with *creātus*, which agrees with *Caesar*, the subject of *iūnxit*; arrange thus: *Caesar, creātus cōsul cum M. Bibulō, iūnxit societātem, &c.—societātem:* this alliance is known in history as the *First Triumvirate*.

1. 61. *nē quid:* that nothing or lest anything.

1. 62. *quod:* which, refers back to *quid*.—*displicuisset:* *displeased*, lit. *should have displeased*, representing Fut. Perf. Indic. *displicuerit:* shall (have) *displease(d)*.—*ulli ex tribus:* any one of the three; the Partitive Gen. with *ullus, unus*, and *quidam* is often represented by *ex* with the Abl.

1. 63. *ager Campānus:* this was public land.—*dīvideretur:* should be meted out.

1. 64. *Cui lēgi eum:* begin with *eum* and transl. *cui by this*. Cf. note, 1. 3.

1. 65. *ut:* denotes Purpose, *in order to*.

1. 66. *in eum:* against him.

1. 67. *stercore:* Abl. with *plēnus*, filled with, which agrees with *cophinus*.—*ei:* his fasces (lit. the fasces . . . for him).—*fascēs:* the fasces were a bundle of rods, with an axe, carried by the lictors preceding a magistrate, and were symbols of his authority, the rods of scourging and the axes of beheading.

rentur atque adeo ipse armis Foro expelleretur. Quam re cum Bibulus per reliquum anni tempus domo abditus
 70 curiam abstineret, unus ex eo tempore Caesar omnia in re publica ad arbitrium administrabat, ut nonnulli urbanorum, si quid testandi gratia signarent, per iocum non, ut mos erat, consulibus Caesare et Bibulo actum scriberent, sed Iulio et Caesare, unum consulem nomine et cognomine
 75 pro duobus appellantes.

Functus consulatu Caesar Galliam provinciam accepit. Gessit autem novem annis, quibus in imperio fuit, haec ferre: Galliam in provinciae formam redexit; Germanos, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, primus Romanorum ponte
 80 fabricato aggressus maximis adfecit cladibus. Aggressus

1. 68. *atque adeo*: *and so*.—*armis*: Abl. of Means.—*Foro*: Abl. of Separation.

1. 69. *per*: *for, during*.—*abditus*: agrees with *Bibulus*.

1. 70. *curia*: Abl. of Separation.—*unus*: *alone*, agrees with *Caesar*.—*ex eo tempore*: *from that time on*.

1. 71. *ad*: *according to*.

1. 72. *si... signarent*: *whenever they signed anything as witnesses* (lit. *if they signed anything for the sake of witnessing*).

1. 73. *consulibus... Bibulo*: Abl. Abs. *in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus*.—*actum* (sc. *esse*) *scriberent*: *they wrote that it was done*.

1. 74. *Iulio et Caesare*: sc. *consulibus*.—*nōmine et cōgnōmine*: the middle and last names. A Roman generally had three names, e.g. *praenomen, nomen*, and *cognomen*.

1. 75. *pro*: *instead of*.—*appellantes*: agrees with *they*, contained in *scriberent*.

1. 76. *consulatu*: Abl. of Means with *functus*, since *utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and *vescor* are construed with the Abl.

1. 77. *novem annis*: *within nine years*.—*quibus*: *during which*.—*haec*: obj. of *gessit*.

1. 78. *Germanos*: obj. of *aggressus*.

1. 79. *primus Romanorum*: *he was the first of the Romans who* (lit. *he first of the Romans*).—*ponte fabricato*: Abl. Abs.

1. 80. *aggressus*: *attacked, supplying and before adfecit*.

est Britannōs, ignōtōs antea, superātisque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hic cum multa Rōmānōrum militum insignia narrantur, tum illud ēgregium ipsius Caesaris, quod nūtante in fugam exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō, in primam volitāns aciem, proelium restituit. Idem 85 aliō proeliō legiōnis aquiliferum ineundae fugae causā iam conversum faucibus comprehēsum in contrāriam partem detrāxit dextramque ad hostem tendēns, “Quōrsum tū,” inquit, “abīs? Illic sunt, cum quibus dimicāmus.” Quā adhortātiōne omnium legiōnum trepidātiōnem corrēxit 90 vincique parātās vincere docuit.

Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et dēfūctā Iuliā, Caesaris filiā, quae, nūpta Pompēiō, generi socerique concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulatiō ērūpit. Iam pridem Pompēiō suspectae Caesaris opēs et Caesarī 95

l. 81. *superātis*: agrees with *eis* to be supplied as Dat. obj. of *imperāvit*. We may translate *he conquered* and supply *and* before *imperāvit*.

l. 82. *cum . . . tum*: *not only . . . but also*.

l. 83. *illud ēgregium*: *that noble (deed)*.

l. 84. *quod*: *in that*.—*nūtante . . . exercitū*: *when the army was*, &c.—*raptō . . . scūtō*: *having snatched*, &c.—*fugientis*: sc. *militis*, of a fleeing soldier.

l. 85. *Idem*: *likewise, also*; lit. *the same (man)*.

l. 86. *aquiliferum*: Acc. obj. of *detrāxit*.—*ineundae fugae causā*: *for the purpose of beginning flight*.

l. 87. *conversum*: transl. by a Rel. clause, *who*, &c.—*faucibus comprehēsum*: transl. as if *comprehendit et*.

l. 89. *Quā*: remember to transl. Rel. at beginning of a clause by a Demonstrative.

l. 91. *vincique . . . docuit*: *and taught (docuit) [how] to conquer (vincere) those (legions) which were ready (parātās) to be conquered (vinci)*.

l. 92. *Interfectō . . . Crassō and dēfūctā Iuliā*: render these Abl. Abs. by clauses with *after* and a finite verb.

l. 93. *nūpta*: *wedded to*, agrees with *quae*.—*generi . . . tenēbat*: *preserved peace between son-in-law and father-in-law*.

l. 95. *Pompēiō*: Dat. of Agent = *ā Pompēiō*.—*suspectae*: sc. *sunt*, has *opēs* for its subj.

Pompēiāna dignitās gravis, nec hīc ferēbat parem, nec ille
superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinerētur, et,
nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, pōstulāset, ut sibi liceret,
quamvis absenti, alterum cōsulātum petere, ā senātū
100 suādentibus Pompēiō eiusque amicis negātum ei est.
Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicāturus in Italiā rediit
et bellandum ratus cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī
prōvinciae eius finis erat, trānsiit. Hōc ad flūmen paulum
cōstitisse fertur ac reputāns, quantum mōlirētur, con-
105 versus ad proximōs, “Etiam nunc,” inquit, “regredi pos-

l. 96. **Pompēiāna** = **Pompēii**.—**dignitās**: subject of **suspecta est** contained in **suspectae** and **Caesari** is Dat. of Agent = ā **Caesare**.—**nec... nec**: and... neither... nor.—**hīc... ille**: the former... the latter.—**ferēbat**: could endure.

l. 97. **dētinerētur**: transl. like an Indicative.

l. 98. **nē**: that he might not, in order not to, or not to.—**imperfectō**: transl. by a clause beginning with *while*.

l. 99. **quamvis absenti**: although absent, agrees with **sibi**.—**alterum secundum**.—**petere**: complementary Inf. with **liceret**.

l. 100. **suādentibus... amicis**: by the advice of Pompey and his friends (lit. Pompey and his friends advising).—**negātum est**: has it (=alterum cōsulātum petere) for its subject.

l. 101. **acceptam**: transl. by a Rel. clause.—**vindicāturus**: for the purpose of, &c. The Future Part. to denote Purpose is rare in the best Latin.

l. 102. **bellandum** (sc. **esse**) **ratus**: thinking he would have to fight.—**bellandum** (sc. **esse**) is Inf. of Pass. Periphrastic after **ratus**, the subj. *it* being contained in the neuter ending; **bellandum esse** may, therefore, be transl. *it was necessary to fight, it must be fought, or it had to be fought*, &c.—**Rubicōnem flūmen**: Acc. after **trānsiit**. To cross the Rubicon with an army was the same as declaring war, because it bounded his province, which, by law, he could not leave without permission of the senate; it was a decisive move, and this explains our expression “to cross the Rubicon.”—**quī**: agrees with **finis**; cf. note on **quod**, l. 46.

l. 103. **ad**: near.

l. 104. **fertur**: he is said.—**mōlirētur**: Ind. Quest. transl. like an Indic.—**conversus**: sc. **esse**, and transl. *to have*, &c.

sumus; quod si ponticulum trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt.” Postrēmō autem, “*Iacta ālea estō!*” exclāmāns, exercitum trāicī iūssit plūrimisque urbibus occupātis Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōnfūgerant. 110

Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus ā Brundisiō Dyrrhāchium inter oppositās clāssēs gravissimā hieme trāsmisit; cōpiisque, quās subsequī iūsserat, diūtius cēssantibus cum ad eas arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset, mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns 115 castris noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit, obvolūtō capite, nē āgnōsceretur, et quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumescēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dirigi

1. 106. *si...trānsierimus*: *if we cross* (lit. *shall have crossed*), for the Latins were more exact in use of tenses than we are.

1. 107. *agenda erunt*: Fut. tense of Pass. periph. *will have to be done*; cf. *bellandum* above.—*Iacta ālea estō*: *let the die be cast*.—*exclāmāns*: transl. after *autem* and before *ālea*, &c.

1. 108. *plūrimisque...occupātis*: *having seized*, &c.

1. 109. *Brundisium*: see note on *Rhodum*, l. 21.—*quō*: *whither*, old Dat. case used as an adverb.

1. 111. *Qui cum*: transl. *cum* first and *qui* like a Demonstrative Pron.; cf. l. 3.—*secūtus*: Deponent verbs may take an Acc. case, because they are Pass. in form only; transl. either by a Perf. act. part. or by a finite verb, supplying *and* before *trāsmisit*.

1. 112. *oppositās*: *opposed*, used attributively here.—*gravissimā*: *in a very severe*. The Latin superl. is often to be trans. by *very* instead of *most* or the Eng. superl.

1. 113. *cōpiisque*: Abl. Abs. with *cēssantibus*: transl. by a *since* clause and supply *and* before *cum* in 114.

1. 114. *diūtius*: *too long*. The comparative is often to be rendered by *too* or *rather*.—*ad eas arcessendās*: *to summon them*; cf. l. 27.

1. 115. *Morae*: Gen. after *impatiēns*, which agrees with *he* contained in *ēgreditur*.

1. 116. *obvolūtō capite*: *with covered*, &c., Abl. Abs.

1. 117. *nē*: *that he might not*, &c.—*quamquam*: *although*.

1. 118. *in altum*: *to the deep* (sea).

nāvigium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, “Quid timēs?”
 120 inquit, “Caesarem vehis!” neque prius gubernātōrem
 cēdere adversae tempestātī passus est, quam paene obrutus
 esset fluctibus.

Deinde Caesar in Ēpirum profectus Pompēium Phar-
 sālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occisum
 125 cōgnōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompēiī interfectōrī, ā quō
 sibi quoque insidiās tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quō
 victō in Pontum trāsiit Pharnacemque, Mithridātis filium,
 rebellantem et multiplici succēssū praeferōcem intrā quīn-
 tum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōspectum
 130 vēnit, hōris unā prōfligāvit aciē, mōre fulminis, quod unō
 eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscēssit. Nec vāna
 dē sē praedicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse

l. 119. *gubernātōre*, &c.: *when the helmsman*, &c.

l. 120. *neque*: *and . . . not*, the regular idiom in Latin.—*prius*: goes with *quam*; *priusquam* is often thus separated in Latin; transl. *until*.

l. 121. *obrutus esset*: transl. by a Plupf. Indicative.

l. 123. *profectus*: *having set out*.

l. 124. *fugientem*: agrees with *eum* understood, the object of *persecūtus*.—*persecūtus*: cf. *secūtus*, l. 111.—*ut*: *when*.—*occisum* = *eum occisum esse*: *that he had been killed*.

l. 125. *Ptolemaeō*: Dat. after *bellum intulit*, l. 126.—*rēgī* and *interfectōrī*: in apposition with *Ptolemaeō*.—*ā quō*: Abl. of Agent with *tendi*.

l. 126. *sibi*: *for himself*.—*insidiās tendī*: Acc. with Inf. after *vidēret*, which is Subjv. in a dependent clause in Ō. O.—*quō victō*: *when he had been conquered* (lit. *who being*, &c.).

l. 127. *Pharnacem*: object of *prōfligāvit*.

l. 128. *rebellantem*: agrees with *Pharnacem*, as does also *praeferōcem*.—*intrā . . . diem*: *within four days after his arrival*.

l. 129. *quattuor hōris*: *within four hours*, parallel with *intrā . . . diem*.—*quibus*: *after which* (lit. *within which*).

l. 130. *unā*: belongs with *aciē*.—*mōre*: *like* (lit. *after the manner of*).

l. 131. *percussit*, *abscēssit*: asyndeton, more vivid than if the Conj. were used; cf. l. 33.

l. 132. *ante*: belongs with *quam*.—*victum . . . esse*: Inf. with *hostem*, subj. Acc. after *praedicātiō est*, which is equivalent to a verb of *saying*: transl. *was conquered before (he was) seen*.

quam vīsum. Ponticō postea triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum : “Vēnī, vidī, vicī.” Deinde Scipiōnem et Iubam, Numidiaē rēgem, reliquiās Pompēiānārum par- 135 tium in Africā refoventēs, dēvicit.

Victōrem Africānī bellī Gāium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgnī filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns ac terribile cōnflāverat, undique ad eum auxiliis paternī nōminis māgnitūdinem sequentium ex tōtō 140 orbe cōnfluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta fortūna est ; sed nūllum umquam atrōcius periculōsiusque ab eō initum proelium ; adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte, dēscenderet equō cōsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāset exi- 145

1. 133. *trium verbōrum* : qualifies *titulum*.

1. 134. *Scipiōnem et Iubam* : Acc. after *dēvicit*.

1. 136. *refoventēs* : Pres. Part. agrees with *reliquiās*.

1. 137. *Victōrem* : agrees with *Caesarem*.—*gravius* and *Hispāniēse* agree with *bellum* understood, which is the subject of *excēpit*. Transl. *Caesar began a graver war in Spain* (lit. *a graver Spanish war received Caesar*).

1. 138. *Māgnī* : agrees with *Pompēiī* understood.

1. 139. *ingēns ac terribile* : are predicates qualifying *quod*, but properly belong to *bellum*, the antecedent of *quod*, so that we may translate, *a war, great and terrible, which, &c.*, inserting this immediately after *Hispāniēse*.

1. 140. *auxiliis* : Abl. Abs. with *cōnfluentibus*.—*māgnitūdinem* : obj. of *sequentium*.—*sequentium* : agrees with *eōrum* understood, dependent upon *auxiliis*, and is best transl. by a Rel. clause, *of those who followed*.

1. 141. *Sua . . . fortūna* : *his usual good fortune*.

1. 142. *atrōcius periculōsiusque* : are adjectives and agree with *proelium*.

1. 143. *initum* : sc. *est*.—*plūs . . . Mārte* : *the contest being more than doubtful*, Abl. Abs., *Mārte*, Mars, the god of war, being used for *proeliū*; this is called Metonymy.

1. 144. *suōrum* : *of his own men*. *sui*, &c. (Plur. of *suus*), are frequently used alone for *soldiers*.

1. 145. *quod* : *because*.—*eum* : *such a* (lit. *this*).—*servāset* = *servāvisset* and translated like a Plupf. Indicative.

tum, dēnūtiāret militibus, vēstigiō sē nōn recēssūrum ; proinde vidērent, quem et quō locō imperātōrem dēsertūrī essent. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est.

Cn. Pompēius victus et interēptus est. Caesar, omnium
150 victor, regressus in urbem omnibus, quī contrā sē arma tulerant, ignōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Bellis cīvilibus cōfectīs, conversus iam ad ōrdinandum reī pūblicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque
155 diērum esset et intercalāriō mēse sublātō ūnus diēs quārtō quōque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dixit. Repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Peregrinārum mercium portōria īstituit ; lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit. Dē ōrnanā in-
160 struendāque urbe, item dē tuendō ampliandōque imperiō plūra ac māiōra in diēs dēstinābat ; imprīmīs iūs cīvile ad certum modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum cōpiā

l. 146. dēnūtiāret, Subjv. of Result with *adeō ut*, with which it is connected by the *que* with *cōsistēns*.—vēstigiō : Abl. of Separation.—recēssūrum (*esse*) : *would not retreat*.

l. 147. proinde vidērent : *that they should see*, represents an Imperative of Ō. R. ; cf. *vincerent*, l. 15.—quem . . . dēsertūrī essent : *what kind of general they were about to desert and in what kind of place*.

l. 149. victus : goes with *est* as well as *interēptus*.

l. 150. omnibus : Dat. with *ignōvit*.

l. 152. Bellis . . . cōfectis : transl. by a clause with *after*.—conversus : sc. *est*.—ad ōrdinandum . . . statum : *to arranging, &c.*

l. 155. esset : *should be* ; subject is *is, it*, referring to *annum*.—intercalāriō . . . sublātō : *the intercalary month being abolished*.—quārtō . . . annō : *in every fourth year*.

l. 156. Iūs dixit : *he decided cases*.

l. 157. convictōs : *those convicted*. Judicial verbs take the Genitive.

l. 159. lēgem sūmptuāriam : *law against extravagance*.—ōrnanā, &c. : see note on *expediendās*, l. 27.

l. 161. plūra ac māiōra : *more and greater things*. The neuter plural of the adjective is often used to denote things instead of the feminine with *rēs* ; e.g. *omnia, all things*, is more common than *rēs omnes*.

l. 162. redigere : obj. Infin. after *dēstinābat* continued from l. 161/

optima quaeque et necessaria in paucissimōs cōferre librōs; bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās, quās māximās posset, publicāre, siccāre Pomptinās palūdēs; viam mūnīre 165 ā Marī Superō per Appenninī dorsum ad Tiberim ūsque; Dācōs quī sē in Pontum effūderant, coercēre; mox Parthis bellum inferre per Armeniam.

Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere insolentius 170 coepit; senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam, ut adsurgeret, monentem irātō voltū respēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes et tunc cōsulātus cōlēga, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstris diadēma, insigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō 175 est repulsum, ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrā-

1. 163. *optima quaeque*: all the best and necessary laws (iūra).—*cōnferre*: to bring together. By Caesar's death, this work was postponed for more than 500 years.

1. 164. *bibliothēcās*: obj. of *publicāre*.—*quās...posset*: as large as possible. Cf. *quam primum*, l. 51.

1. 165. *publicāre*: to open to the public, still ruled by *dēstinābat*.—*Pomptinās palūdēs*: a large marsh, about 25 miles in length, along the coast of Latium.

1. 166. *per*: over.—*ad...ūsque*: as far as.

1. 167. *Dācōs*: obj. of *coercēre*.—*sē effūderant*: had spread themselves out.

1. 169. *Haec et alia*: obj. of *agentem et meditantem*, which agree with *eum* understood, the object of *praevēnit*.

1. 170. *Dictātor...creātus*: transl. by a clause with *after*.—*Insolentius*: cf. *diūtius*, l. 114.

1. 171. *venientem*: agrees with *senātum*.—*sedēns*: agrees with *he* contained in *excēpit*.—*quendam*: obj. of *respēxit*.

1. 172. *ut adsurgeret*: to rise, obj. clause after *monentem*, which agrees with *quendam*.

1. 173. *comes...cōlēga*: in apposition with *Antōnius*.

1. 174. *capitī*: Dat. after *in, upon*, in *imposuit*.—*eius*: his, not referring to subject.—*sedentis*: sitting, agrees with *eius*.

1. 175. *diadēma*: Acc. after *imposuisset*.—*id*: it, refers to *diadēma*.

1. 176. *offēnsus*: sc. *esse*: Nom. to agree with *he*, the subject of

tum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius viris, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Īdibus Mārtiis in senātū cōnfodere.

- 180 Plūrima indicia futūrī periculī obtulerant dii immortālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō vīsū, ut Īdibus Mārtiis domī subsisteret ōrābat, et Spūrinna haruspex praedixerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā quasi fātālēs cavēret, quōrum ūltimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae,
- 185 "Ecquid scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?" et is, "Ecquid scīs, illās nōndum praeterisse?" Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsidentem coniūrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt ilicōque ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accēssit renuentīque ab utrōque umerō
- 190 togam apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs

vidēretur.—coniūrātum est : a conspiracy was made (lit. it was conspired).

l. 177. in, against.—amplius : more than, has no effect upon the construction.—Cassiō... ducibus : under the leadership of (lit. being leaders), Abl. Abs.

l. 178. Īdibus Mārtiis : on the Ides of March, i.e. March 15, 44 B.C.

l. 180. Plūrima indicia : notice how often the obj. Acc. and subj. Nom. change places for the sake of emphasis.

l. 181. ut... subsisteret : to stay, obj. of ōrābat.

l. 182. domī : at home, Locative case.

l. 183. quasi fātālēs : as fatal.

l. 184. Hōc diēs : on, &c., Abl. of Time When.

l. 185. Ecquid : omit in translation and say simply, do you know?—Īdūs... vēnisse : Acc. with Inf. Remember always to translate such an Inf. by the Indicative.—et is : and he (sc. respondit) answered.

l. 187. adsidentem : as he was sitting down, agrees with eum, obj. of circumstetērunt.

l. 188. speciē officiī : under pretence of a duty.—quasi... rogātūrus : as if to ask something ; cf. note, l. 101.

l. 189. propius : nearer, i.e. than he was when Caesar first entered.—renuentique : and when he refused (lit. for him refusing).

l. 190. clāmantem : agrees with eum, object of volnerat ; translate as, &c.

est," Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātis, adversum vulnerat paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae brāchium adreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadvertit, undique sē strictis pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvīt et ita tribus et vīginti plāgīs cōn- 195 fossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem filii locō habēbat, in sē inruentem vīdisset, dixisse fertur : " Tū quoque, mī fili ! "

Illud inter omnēs ferē cōstitit, tālem eī mortem paene ex sententiā obtigisse. Nam et quondam cum apud Xe- 200 nophōntem lēgisset, Cŷrum ūltimā valētūdine mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suō, āspērnatūs tam lentum mortis genus subitam sibi celeremque optāverat, et prīdiē quam occiderētūr, in sermōne nātō super cēnam, quisnam esset finis vitāe commodissimus, repentinum inopīnatumque 205 praetulerat. Percussōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam

1. 191. *adversum* : in front.—*paulum* : a little.

1. 192. *adreptum* : transl. as if *adripuit* et.

1. 193. *trāiēcit* : *stabbed*.—*cōnātusque* : *and attempting or when he attempted*.

1. 194. *ut* : *when*.—*strictis* : *drawn*.

1. 196. *Mārcum Brūtum* : obj. of *vīdisset*. Notice how often a Relat. clause is placed thus within another clause.—*quem... habēbat* : *whom he used to regard as a son*.—*locō* : *in place of* = *as*.

1. 197. *inruentem* : agrees with *Brūtum*.—*fertur* : *he is reported*.

1. 199. *cōstitit* : from *cōnstare*, *was well known*.

1. 200. *ex* : *in accordance with*.—*apud* : *in the works of*.—*Xenophōntem* : the famous Greek general and writer.

1. 201. *ūltimā valētūdine* : *in his last illness*.

1. 202. *quaedam* : *certain things*, with *mandāsse* (= *mandāvisse*), transl. *had issued certain orders*.—*āspērnatūs* : transl. as if *āspērnatūs est* and insert *et* before *optāverat*.—*tam lentum* : *so slow a*, agrees with *genus*.

1. 203. *subitam celeremque* : sc. *mortem* from *mortis*.—*prīdiē quam* : *the day before*, used like *priusquam*.

1. 204. *nātō* : *that took place* (lit. *born*).—*super* : *during*.—*quisnam* : *as to what*.—*esset* : Subjv. in ind. question, transl. like an Indicative.

1. 206. *trienniō* : Abl. of Measure after *amplius*.—*quisquam* : used only in neg. sentences and with *neque*; we may transl. *and no one*.

amplius supervixit neque suā morte dēfūctus est. Dam-nāti omnēs alius aliō cāsū periērunt, pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōnnulli sēmet eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem 210 violāverunt, interēmērunt.

Quō rārior in rēgibus et principibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā cīvili clēmentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompēium missārum ab eis, quī vidēban- 215 tur aut in diversīs aut in neutris fuisse partibus, legere nō-luit, sed combūssit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tri-buit, quod nihil oblivisci soleret nisi iniuriās. Simultātēs omnēs occāsione oblātā libēns dēposuit. Ūltrō ac prior 220 scrīpsit C. Calvō post fāmōsa eius adversum sē epigram-mata. Valerium Catullum, cūius versiculis fāmam suam lacerātam nōn ignōrābat, adhibuit cēnae. C. Memmii suf-

1. 207. *suā morte*: a natural death. Cf. note, cōsulātū, l. 76.—*dam-nāti*: tr. as if *damnāti sunt et*.

1. 208. *alius aliō cāsū*: one by one fate, another by another, in appos. with *omnēs*.—*pars . . . pars*: some . . . others.

1. 209. *sēmet*: emphatic form of *sē*, obj. of *interēmērunt*.

1. 211. *Quō rārior*: the rarer.—*Quō*: Abl. of Measure of Difference, used with comparatives.

1. 212. *hōc . . . magis*: the more it is to be praised.—*victōriā*: Abl. of Means after *ūsus est*.

1. 214. *missārum*: transl. by a Rel. clause.—*vidēbantur*: seemed; *videor*, I am seen, in the pass. usually means *seem*.

1. 216. *nē forte*: lest perchance.—*in*: against.—*gravius . . . darent*: should give occasion of taking too severe measures.

1. 218. *quod*: that.

1. 219. *occāsione oblātā*: if occasion offered, Abl. Abs. denoting condition.—*libēns*: willingly; such adjectives in the predicate are often translated by an adverb in English.—*prior*: first (of two), used instead of *primus*, because there are only two.

1. 221. *cūius versiculis*: by whose (little) verses.

1. 222. *lacerātā*: sc. *esse*.—*nōn ignōrābat*: he well knew (lit. was not ignorant); this use of two negatives for a positive is called *Litotes*.

frāgātor in petitiōne cōsulātus fuit, etsi asperrimās fuisse eius in sē ōrātiōnēs sciēbat.

Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō plēniōre, nigrīs 225 vegetisque oculis, capite calvō; quam calvitii dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocis obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētis sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsurpāvit libentius quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vinī parcissimum 230 eum fuisse nē inimici quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem publicā sōbriū accēssisse. Armōrum et equitandī peritissimus, labōris ūltrā fidem patiēns; in āgmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteibat, capite dētēctō, seu 235 sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrdibili celeritāte cōficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praevehiret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innixus inflātis ūtribus trāiciēbat.

1. 224. ōrātiōnēs : subj. Acc. of *esse*.

1. 225. *excelsā statūrā* : of lofty stature, Abl. of Quality.—*paulō plēniōre* : a little too large.

1. 226. *quam calvitii dēfōrmitātem . . . aegrē ferēbat* : and this deformity of baldness annoyed him (lit. and he scarcely endured this deformity of baldness).

1. 228. *dēcrētis* : which were, &c.

1. 229. *nōn alium . . . libentius* : he neither accepted nor seized any other more willingly.

1. 230. *iūs . . . gestandae* : the right of wearing, &c.—*Vinī* : Gen. after *parcissimum*.

1. 231. *eum* : that he.—*nē . . . quidem* : not . . . even : notice that the emphatic word is placed between the *nē . . . quidem*.

1. 232. *ūnum . . . Caesarem* : Caesar was the only one who or Caesar alone of all.—*ad . . . rem publicā* ; cf. l. 27.

1. 233. *Armōrum* : transl. with *in* after *peritissimus*.

1. 235. *equō* : on horseback.

1. 237. *ut* : so that, denotes Result.

1. 238. *nandō . . . ūtribus* : either by swimming or supporting himself upon inflated skins.

II. Mārcus Tullius Cicerō.

106-43 B.C.



Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestri genere, Arpīni, quod est Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Ex ēius avis ūnus verrūcam in extrēmō nāsō sitam habuit, ciceris grānō similem; inde cōgnōmen Cicerōnis genti inditum. Suā-

[MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO was born B.C. 106 at Arpinum and was killed B.C. 43. He was a great statesman, and, next to Demosthenes, the greatest orator ever known. For a full account of his life see Forsyth's "Life of Cicero," Plutarch's "Life" of Cicero, and Fausset's "Cicero."]

1. 1. *equestri genere*: of *equestrian rank*, i.e. next to the senators.
—Arpīni: Loc. Gen.
1. 2. *avis*: from *avus*.
1. 3. in . . . *nāsō*: on the extreme end of his nose.—*grānō*: Dat. with *similem*.
1. 4. *cōgnōmen*: see note on *nōmen*, &c., CAESAR, l. 74.—*Suādentibus*: when, &c.

dentibus quibusdam, ut id nōmen mūtāret, “Dabō operam,” inquit, “ut istud cōgnōmen nōbilissimōrum nōminum splendōrem vincat.” Cum ā patre Rōmam missus, ubi celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset, eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerilis ad hūmānitātem solet infōrmārī, tantō succēssū tantāque cum praeceptōrum tum cēterōrum discipulōrum admirātiōne id fēcit, ut, cum fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrinā ad aliōs mānāsset, nōn pauci, quī eius videndi et audiendi grātiā scholās adirent, repertī esse dīcantur.

Cum nullā rē magis ad summōs in rē publicā honōrēs viam mūniri posse intellexeret quam arte dicendi et eloquentiā, tōtō animō in eius studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita versātus est, ut nōn solum eōs, quī in Forō et iūdiis causās perōrārent, studiōsē sectārētur, sed privātim quoque diligentissimē sē exercēret. Primum eloquentiam et libertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. Nam cum Rōscium quendam, parriidii accūsātum, ob Chrēsogonī, Sullae libertī, quī in eius adversariis erat, potentiam nēmō

1. 5. *Dabō operam . . . ut : I shall see to it . . . that.*
1. 7. *missus* : trans. as if *missus esset et.*
1. 8. *ubi* : denotes Purpose and is equivalent to *ut ibi.*—*scholīs* : Dat. with *interesset.*
1. 10. *tantā* : agrees with *admirātiōne.*—*cum . . . tum* : *both . . . and.*
1. 11. *id fēcit* : *he accomplished this task (it).*
1. 12. *nōn pauci* : very many (lit. *not a few*) : Litotes.
1. 13. *eius videndi*, &c. : *of seeing and hearing him*, attracted from *eum videndi*, &c.—*scholās* : Acc. with *adire*; *ad* or *in* might have been used.
1. 14. *repertī esse* : Nom. to agree with subject of *dīcantur.*
1. 15. *magis* : goes with *quam.*
1. 16. *arte dicendi* : cf. note on CAESAR, l. 28.
1. 17. *eius* : *of it*; *this* would be *hōc*, agreeing with *studium.*
1. 18. *eōs* : object of *sectārētur.*
1. 22. *Rōscium* : object of *dēfendere.*—*accūsātum* : *accused*, or may be rendered by a Relative clause, *who was*, &c.—*ob* : governs *potentiam.*

dēfendere audēret, tantā ēloquentiae vī eum dēfendit
 25 Cicerō, ut iam tum in arte dicendī nūllus eī pār esse
 vidērētur. Ex quō invidiam veritus Athēnās studiōrum
 grātiā petiit ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit.
 Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem,
 Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magistrum ha-
 30 buit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dicentem audīvisset, flēvisse
 dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude privā-
 rētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllius vērō
 quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit ; cum māgna tum
 35 esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculis, quōs
 cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere ; postea vērō, dīligentiam
 et iūstitiam et cōmitātem eius expertī, māiōrēs quaestōri
 suō honōrēs quam ūllī umquam praetōri dētulērunt. Ē
 Siciliā reversus Rōmam in causīs dicendis ita floruit, ut inter
 40 omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur princeps.

1. 24. **eum** : *him*, refers to Roscius.

1. 25. **eī** : refers to Cicero.—**pār** : Nom. to agree with **nūllus**, the sub-
 ject of **vidērētur**.

1. 26. **veritus** : *because he feared* ; the Participle often denotes cause
 as well as most other relations of dependent clauses.—**Athēnās** : obj.
 of **petiit**.

1. 28. **sē contulit** : **cōnferre**, being transitive, cannot be thus used
 without an object, hence the **sē**.

1. 29. **magistrum** : *as master* ; appos. with **Molōnem**, obj. of **habuit**.

1. 30. **dicentem** : actual Perception and Representation require the
 Participle, which is distinctly different here from the Infinitive. The
 Part. shows that he *actually heard him saying*.

1. 31. **ēloquentiae** : governed by **laude**, an Abl. of Sep. with **privārētur**.

1. 33. **quaestor** : *as quaestor* ; in apposition to **he** in **habuit**.

1. 35. **initiō** : Abl. of Time, *at first, in the beginning*.

1. 37. **expertī** : *when they had experienced*.

1. 38. **praetōri** : an officer of much higher rank than quaestor ; hence
 the **māiōrēs honōrēs** were especially gratifying to him.

1. 39. **in causīs dicendis** : *in pleading causes*.

1. 40. **princeps** : Nom. because the pred. of the verb *be* and of the

Cōsul deinde factus L. Sergiū Catilīnae coniūratiōnem singulārī virtūte, cōstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīnae proavum, M. Sergium, incredibīlī fortitūdine fuisse Plīnius refert. Stīpendia is fēcit secundō bellō Pūnicō. Secundō stīpendiō dextram manum perdidit; stīpendiīs duōbus ter 45 et viciēns volnerātus est; ob id neutrā manū, neutrō pede satis ūtilis, plūrimisque postea stīpendiīs dēbilis mīles erat. Bis ab Hannibale captus, bis vinculōrum eius profugus, vīgintī mēnsibus nūllō nōn diē in catēnis aut compedibus custōditus. Sinistrā manū solā quater pūgnā- 50 vit, duōbus equīs insidente eō suffossīs. Dextram sibi ferream fēcit eāque religātā proeliātus Cremōnam obsidiōne exēmit, Placentiam tūtātus est, duodēna castra hostium in Galliā cēpit. “Cēterī profectō,” Plīnius addit, “victōrēs hominum fuēre, Sergius vicit etiam fortūnam.” 55

Singulārem hūius virī glōriam foedē dēhonestāvit prōnepōtis scelus. Hīc enim rei familiāris, quam profūderat,

passive of verbs of *considering, thinking, deeming, &c.*, is always Nominative.

l. 41. *factus*: cf. *experti*, l. 37.

l. 43. *proavum*: subj. Acc. of *fuisse*.—*fortitūdine*: Abl. of Qual., of *incredible, &c.*

l. 46. *neutrā . . . erat*: *although injured in both hands and both feet* (lit. *although sufficiently useful in neither hands nor feet*), and *although weak, he continued to serve as a soldier* (lit. *was afterwards a soldier*), &c.

l. 48. *vinculōrum* = 8 *vinculis*.

l. 49. *nūllō nōn diē*: *every day* (= *not no day*).

l. 51. *duōbus . . . suffossīs*: *two horses being stabbed from below, while he was seated upon them*.

l. 52. *eā religātā*: *this being fastened on (to the stump of his arm)*.

l. 53. *exēmit*, &c.: note the rapid movement by omission of conjunctions.—*duodēna*: not *duodecim*, because *castra* is used only in the Plural.

l. 54. *victōrēs*: pred. after *fuēre*.

l. 56. *dēhonestāvit*: subj. is *scelus*, placed last for emphasis.

l. 57. *rei familiāris*: Gen. after *inopiā*, an Abl. of Cause.

inopiā multōrumque scelerum cōnscentiā in furōrem āctus et dominandī cupiditate incēsus indīgnātusque, quod in
 60 petitiōne cōsulātus repulsam passus esset, coniūrātiōne factā senātum cōnfodere, cōsulēs trucidāre, urbem incendere, diripere aerārium cōstituerat. Āctum erat dē pulcherrimō imperiō, nisi illa coniūrātiō in Cicerōnem et Antōnium cōsulēs incidisset, quōrum alter industriā rem
 65 patefēcit, alter manū oppressit. Cum Cicerō habitō senātū in praesentem reum perōrāset, Catilīna, incendium suum ruīnā sē restinctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, proficiscitur, signa inlātūrus urbī. Sed sociī eius, quī in urbe remāanserant, compre-
 70 hēnsī in carcere necātī sunt. A. Fulvius, vir senātōriī ordinis filium, iuvenem et ingeniō et fōrmā inter aequālēs nitentem, prāvō cōnsiliō Catilīnae amicitiam secūtum inque castra eius ruentem, ex mediō itinere retrāctum

l. 59. *quod* : *because*.

l. 61. *cōnfodere* : this and the following Infinitives are dependent upon *cōstituerat*.

l. 62. *Āctum erat dē* : *it would have been all over with*.

l. 63. *in . . . cōsulēs* : transl. *in the consulship of*.

l. 64. *quōrum alter . . . alter* : *the one of whom . . . the other*, *alter* being used, because only two are mentioned.

l. 66. *in . . . reum* : *against the accused (Catiline), who was present*.

l. 67. *restinctūrum esse* : *that he would, &c.* acc. with Inf. after *minitāns*, *threatening*, which, like verbs of *Hope* and *Promise*, take Acc. with Fut. Infinitive.

l. 68. *inlātūrus* : *with the intention of, &c.* ; cf. CAESAR, l. 101, note.

l. 69. *comprehēnsī* : *were, &c. . . and*.

l. 70. *A. Fulvius* : subj. of *adfēcit*, l. 74.

l. 71. *filium* : object of *adfēcit*, l. 74.—*iuvenem* : app. with *filium*.—*ingeniō et fōrmā* : Abl. of Cause.

l. 72. *nitentem* : *although he was conspicuous*.—*secūtum . . . ruentem* : *because he adopted . . . and was rushing, &c.*

l. 73. *retrāctum . . . adfēcit* : *he brought back and punished with death*.

supplicio mortis adfēcit, praefātus, nōn sē Catilīnae illum adversus patriam, sed patriae adversus Catilīnam 75 genuisse.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed infestis signis Rōmam petēns Antōnii exercitū opprimitur. Quam atrōciter dīmīcātum sit, exitus docuit; nēmō hostium bellō superfuit; quem quisque in pūgnandō cēperat locum, 80 eum āmissā animā tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suis inter hostium cadāvera repertus est; pulcherrimā morte, sī prō patriā sic concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit. Cicerō ipse in ōrātiōne prō Sullā palam praedicat, cōnsilium patriae servandae 85 fuisse iniectum sibi ā diis, cum Catilīna coniūrasset adversus eam. “Ō dii immortalēs,” inquit, “vōs profectō incendistis tum animum meum cupiditāte cōservandae

1. 74. **praefātus** : *proclaiming*.—**sē** : *that he (the father)*.—**Catilīnae** : *for Catiline*, Dat. of Advantage.

1. 75. **illum** : *him (the son)*.

1. 76. **genuisse** : Perf. Inf. of **gignō**.

1. 77. **eō** : Abl. of Cause.

1. 78. **Quam . . . sit** : *how fierce the battle was* (lit. *how fiercely it was fought*). It is best always to translate such impersonal passives by supplying a Noun from the Verb, e.g. **pūgnātur** = **pūgna pūgnātur**, &c.

1. 79. **dīmīcātum sit** : Subj. in indirect question.

1. 80. **bellō superfuit** : *survived the battle*.—**quem** : agrees with **locum**, which together are the object of **cēperat**.

1. 81. **eum** : sc. **locum**.

1. 82. **pulcherrimā morte** : Abl. Abs. A Noun and an Adj. may be in the Abl. Abs. without a Participle, because there is no participle of the verb **sum**. The Abl. Abs. is here conditional and may be translated as if = **mors pulcherrima fuisset**.—**prō** : *for = in defence of*.

1. 84. **Cicerōnem** : direct object.—**patrem** : pred. obj. Verbs of *calling, choosing, &c.*, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing as in English.

1. 86. **fuisse iniectum** (= **iniectum esse**), the passive forms are often thus inverted; **praedicat** is a verb of *saying*, and hence the Acc. with Inf.—**sibi** : Dat. after **in** in composition in **iniectum**.

patriae. Vōs āvocāstis mē ā cōgitātiōnibus omnibus cēte-
 90 rīs et convertistis ad salūtem ūnam patriae. Vōs dēnique
 praetulistis mentī meae clārissimum lūmen in tenebris
 tantīs errōris et inscientiae. Tribuam enim vōbīs, quae
 sunt vestra. Nec vērō possum tantum dare ingenio meō,
 ut dispexerim sponte meā in tempestāte illā turbulentissimā
 95 rei pūblīcae, quid esset optimum factū.”

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dixit Clōdīus tribūnus
 plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset.
 Senātus maestus, tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā
 prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem
 100 suam dēfendere, māluit urbe cēdere, quam suā causā caedem
 fierī. Proficiscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt.
 Dein Clōdīus ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārcō Tullio ignī et
 aquā interdiceretur; illius domum et villās incendit. Sed

l. 90. *convertistis*: sc. *mē* from the preceding line.—*ūnam*: alone.

l. 91. *mentī*: cf. note on *sibi*, l. 86.

l. 92. *quae*: sc. *ea, those things*, as anteced. and obj. of *tribuam*.

l. 94. *ut dispexerim* = *ut dicam mē dispexisse, as to say that I (should have) perceived*.—*sponte meā*: of myself (lit. of my own accord).

l. 95. *quid*: interrog. *what* (= *what thing*).—*optimum factū*: best to do.

l. 96. *paucīs post annīs*: after a few years (lit. afterwards by a few years); *post* is here an adv. and *paucīs annīs* is an Abl. of Measure.—*diem dixit*: accused (literally, appointed a day for trial).—*Clōdīus*: a bitter enemy of Cicero.

l. 97. *quod*: because.—*cīvēs Rōmānōs*: the conspirators.—*indictā causā*: without trying their case.

l. 98. *veste mūtātā*: having changed their garments, i.e. put on mourning.

l. 99. *cum*: although, is concessive.

l. 100. *urbe*: Abl. of Separation.—*quam*: rather than, after the comparative idea in *māluit*.—*suā causā*: on his account.

l. 101. *Proficiscentem*: agrees with *eum*, the object of *prōsecūtī sunt*.

l. 102. *ut . . . interdiceretur*: that Marcus Tullius should be cut off from fire and water (lit. that it should be interdicted (prohibited) to Marcus Tullius from, &c.): this is the regular formula for banishment.

vīs illa nōn diūturna fuit ; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsideriō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coe- 105
pit et māximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam ei redeuntī ab ūniversīs itum est ; domus eius publicā pecūniā restitūta est. 110

Gravissimae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompēium ortae sunt inimicitiae, ut rēs nisi bellō dirimī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō enītēbātur, ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret, sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam per- 115
movēre posset, Pompēium secūtus est. Sed victō Pompēiō, ā Caesare victōre veniam ūltrō accēpit. Quō interfectō Octāviānum, Caesaris hērēdem, fōvit, Antōnium impūgnāvit effēcitque, ut ā senātū hostis iūdicārētur.

l. 104. *ferē*: note its position.—*populus Rōmānus*: the adj. *Rōmānus* regularly follows its noun.

l. 105. *Cicerōnis*: depends upon *reditum*.

l. 107. *Nihil*: subj. of *accidit*.—*itinere*, quō: *than that journey, by which*.—*itinere*: Abl. of Measure after *iūcundius*.—*quō*: Abl. of Means.

l. 108. *iūcundius*: *more pleasant*, neut. of comparative agreeing with *nihil*.—*Obviam . . . itum est*: *all went to meet . . .* (lit. *it was gone to meet by all*).—*ei redeuntī*: *him returning*, Dat. after *obviam ire*.

l. 111. *Gravissimae*: agrees with *inimicitiae*.—*tempestāte*: Abl. of Time When.

l. 112. *ut . . . vidērētur*: *so that it seemed impossible to settle the difficulty save by war* (lit. *so that the difficulty seemed not able to be settled*). In Latin, instead of the impersonal construction with the Acc. and Inf. (i.e. *rem dirimī nōn posse*), the personal constr. with the Nom. and Inf. is preferred with the pass. of *videō*, &c., save in the compound tenses.

l. 114. *inter sē*: *to each other*; reciprocal relations are regularly expressed by *inter*.

l. 115. *dēterrēret*: sc. *eōs*.

l. 117. *Quō interfectō*: *at whose death* (lit. *who being killed*).—*Octāviānum*: later called Augustus, by which name he is commonly known.

l. 119. *hostis*: pred. Nom. after *iūdicārētur*.

- 120 Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem iam diū sibī inimicum prōscripsit. Quā rē auditā Cicerō trānsversis itineribus in villam, quae ā mari proximē aberat, fūgit indeque nāvem cōscendit, in Mācedoniam trānsitūrus. Unde aliquotiēns in altum prōvēctum cum modo
 125 ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem maris patī nōn posset, taedium tandem cum et fugae et vitae cēpit regressusque ad villam, “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe servātā.” Satis cōstat, adventantibus percussōribus, servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmicandum,
 130 ipsum dēpōnī lecticam et quiētōs patī, quod sors inīqua cōgeret, iūssisse. Prōminentī ex lecticā et immōtam cervicem praebentī caput praeciūm est. Manūs quoque abscīsae; caput relātum est ad Antōnium eiusque iūssū cum dextrā manū in rōstrīs positum.
- 135 Quam diū rēs pūblica Rōmāna per eōs gerēbātur, quibus cē ipsa commiserat, in eam cūrās cōgitātiōnēsque ferē

1. 120. *societāte* : the second triumvirate.

1. 122. *trānsversis itineribus* : by *side-paths*.—*quae . . . aberat* : *which was nearest to the sea*.

1. 123. *trānsitūrus* : cf. note on *vindicātūrus*, CAESAR, l. 101.

1. 124. *Unde*, &c. : begin the sentence with *cum*, and transl. *unde* as if *inde*.—*prōvēctum* : agrees with *cum*, obj. of *rettulissent* (from *referō*) : transl. *as he was sailing*.—*modo . . . modo* : *now . . . now*.

1. 126. *et fugae et vitae* : depend upon *taedium*, the subject of *cēpit*.

1. 127. *regressus* : *returning*.

1. 128. *saepe servātā* : transl. by a Rel. clause, *which I have*, &c.—*Satis cōstat* : *it is well known*, followed by the Acc. and Inf. *servōs . . . fuisse* and *ipsū . . . iūssisse*.—*adventantibus* : *when*, &c.

1. 130. *dēpōnī lecticam* : *the litter to be put down*.—*quiētōs* (sc. *eōs*) *patī* : *and them to suffer quietly*, the Adj. in the pred. being often trans. as an Adverb in Eng.—*quod* : *what*, here = *id quod*, *that which*.

1. 131. *Prominentī . . . praebentī* : agree with *ei*, Dat. of Disadvantage, which is best transl. by a Gen. *his*. Transl. the participles with *as he*, &c., making *caput* their object and *it* the subj. of *praeciūm est*.

1. 135. *Quam diū* : *as long as*.

omnēs suās cōferēbat Cicerō et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scribendō. Cum autem dominātū ūnius Iūlii, Caesaris omnia tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec indignīs homine doctō voluptātibus. Fugiēns cōn- 140 spectum Forī urbisque rūra peragrābat, abdēbatque sē quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Nihil agere autem cum animus nōn posset, existimāvit honestissimē molestiās posse dēpōnī, sī sē ad philosophiam rettulisset, cui adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et omne studium cūramque 145 convertit ad scribendum; atque ut cīvibus etiam ōtiōsus aliquid prōdesse posset, ēlabōrāvit, ut doctiōrēs fierent et sapientiōrēs, plūraque brevī tempore ēversā rē publicā scrip- sit, quam multīs annīs eā stante scripserat. Sic faciundiae et Latīnārū litterārū parēns ēvāsīt pāruique virōrum 150 sapientium praeceptō, quī docent nōn solum ex malīs ēli- gere minima oportēre, sed etiam excerpere ex hīs ipsīs, sī quid insit bonī.

Multa exstant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, ge-

1. 137. *plūs . . . pōnēbat* : *spent more labor*.

1. 138. *ūnius* : *alone*.

1. 140. *homine doctō* : Abl. depending on *indignīs*, which agrees with *voluptātibus*.—*cōnspectum* : object of *fugiēns*, but *rūra* of *peragrābat*.

1. 142. *Nihil agere . . . nōn posset* : *must be active* (lit. *could not do nothing*).

1. 144. *adulēscēns* : *when a young man*.

1. 146 *ut* : denotes Purpose.—*etiam ōtiōsus* : *even though idle*.

1. 147. *aliquid* : used adverbially, *somewhat, in some respect*.—*fierent* : *might become*.

1. 148. *ēversā . . . publicā* : *since the state, &c.*

1. 149. *eā stante* : *while it was, &c.*

1. 150. *Latīnārū litterārū* : *Latin literature*.—*parēns ēvāsīt* : *he became, &c.*

1. 151. *praeceptō* : Dat. after *pārui*.

1. 152. *minima* : *the least of evils*.—*oportēre* : *that one ought*.—*hīs ipsīs* : sc. *malis*.—*si . . . boni* : *whatever good is in them* (lit. *if there is anything of good in them*).

1. 154. *facētē dicta* : *witty sayings* (lit. *things said wittily*).

155 nerum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō accinctum, “Quis,” inquit, “generum meum ad gladium adligāvit?”

Mātrōna quaedam, iūniōrem sē quam erat simulāns, dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō,
160 “Vērū est,” inquit, “nam hōc vīgintī annōs audiō.”

Caesar, alterō cōsule mortuō diē Decembris ūltimā, Canīnium cōsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēi partem renūntiāverat; quem cum plērīque īrent salūtātum dē mōre, “Fēstīnēmus,” inquit Cicerō, “priusquam abeat
165 magistrātū.” Dē eōdem Canīniō, scrīpsit Cicerō: “Fuit mīrificā vigilantīā Canīnius, quī tōtō suō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit.”

1. 158. *iūniōrem . . . simulāns* : *pretending to be younger than she was.*

1. 159. *trīgintā . . . habēre* : *was only thirty years old.*

1. 160. *hōc* : Acc. after *audiō*.—*audiō* : *I have been hearing.*

1. 161. *alterō . . . mortuō* : Abl. Abs.—*diē . . . ūltimā* ; Abl. of Time When.

1. 162. *cōsulem* : *as consul.*

1. 163. *salūtātum* : *to salute him.*

1. 164. *dē mōre* : *according to custom.*—*Fēstīnēmus* : *let us hasten*, Hortatory Subjv.—*priusquam abeat* : because he was consul for only a few hours.—*abeat* : Subjv. is used with *priusquam* and *antequam*, when the action is designed and denotes a Purpose; *priusquam* may here be resolved into *too soon for him to* = *in order that he may not go*, &c.

1. 166. *vigilantiā* : Abl. of Quality.—*tōtō* : *during his whole*, &c.

APPENDIX.

PARADIGMS.

NOUNS.

Declension I.

table (f.).

SINGULAR.—Nom.	mēnsa,	PLURAL.—Nom.	mēnsae,
Gen.	mēnsae,	Gen.	mēnsarum,
Dat.	mēnsae,	Dat.	mēnsis,
Acc.	mēnsam,	Acc.	mēnsas,
Voc.	mēnsa,	Voc.	mēnsae,
Abl.	mēnsa.	Abl.	mēnsis.

Declension II.

SINGULAR.

	<i>master (m.).</i>	<i>gift (n.).</i>	<i>field (m.).</i>
Nom.	dominus,	dōnum,	ager,
Gen.	domini,	dōni,	agri,
Dat.	dominō,	dōnō,	agrō,
Acc.	dominum,	dōnum,	agrum,
Voc.	domine,	dōnum,	ager,
Abl.	dominō.	dōnō.	agrō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	domini,	dōna,	agri,
Gen.	dominorum,	dōnorum,	agrorum,
Dat.	dominis,	dōnis,	agriis,
Acc.	dominos,	dōna,	agros,
Voc.	domini,	dōna,	agri,
Abl.	dominis.	dōnis.	agriis.

SINGULAR.

	<i>son</i> (m.).	<i>boy</i> (m.).	<i>man</i> (m.).	<i>talent</i> (n.).
Nom.	<i>filius</i> ,	<i>puer</i> ,	<i>vir</i> ,	<i>ingenium</i> ,
Gen.	<i>filii</i> , <i>filii</i> ,	<i>pueri</i> ,	<i>virii</i> ,	<i>ingenii</i> , <i>ingeni</i> ,
Dat.	<i>filio</i> ,	<i>puero</i> ,	<i>virō</i> ,	<i>ingeniō</i> ,
Acc.	<i>filium</i> ,	<i>puerum</i> ,	<i>virum</i> ,	<i>ingenium</i> ,
Voc.	<i>filii</i> ,	<i>puer</i> ,	<i>vir</i> ,	<i>ingenium</i> ,
Abl.	<i>filio</i> .	<i>puero</i> .	<i>virō</i> .	<i>ingeniō</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>filii</i> ,	<i>pueri</i> ,	<i>virii</i> ,	<i>ingenia</i> ,
Gen.	<i>filiorum</i> ,	<i>puerorum</i> ,	<i>virorum</i> ,	<i>ingeniorum</i> ,
Dat.	<i>filis</i> ,	<i>pueris</i> ,	<i>viris</i> ,	<i>ingeniis</i> ,
Acc.	<i>filios</i> ,	<i>pueros</i> ,	<i>viros</i> ,	<i>ingenia</i> ,
Voc.	<i>filii</i> ,	<i>pueri</i> ,	<i>virii</i> ,	<i>ingenia</i> ,
Abl.	<i>filis</i> .	<i>pueris</i> .	<i>viris</i> .	<i>ingeniis</i> .

Declension III.

SINGULAR.

	<i>chief</i> (m.).	<i>king</i> (m.).	<i>soldier</i> (m.).	<i>age</i> (f.).
Nom.	<i>princeps</i> ,	<i>rēx</i> ,	<i>mīles</i> ,	<i>ætās</i> ,
Gen.	<i>principis</i> ,	<i>rēgis</i> ,	<i>militis</i> ,	<i>ætātis</i> ,
Dat.	<i>principi</i> ,	<i>rēgi</i> ,	<i>militi</i> ,	<i>ætāti</i> ,
Acc.	<i>principem</i> ,	<i>rēgem</i> ,	<i>militem</i> ,	<i>ætātem</i> ,
Voc.	<i>princeps</i> ,	<i>rēx</i> ,	<i>mīles</i> ,	<i>ætās</i> ,
Abl.	<i>principē</i> .	<i>rēge</i> .	<i>militē</i> .	<i>ætātē</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>principēs</i> ,	<i>rēgēs</i> ,	<i>militēs</i> ,	<i>ætātēs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>principum</i> ,	<i>rēgum</i> ,	<i>militum</i> ,	<i>ætātum</i> ,
Dat.	<i>principibus</i> ,	<i>rēgibus</i> ,	<i>militibus</i> ,	<i>ætātibus</i> ,
Acc.	<i>principēs</i> ,	<i>rēgēs</i> ,	<i>militēs</i> ,	<i>ætātēs</i> ,
Voc.	<i>principēs</i> ,	<i>rēgēs</i> ,	<i>militēs</i> ,	<i>ætātēs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>principibus</i> .	<i>rēgibus</i> .	<i>militibus</i> .	<i>ætātibus</i> .

SINGULAR.

	<i>foot</i> (m.).	<i>guard</i> (m.).	<i>virtue</i> (f.).	<i>head</i> (n.).
Nom.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Gen.	pedis,	cūstōdis,	virtūtis,	capitis,
Dat.	pedi,	cūstōdi,	virtūti,	capiti,
Acc.	pedem,	cūstōdem,	virtūtem,	caput,
Voc.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Abl.	pede.	cūstōde.	virtūte.	capite.

PLURAL.

Nom.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Gen.	pedum,	cūstōdum,	virtūtum,	capitum,
Dat.	pedibus,	cūstōdibus,	virtūtibus,	capitibus,
Acc.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Voc.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Abl.	pedibus.	cūstōdibus.	virtūtibus.	capitibus.

SINGULAR.

	<i>consul</i> (m.).	<i>lion</i> (m.).	<i>image</i> (f.).	<i>name</i> (n.).
Nom.	cōnsul,	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Gen.	cōnsulis,	leōnis,	imāginis,	nōminis,
Dat.	cōnsuli,	leōni,	imāgini,	nōmini,
Acc.	cōnsulem,	leōnem,	imāginem,	nōmen,
Voc.	cōnsul,	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	cōnsule.	leōne.	imāgine.	nōmine.

PLURAL.

Nom.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Gen.	cōnsulum,	leōnum,	imāginum,	nōminum,
Dat.	cōnsulibus,	leōnibus,	imāginibus,	nōminibus,
Acc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Voc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
Abl.	cōnsulibus.	leōnibus.	imāginibus.	nōminibus.

	<i>toil</i> (m.).	<i>father</i> (m.).	<i>sea</i> (n.).
SING.—Nom.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
Gen.	labōris,	patris,	aequoris,
Dat.	labōri,	patri,	aequori,
Acc.	labōrem,	patrem,	aequor,
Voc.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
Abl.	labōre.	patre.	aequore.

PLUR.—Nom.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Gen.	labōrum,	patrum,	aequorum,
Dat.	labōribus,	patribus,	aequoribus,
Acc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Voc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Abl.	labōribus.	patribus.	aequoribus.

SINGULAR.

	<i>flower (m.)</i>	<i>right (n.).</i>	<i>kind (n.).</i>	<i>body (n.).</i>
Nom.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Gen.	flōris,	iūris,	generis,	corporis,
Dat.	flōri,	iūri,	generi,	corpori,
Acc.	flōrem,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Voc.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Abl.	flōre.	iūre.	genere.	corpore.

PLURAL.

Nom.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Gen.	flōrum,	iūrum,	generum,	corporum,
Dat.	flōribus,	iūribus,	generibus,	corporibus,
Acc.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Voc.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Abl.	flōribus.	iūribus.	generibus.	corporibus.

SINGULAR.

	<i>hill (m.).</i>	<i>tower (f.).</i>	<i>cough (f.).</i>	<i>fox (f.).</i>
Nom.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpēs,
Gen.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpis,
Dat.	collī,	turri,	tussi,	vulpi,
Acc.	collem,	turrim (-em),	tussim,	vulpem,
Voc.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpēs,
Abl.	colle.	turri (-e).	tussi.	vulpe.

PLURAL.

Nom.	collēs,	turrēs,	tussēs,	vulpēs,
Gen.	collium,	turrium,	tussium,	vulpium,
Dat.	collibus,	turribus,	tussibus,	vulpibus,
Acc.	collis (-ēs),	turris (-ēs),	tussis (-ēs),	vulpis (-ēs),
Voc.	collēs,	turrēs,	tussēs,	vulpēs,
Abl.	collibus.	turribus.	tussibus.	vulpibus.

SINGULAR.

	<i>city (f.).</i>	<i>citadel (f.).</i>	<i>part (f.).</i>	<i>mountain (m.).</i>
Nom.	urbis,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Gen.	urbis,	arcis,	partis,	montis,
Dat.	urbī,	arci,	parti,	monti,
Acc.	urbem,	arcem,	partem,	montem,
Voc.	urbis,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Abl.	urbis.	arce.	parte.	monte.

PLURAL.

Nom.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Gen.	urbium,	arcium,	partium,	montium,
Dat.	urbibus,	arcibus,	partibus,	montibus,
Acc.	urbēs (-is),	arcēs (-is),	partēs (-is),	montēs (-is),
Voc.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Abl.	urbibus.	arcibus.	partibus.	montibus.

	<i>sea (n.).</i>	<i>animal (n.).</i>	<i>spur (n.).</i>
SING.—Nom.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
Gen.	maris,	animālis,	calcāris,
Dat.	marī,	animālī,	calcārī,
Acc.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
Voc.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
Abl.	marī.	animālī.	calcārī.

PLUR.—Nom.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
Gen.	marum,	animālīum,	calcārīum,
Dat.	maribus,	animālībus,	calcārībus,
Acc.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
Voc.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
Abl.	maribus.	animālībus.	calcārībus.

Irregular Nouns.

	<i>ox (m.).</i>	<i>old man (m.).</i>	<i>snow (f.).</i>	<i>force (f.).</i>
SING.—Nom.	bōs,	senex,	nix,	vis,
Gen.	bovis,	senis,	nivis,	vis,
Dat.	bovī,	senī,	nivī,	vī,
Acc.	bovem,	senem,	nivem,	vim,
Voc.	bōs,	senex,	nix,	vis,
Abl.	bove.	sene.	nive.	vī.

PLUR.—Nom.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	virēs,
Gen.	boum,	senum,	nivium,	virium,
Dat.	bōbus (būbus),	senibus,	nivibus,	viribus,
Acc.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	virēs,
Voc.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	virēs,
Abl.	bōbus (būbus).	senibus.	nivibus.	viribus.

Sg.— <i>flesh</i> (f.).	PL.	Sg.— <i>bone</i> (n.).	PL.	Sg.— <i>Jupiter</i> (m.).
Nom. carō,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iūppiter,
Gen. carnis,	carnium,	ossis,	ossium,	Iovis,
Dat. carni,	carnibus,	ossi,	ossibus,	Iovi,
Acc. carnem,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iovem,
Voc. carō,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iūppiter,
Abl. carne.	carnibus.	osse.	ossibus.	Iove.

Declension IV.

SINGULAR.

	<i>fruit</i> (m.).	<i>bow</i> (m.).	<i>house</i> (f.).	<i>horn</i> (n.).
Nom.	fructus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Gen.	fructūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornūs,
Dat.	fructui (fructū),	arcui (arcū),	domui,	cornū,
Acc.	fructum,	arcum,	domum,	cornū,
Voc.	fructus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Abl.	fructū.	arcū.	domō.	cornū.

PLURAL.

Nom.	fructūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Gen.	fructuum,	arcuum,	domōrum,	cornuum,
Dat.	fructibus,	arcubus,	domibus,	cornibus,
Acc.	fructūs,	arcūs,	domūs, domōs,	cornua,
Voc.	fructūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Abl.	fructibus.	arcubus.	domibus.	cornibus.

Declension V.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	rēs (f.), <i>thing</i> .	rēs,	diēs (m.), <i>day</i> .	diēs,
Gen.	rei,	rērum,	diēi,	diērum,
Dat.	rei,	rēbus,	diēi,	diēbus,
Acc.	rem,	rēs,	diem,	diēs,
Voc.	rēs,	rēs,	diēs,	diēs,
Abl.	rē.	rēbus.	diē.	diēbus.

ADJECTIVES.

Declensions I. and II.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus (<i>good</i>),	bona,	bonum,
Gen.	boni,	bonae,	boni,
Dat.	bono,	bonae,	bono,
Acc.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
Voc.	bone,	bona,	bonum,
Abl.	bono,	bona,	bono.

PLURAL.

Nom.	boni,	bonae,	bona,
Gen.	bonorum,	bonarum,	bonorum,
Dat.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
Acc.	bonos,	bonas,	bona,
Voc.	boni,	bonae,	bona,
Abl.	bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	piger (<i>lazy</i>),	pigra,	pigrum,
Gen.	pigri,	pigrae,	pigri,
Dat.	pigro,	pigrae,	pigro,
Acc.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum,
Voc.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Abl.	pigro,	pigra,	pigro.

PLURAL.

Nom.	pigri,	pigrae,	pigra,
Gen.	pigrorum,	pigrarum,	pigrorum,
Dat.	pigris,	pigris,	pigris,
Acc.	pigros,	pigras,	pigra,
Voc.	pigri,	pigrae,	pigra,
Abl.	pigris,	pigris,	pigris.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miser (<i>wretched</i>),	miserā,	miserum,
Gen.	miserī,	miserāe,	miserī,
Dat.	miserō,	miserāe,	miserō,
Acc.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,
Voc.	miser,	miserā,	miserum,
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	miserī,	miserāe,	miserā,
Gen.	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum,
Dat.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs,
Acc.	miserōs,	miserās,	miserā,
Voc.	miserī,	miserāe,	miserā,
Abl.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.

Declension III.

Consonant Stems.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	vetus (<i>old</i>),	vetus,	vetus,
Gen.	veteris,	veteris,	veteris,
Dat.	veterī,	veterī,	veterī,
Acc.	veterem,	veterem,	vetus,
Voc.	vetus,	vetus,	vetus,
Abl.	vetere (veterī),	vetere (veterī),	vetere (veterī).

PLURAL.

Nom.	veterēs,	veterēs,	vetera,
Gen.	veterum,	veterum,	veterum,
Dat.	veteribus,	veteribus,	veteribus,
Acc.	veterēs (veterīs),	veterēs (veterīs),	vetera,
Voc.	veterēs,	veterēs,	vetera,
Abl.	veteribus,	veteribus,	veteribus.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	facilis (<i>easy</i>),	facilis,	facile,
Gen.	facilis,	facilis,	facilis,
Dat.	facili,	facili,	facili,
Acc.	facilem,	facilem,	facile,
Voc.	facilis,	facilis,	facile,
Abl.	facili,	facili,	facili.

PLURAL.

Nom.	faciles,	faciles,	facilia,
Gen.	facilium,	facilium,	facilium,
Dat.	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus,
Acc.	faciles (-is),	faciles (-is),	facilia,
Voc.	faciles,	faciles,	facilia,
Abl.	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	felix (<i>lucky</i>),	felix,	felix,
Gen.	felicis,	felicis,	felicis,
Dat.	felici,	felici,	felici,
Acc.	felicem,	felicem,	felix,
Voc.	felix,	felix,	felix,
Abl.	felici (-e),	felici (-e),	felici (-e).

PLURAL.

Nom.	felicēs,	felicēs,	felicia,
Gen.	felicium,	felicium,	felicium,
Dat.	felicibus,	felicibus,	felicibus,
Acc.	felicēs,	felicēs,	felicia,
Voc.	felicēs,	felicēs,	felicia,
Abl.	felicibus,	felicibus,	felicibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	prūdēns (<i>prudent</i>),	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
Gen.	prūdētis,	prūdētis,	prūdētis,
Dat.	prūdenti,	prūdenti,	prūdenti,
Acc.	prūdētem,	prūdētem,	prūdēns,
Voc.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
Abl.	prūdenti,	prūdenti,	prūdenti.

PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	prudentēs,	prudentēs,	prudentia,
Gen.	prudentium,	prudentium,	prudentium,
Dat.	prudentibus,	prudentibus,	prudentibus,
Acc.	prudentēs	prudentēs	prudentia,
Voc.	prudentēs,	prudentēs,	prudentia,
Abl.	prudentibus,	prudentibus,	prudentibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	acer (<i>sharp</i>),	ācris,	ācre,
Gen.	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
Dat.	ācri,	ācri,	ācri,
Acc.	ācrem,	ācrem,	ācre,
Voc.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Abl.	ācri,	ācri,	ācri.

PLURAL.

Nom.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Gen.	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
Dat.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Acc.	ācrēs (ācria),	ācrēs (ācria),	ācria,
Voc.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Abl.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus.

Irregular Adjectives.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius,	alia,	aliud,	alii,	aliae,	alia,
Gen.	alius,	alius,	alius,	aliōrum,	aliarum,	aliōrum,
Dat.	alii,	alii,	alii,	aliis,	aliis,	aliis,
Acc.	alium,	aliam,	aliud,	aliōs,	alias,	alia,
Abl.	aliō,	aliā,	aliō.	aliis,	aliis,	aliis.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum,	ūni,	ūnae,	ūna,
Gen.	ūnius,	ūnius,	ūnius,	ūnōrum,	ūnarum,	ūnōrum,
Dat.	ūni,	ūni,	ūni,	ūnis,	ūnis,	ūnis,
Acc.	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum,	ūnōs,	ūnas,	ūna,
Abl.	ūnō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	ūnis,	ūnis,	ūnis.

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	duo (<i>two</i>),	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mille,	milia,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium,	mille,	milium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus,	mille,	milibus,
Ac.	duōs (<i>duo</i>),	duās,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mille,	milia,
V.	duo,	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mille,	milia,
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	tribus,	tribus.	mille,	milibus.

Comparatives.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. altior,	altior,	altius,	N. altiorēs,	altiorēs,	altiora,
G. altioris,	altioris,	altioris,	G. altiorum,	altiorum,	altiorum,
D. altiori,	altiori,	altiori,	D. altioribus,	altioribus,	altioribus,
Ac. altiorem,	altiorem,	altius,	Ac. altiorēs,	altiorēs,	altiora,
V. altior,	altior,	altius,	V. altiorēs,	altiorēs,	altiora,
Ab. altiore,	altiore,	altiore.	Ab. altioribus,	altioribus,	altioribus.

Irregular Comparatives.

bonus (<i>good</i>),	melior,	optimus.
malus (<i>bad</i>),	pēior,	pessimus.
dives (<i>rich</i>),	dītior,	dītissimus.
multus (<i>much</i>),	plūs,	plūrimus.
māgnus (<i>great</i>),	māior,	māximus.
parvus (<i>small</i>),	minor,	minimus.
vetus (<i>old</i>),	vetustior,	veterrimus.

Numerals.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus,	prīmus, <i>first</i> .	singulī, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duo,	secundus,	bīnī.
3. trēs,	tertius,	ternī (trīnī).
4. quattuor,	quārtus,	quaternī.
5. quinque,	quīntus,	quīnī.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēnī.
7. septem,	septimus,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvus,	octōnī.
9. novem,	nōnus,	novēnī.
10. decem,	decimus,	dēnī.
11. undecim,	ūndecimus,	ūndēnī.
12. duodecim,	duodecimus,	duodēnī.
13. tredecim,	tertius decimus,	ternī dēnī.

14. quattuordecim,	quārtus decimus,	quaternī dēni.
15. quīndecim,	quīntus decimus,	quīni dēni.
16. sēdecim,	sextus decimus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendecim,	septimus decimus,	septēni dēni.
18. duodēviginti,	duodēvicēsimus,	duodēvicēni.
19. ūndēviginti,	ūndēvicēsimus,	ūndēvicēni.
20. viginti,	vicēsimus,	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnus, { ūnus et viginti,	vicēsimus primus,	vicēni singuli.
30. trīgintā,	tricēsimus,	tricēni.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsimus,	quadrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsimus,	quinquāgēni.
60. sexāgintā,	sexāgēsimus,	sexāgēni.
70. septuāgintā,	septuāgēsimus,	septuāgēni.
80. octōgintā,	octōgēsimus,	octōgēni.
90. nōnāgintā,	nōnāgēsimus,	nōnāgēni.
100. centum,	centēsimus,	centēni.
101. centum(et)ūnus,	centēsimus primus,	centēni(et)singuli.
200. ducentī, -ae, -a,	ducentēsimus,	ducentī.
300. trecentī,	trecentēsimus,	trecentī.
400. quadringentī,	quadringentēsimus,	quadringēni.
500. quingentī,	quingentēsimus,	quingēni.
600. sescentī,	sescentēsimus,	sescentī.
700. septingentī,	septingentēsimus,	septingēni.
800. octingentī,	octingentēsimus,	octingēni.
900. nōngentī,	nōngentēsimus,	nōngēni.
1,000. mille,	millēsimus,	millēni.
5,000. quīnque milia,	quīnquiēns millēsimus,	quīna milia.
10,000. decem milia,	deciēns millēsimus,	dēna milia.
100,000. centum milia,	centiēns millēsimus,	centēna milia.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns.

1st pers., <i>ego, I.</i>		2d, <i>tu, you.</i>		3d (Reflex.), <i>suī, himself.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom. ego,	nōs,	tū,	vōs,	—	—
Gen. mei,	nostrum (nostrī),	tui,	vestrum (vestrī), (vostrum, vestrī),	sui,	sui,
Dat. mihī,	nōbīs,	tibi,	vōbīs,	sibi,	sibi,
Acc. mē,	nōs,	tē,	vōs,	sē (sēsē),	sē (sēsē),
Abl. mē.	nōbīs.	tē.	vōbīs.	sē (sēsē).	sē (sēsē).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

hic, this.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic,	haec,	hōc,	hī,	hae,	haec,
Gen.	hūius,	hūius,	hūius,	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
Dat.	huīc,	huīc,	huīc,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,	hōs,	hās,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

iste, that.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	iste,	ista,	istud,	istī,	istae,	ista,
Gen.	istius,	istius,	istius,	istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
Dat.	istī,	istī,	istī,	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,
Acc.	istum,	istam,	istud,	istōs,	istās,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.

ille, that.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illī,	illae,	illa,
Gen.	illius,	illius,	illius,	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
Dat.	illī,	illī,	illī,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

is, that.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,	eī (īi),	eae,	ea,
Gen.	ēius,	ēius,	ēius,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
Dat.	eī,	eī,	eī,	eīs (īīs),	eīs (īīs),	eīs (īīs),
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eīs (īīs),	eīs (īīs),	eīs (īīs).

ipse, self.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsi,	ipsae,	ipsa,
Gen.	ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsorum,	ipsarum,	ipsorum,
Dat.	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
Acc.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipso,	ipsa,	ipso.	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

idem, the same.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	idem,	eadem,	idem,	eidem (iīdem),	eadem,	eadem,
G.	eiusdem,	eiusdem,	eiusdem,	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D.	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Ab.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem).

Relative Pronoun.

qui, who.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui,	quae,	quod,	qui,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Interrogative Pronoun.

quis, who?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis,	quid,	qui,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Interrogative Adjective.

quī, what ?

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quod,	quī,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Indefinite Pronouns.

aliquis, some.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid,	aliquī,	aliquae,	aliqua,
Gen.	alicūius,	alicūius,	alicūius,	aliquōrum,	aliquārum,	aliquōrum,
Dat.	alicui,	alicui,	alicui,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,
Acc.	aliquem,	aliquam,	aliquid,	aliquōs,	aliquās,	aliqua,
Abl.	aliquō,	aliquā,	aliquō.	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus.

Aliquī is used instead of **aliquis**, and **aliquod** instead of **aliquid**, as adjective forms.

quidam, a, a certain.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam,
Gen.	cūiusdam,	cūiusdam,	cūiusdam,
Dat.	cuidam,	cuidam,	cuidam,
Acc.	quendam,	quandam,	quiddam,
Abl.	quōdam,	quādam,	quōdam.

PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quidam,	quaedam,	quaedam,
Gen.	quōrundam,	quārundam,	quōrundam,
Dat.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam,
Acc.	quōsdam,	quāsdam,	quādam,
Abl.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam.

Quoddam is used instead of **quiddam** as an adjective.

VERBS.

First Conjugation. Stem in *ā*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS :

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
ACTIVE—	<i>amō,</i>	<i>amāre,</i>	<i>amāvī,</i>	<i>amātum (love).</i>
PASSIVE—	<i>amor,</i>	<i>amāri,</i>	<i>amātus sum.</i>	

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>amō,</i>	<i>amāmus,</i>
<i>amās,</i>	<i>amātis,</i>
<i>amat.</i>	<i>amant.</i>

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>amor,</i>	<i>amāmur,</i>
<i>amāris (-re),</i>	<i>amāmini,</i>
<i>amātur.</i>	<i>amantur.</i>

IMPERFECT.

IMPERFECT.

<i>amābam,</i>	<i>amābāmus,</i>
<i>amābās,</i>	<i>amābātis,</i>
<i>amābat.</i>	<i>amābant.</i>

<i>amābar,</i>	<i>amābāmur,</i>
<i>amābāris (-re),</i>	<i>amābāmini,</i>
<i>amābātur.</i>	<i>amābantur.</i>

FUTURE.

FUTURE.

<i>amābō,</i>	<i>amābimus,</i>
<i>amābis,</i>	<i>amābitis,</i>
<i>amābit.</i>	<i>amābunt.</i>

<i>amābor,</i>	<i>amābimur,</i>
<i>amāberis (-re),</i>	<i>amābimini,</i>
<i>amābitur.</i>	<i>amābuntur.</i>

PERFECT.

PERFECT.

<i>amāvī,</i>	<i>amāvimus,</i>
<i>amāvistī,</i>	<i>amāvistis,</i>
<i>amāvit.</i>	<i>amāverunt</i> (<i>amāvère</i>).

<i>amātus sum,</i>	<i>amāti sumus,</i>
<i>amātus es,</i>	<i>amāti estis,</i>
<i>amātus est.</i>	<i>amāti sunt.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>amāveram,</i>	<i>amāverāmus,</i>
<i>amāverās,</i>	<i>amāverātis,</i>
<i>amāverat.</i>	<i>amāverant.</i>

<i>amātus eram,</i>	<i>amāti erāmus,</i>
<i>amātus erās,</i>	<i>amāti erātis,</i>
<i>amātus erat.</i>	<i>amāti erant.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>amāverō,</i>	<i>amāverimus,</i>
<i>amāveris,</i>	<i>amāveritis,</i>
<i>amāverit.</i>	<i>amāverint.</i>

<i>amātus erō,</i>	<i>amāti erimus,</i>
<i>amātus eris,</i>	<i>amāti eritis,</i>
<i>amātus erit.</i>	<i>amāti erunt.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amem,	amēmus,
amēs,	amētis,
amet.	ament.

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	amārēmus,
amārēs,	amārētis,
amāret.	amārent.

PERFECT.

amāverim,	amāverimus,
amāveris,	amāveritis,
amāverit.	amāverint.

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem,	amāvissēmus,
amāvissēs,	amāvissētis,
amāvisset.	amāvissent.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer,	amēmur,
amēris (-re),	amēmini,
amētur.	amentur.

IMPERFECT.

amārer,	amārēmur,
amārēris (-re),	amārēmini,
amārētur.	amārentur.

PERFECT.

amātus sim,	amāti simus,
amātus sis,	amāti sitis,
amātus sit.	amāti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

amātus essem,	amāti essemus,
amātus essēs,	amāti essētis,
amātus esset.	amāti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

amā.	amāte.
------	--------

FUTURE.

amātō,	amātōte,
amātō.	amantō.

PRESENT.

amāre.	amāmini.
--------	----------

FUTURE.

amātor,	
amātor.	amantor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. amāre.
PERF. amāvisse.
FUT. amātūrum [esse].

PRES. amāri.
PERF. amātum esse.
FUT. amātum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns.
FUT. amātūrus.

PERF. amātus.
GERUNDIVE. amandus

GERUND
(verbal noun).

SUPINE.

GEN. amandī,	
DAT. amandō,	
ACC. amandum,	ACC. amātum,
ABL. amandō.	ABL. amātū.

Second Conjugation. Stem in *ē*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — *moneō, monēre, monui, monitum* (*warn*).PASSIVE — *moneor, monēri, monitus sum*.

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT.				PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.			SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneō,	monēmus,			moneor,	monēmur,
monēs,	monētis,			monēris (-re),	monēmini,
monet.	monent.			monētur.	monentur.
IMPERFECT.				IMPERFECT.	
monēbam, &c.				monēbar, &c.	
FUTURE.				FUTURE.	
monēbō, &c.				monēbor, &c.	
PERFECT.				PERFECT.	
monui,	monuimus,			monitus sum, &c.	
monuisti,	monuistis,				
monuit.	monuērunt (monuēre).				
PLUPERFECT.				PLUPERFECT.	
monueram, &c.				monitus eram, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.				FUTURE PERFECT.	
monuerō, &c.				monitus erō, &c.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.					
PRESENT.				PRESENT.	
moneam,	monēmus,			monear,	monēmur,
monēs,	monētis,			monēris (-re),	monēmini,
moneat.	moneant.			monētur.	moneantur.
IMPERFECT.				IMPERFECT.	
monērem, &c.				monērer, &c.	
PERFECT.				PERFECT.	
monuerim, &c.				monitus sim, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.				PLUPERFECT.	
monuissem, &c.				monitus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. monē.	monēte.	PRES. monēre.	monēmini.
FUT. monētō,	monētōte,	FUT. monētor,	
monētō.	monentō.	monētor.	monentor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. monēre.	PRES. monēri.
PERF. monuisse.	PERF. monitum esse.
FUT. monitūrum [esse].	FUT. monitum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns.	PERF. monitus.
FUT. monitūrus.	GERUNDIVE. monendus.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. monendī,	
DAT. monendō,	
ACC. monendum,	ACC. monitum.
ABL. monendō.	ABL. monitū.

Third Conjugation. Stem in *e*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — *emō, emere, emī, emptum (buy)*.
 PASSIVE — *emor, emī, emptus sum*.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>emō,</i>	<i>emimus,</i>	<i>emor,</i>	<i>emimur,</i>
<i>emis,</i>	<i>emitis,</i>	<i>emeris (-re),</i>	<i>emimini,</i>
<i>emit.</i>	<i>emunt.</i>	<i>emitur.</i>	<i>emuntur.</i>

IMPERFECT.

IMPERFECT.

*emēbam, &c.**emēbar, &c.*

FUTURE.

FUTURE.

<i>emam,</i>	<i>emēmus,</i>	<i>emar,</i>	<i>emēmur,</i>
<i>emēs,</i>	<i>emētis,</i>	<i>emeris (-re),</i>	<i>emēmini,</i>
<i>emet.</i>	<i>ement.</i>	<i>emētur.</i>	<i>ementur.</i>

PERFECT.

PERFECT.

<i>emī,</i>	<i>ēmimus,</i>	<i>emptus sum, &c.</i>
<i>ēmistī,</i>	<i>ēmistis,</i>	
<i>ēmit,</i>	<i>ēmērunt (ēmāre).</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

ēmeram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ēmerō, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

ēptus eram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ēptus erō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

emam,	emāmus,
emās,	emātis,
emat.	emant.

IMPERFECT.

emerem, &c.

PERFECT.

ēmerim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

ēmissem, &c.

PRESENT.

emar,	emāmur,
emāris (-re),	emāmini,
emātur.	emantur.

IMPERFECT.

emerer, &c.

PERFECT.

ēptus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

ēptus essem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. eme.	emite.
FUT. emitō,	emitōte,
emitō.	emuntō.

PRES. emere.	emimini.
FUT. emitōr,	
emitōr.	emuntōr.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. emere.
PERF. ēmisso.
FUT. ēptūrum [esse].

PRES. emi.
PERF. ēptum esse.
FUT. ēptum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. emēns.
FUT. ēptūrus.

PERF. ēptus.
GERUNDIVE. emendus.

GERUND.

GEN. emendi,	
DAT. emendō,	
ACC. emendum,	Acc. ēptum,
ABL. emendō.	ABL. ēptū.

SUPINE.

Third Conjugation.—*Continued.*PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — *capiō, capere, cēpi, captum (take).*PASSIVE—*capior, capi, captus sum.*

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.	
PRESENT.			PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō,	capimus,		capior,	capimur,
capis,	capitis,		caperis (-re),	capimini,
capit.	capiunt.		capitur.	capiuntur.
IMPERFECT.			IMPERFECT.	
capiebam, &c.			capiebar, &c.	
FUTURE.			FUTURE.	
capiam,	capiemus,		capiar,	capiamur,
capies,	capietis,		capieris (-re),	capiemini,
capiet.	capient.		capietur.	capientur.
PERFECT.			PERFECT.	
cēpi, &c.			captus sum, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.	
cēperam, &c.			captus eram, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēperō, &c.			captus erō, &c.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
PRESENT.			PRESENT.	
capiam,	capiamus,		capiar,	capiamur,
capias,	capiatis,		capiaris (-re),	capiamini,
capiat.	capiant.		capiantur.	capiantur.
IMPERFECT.			IMPERFECT.	
caperem, &c.			caperer, &c.	
PERFECT.			PERFECT.	
cēperim, etc.			captus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissem, &c.			captus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape.	capite.	PRES. capere.	capimini.
FUT. capitā,	capitōte,	FUT. capitar,	
capitō.	capiantā.	capitor.	capiantur.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. capere.	PRES. capi.
PERF. cēpisse.	PERF. captum esse.
FUT. captūrum [esse].	FUT. captum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns.	PERF. captus.
FUT. captūrus.	GERUNDIVE. capiendus.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. capiendī,	
DAT. capiendō,	
ACC. capiendum,	ACC. captum,
ABL. capiendō.	ABL. captū.

Fourth Conjugation.—Stem in ī.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — audiō, audire, audīvi, auditum (*hear*).

PASSIVE—audior, audīri, auditus sum.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō,	audimus,	audior,	audimur,
audis,	auditis,	audīris (-re),	audīmini,
audit.	audiunt.	audītur.	audiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

IMPERFECT.

audisbam, &c.

audisbar, &c.

FUTURE.

FUTURE.

audiam,	audiemus,	audiar,	audiemur,
audies,	audietis,	audieris (-re),	audiemini,
audiet.	audiant.	audietur.	audientur.

PERFECT.

audivī, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

audiveram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

audiverō, &c.

PERFECT.

auditus sum, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

auditus eram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

auditus erō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audiam,

audiamus,

audiās,

audiātis,

audiat.

audiant.

IMPERFECT.

audirem, &c.

PERFECT.

audiverim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

audivissem, &c.

PRESENT.

audiar,

audiamur,

audiāris (-re),

audiāmini,

audiātur.

audiantur.

IMPERFECT.

audirer, &c.

PERFECT.

auditus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

auditus essem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audī.

audite.

PRES. audire.

audimini.

FUT. auditō,

auditōte,

FUT. auditor,

auditō.

audiantō.

auditor.

audiantor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. audire.

PRES. audiri.

PERF. audivisse.

PERF. auditum esse.

FUT. auditūrum [esse].

FUT. auditum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns.

PERF. auditus.

FUT. auditūrus.

GERUNDIVE. audiendus.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. audiendī,

DAT. audiendō,

ACC. audiendum,

ABL. audiendō.

ACC. auditum,

ABL. auditū.

Irregular Verbs: SUM, POSSUM, PRŌSUM, FERŌ, EŌ, ADEOR, VOLŌ,
NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ, FĪŌ.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : sum, esse, fui (be).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum,	sumus,	sim,	simus,
es,	estis,	sis,	sitis,
est.	sunt.	sit.	sint.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
eram,	erāmus,	essem,	essēmus,
erās,	erātis,	essēs,	essētis,
erat.	erant.	esset.	essent.
FUTURE.			
erō,	erimus,		
eris,	eritis,		
erit.	erunt.		
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
fui,	fuiinus,	fuerim,	fuerimus,
fuiisti,	fuiistis,	fueris,	fueritis,
fuit.	fuerunt (-re).	fuerit.	fuerint.
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fueraim,	fuerāmus,	fuissem,	fuiasēmus,
fuerās,	fuerātis,	fuiasēs,	fuiasētis,
fuerat.	fuerant.	fuiasset.	fuiasent.
FUTURE PERFECT.			
fuerō,	fuerimus,		
fueris,	fueritis,		
fuerit.	fuerint.		
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVES.	
PRES. es.	esto.	PRES. esse.	
FUT. estō,	estōte,	PERF. fuisse.	
	estō.	FUT. futurum esse.	
	suntō.		

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. futurus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *possum, posse, potui (be able).*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

possum,	possumus,
potes,	potestis,
potest.	possunt.

IMPERFECT.

poteram,	poterāmus,
poterās,	poterātis,
poterat.	poterant.

FUTURE.

poterō,	poterimus,
poteris,	poteritis,
poterit.	poterunt.

PERFECT.

potuī, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

potueram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō, &c.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. posse.

PERF. potuisse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

possim,	possimus,
possis,	possitis,
possit.	possint.

IMPERFECT.

possem,	possēmus,
possēs,	possētis,
posset.	possent.

PERFECT.

potuerim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

potuissem, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. potēns.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui (help).*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

prōsum,	prōsumus,
prōdes,	prōdestis,
prōdest.	prōsunt.

IMPERFECT.

prōderam, &c.

FUTURE.

prōderō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

prōsim,	prōsimus,
prōsis,	prōsitis,
prōsit.	prōsint.

IMPERFECT.

prōdessem, &c.

PERFECT.

pröfui, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

pröfueram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

pröfuerō, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prödes. prödeste.
 FUT. prödestō, prödestōte,
 prödestō. prösuntō.

PERFECT.

pröfuerim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

pröfuissem, &c.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. prödesse.
 PERF. pröfuisse.
 FUT. pröfutūrum esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. pröfutūrus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (*bear*).

PASSIVE—feror, ferri, lātus sum.

ACTIVE.

PRESENT.

ferō, ferimus,
 fers, fertis,
 fert. ferunt.

INDICATIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

feror, ferimur,
 ferri, ferimini,
 fertur. feruntur.

IMPERFECT.

ferēbam, &c.

IMPERFECT.

ferēbar, &c.

FUTURE.

feram, &c.

FUTURE.

ferar, &c.

PERFECT.

tuli, &c.

PERFECT.

lātus sum, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

tuleraam, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

lātus eram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

tulerō, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT

lātus erō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
feram, &c.		ferar, &c.	
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
ferreim,	ferrēmus,	ferrer,	ferrēmur,
ferrēs,	errētis,	ferrēris (-re),	ferrēmini,
ferret.	ferrent.	ferrētur.	ferrentur.
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
tulerim, &c.		lātus sim, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
tulissem, &c.		lātus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. fer.	forte.	PRES. ferre.	ferimini.
FUT. fertō,	fertōte,	FUT. fertor,	
fertō.	feruntō.	fertor.	feruntor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. ferre.	PRES. ferri.
PERF. tulisse.	PERF. lātum esse.
FUT. lātūrum esse.	FUT. lātum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. ferēns.	PERF. lātus.
FUT. lātūrus.	GERUNDIVE. ferendus.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. ferendī,	
DAT. ferendō,	
ACC. ferendum,	ACC. lātum,
ABL. ferendō.	ABL. lātū.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum (go).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRESENT.

eō,	imus,
is,	itis,
it.	eunt.

eam, etc.

IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
ibam, &c.		irem, &c.	
FUTURE.			
ibō, &c.			
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
ivi (it), &c.		iverim (ierim), &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
iveram (ieram), &c.		ivissem (issem), &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
iverō (ierō), &c.			
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVES.	
PRES. I.	ite.	PRES. ire.	
FUT. itō,	itōte,	PERF. ivisse.	
itō.	euntō.	FUT. itūrum esse.	
GERUND.		PARTICIPLES.	
GEN. eundī,		PRES. iēns, GEN. euntis.	
DAT. eundō,		FUT. itūrus.	
ACC. eundum,	Acc. itum,		
ABL. eundō.	ABL. itū.		

The passive of *eo* occurs only in composition, except in the third person. The forms in composition are as follows :

PASSIVE OF *adeo*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *adeor, adiri, aditus sum* (*be approached*).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
adeor,	adimur,	adear, &c.	
adiris,	adimini,		
adītur.	adeuntur.		
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
adībar, &c.		adīrer, &c.	

FUTURE.

adibor, &c.

PERFECT.

aditus sum, &c.

PERFECT.

aditus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

aditus eram, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

aditus essem, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

aditus erō, &c.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. adiri.

PERF. aditum esse.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. aditus.

FUT. adeundus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { volō, velle, volui (*wish*).
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlui (*be unwilling*).
 mālō, mālle, mālui (*prefer*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

volō, volumus,
 vis, vultis,
 vult. volunt.

IMPERFECT.

volēbam, &c.

FUTURE.

volam, &c.

PERFECT.

volui, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

volueram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

voluerō, &c.

PRESENT.

nōlō, nōlumus,
 nōn vis, nōn vultis,
 nōn vult. nōlunt.

IMPERFECT.

nōlēbam, &c.

FUTURE.

nōlam, &c.

PERFECT.

nōlui, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

nōlueram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

nōluerō, &c.

PRESENT.

mālō, mālumus,
 māvīs, māvultis,
 māvult. mālunt.

IMPERFECT.

mālēbam, &c.

FUTURE.

mālam, &c.

PERFECT.

mālui, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

mālueram, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

māluerō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
velim, velimus, velis, velitis, velit. velint.	nōlim, nōlimus, nōlis, nōlitis, nōlit. nōlint.	mālim, mālimus, mālis, mālitis, mālit. mālint.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
vellem, vellēmus, vellēs, vellētis, vellet. vellent.	nōllem, nōllēmus, nōllēs, nōllētis, nōllet. nōllent.	māllem, māllēmus, māllēs, māllētis, māllet. māllent.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
voluerim, &c.	nōluerim, &c.	māluerim, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
voluissē, &c.	nōluissem, &c.	māluissem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. nōli, nōlite.
FUT. nōlitō, nōlitōte. nōlitō. nōluntō.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. velle.	PRES. nōlle.	PRES. mālle.
PERF. voluisse.	PERF. nōluisse.	PERF. māluisse.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. volēns.	PRES. nōlēns.
---------------	---------------

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *fiō, fieri, factus sum* (*be made, become*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	
fiō,	(fimus,)
fis,	(fitis,)
fit.	fiunt.

IMPERFECT.

fiēbam, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
fiam,	fiāmus,
fiās,	fiātis,
fiat.	fiant.

IMPERFECT.

fierem, fierēmus,
fierēs, fierētis,
fieret. fierent.

FUTURE.

fiam,	fiēmus,
fies,	fiētis,
fiet,	fient.

PERFECT.

factus sum, &c.

PERFECT.

factus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

factus eram, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

factus essem, &c.

FUTURE.

factus erō, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. fi.	fi	fi
FUT. fi	fi	fi
	fi	fi

INFINITIVES.

PRES. fieri.
PERF. factum esse.
FUT. factum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. factus.

GERUNDIVE. faciendus.

Deponent Verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS :	1st Conj.	hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum (<i>urge</i>).
	2d Conj.	vereor, verēri, veritus sum (<i>fear</i>).
	3d Conj.	loquor, loqui, locūtus sum (<i>speak</i>).
	4th Conj.	mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum (<i>lie</i>).

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	hortor,	vereor,	loquor,	mentior,
	hortāris (-re),	verēris (-re),	loqueris (-re),	mentiris (-re),
	hortātur.	verētur.	loquitur.	mentitur.
	hortāmur,	verēmur,	loquimur,	mentimur,
	hortāmini,	verēmini,	loquimini,	mentimini,
	hortantur.	verentur.	loquantur.	mentiuntur.
IMPF.	hortābar.	verēbar.	loquēbar.	mentiēbar.
FUT.	hortābor.	verēbor.	loquar.	mentiar.
PERF.	hortātus sum.	veritus sum.	locūtus sum.	mentitus sum.
PLUPF.	hortātus eram.	veritus eram.	locūtus eram.	mentitus eram.
FUT. Pr.	hortātus erō.	veritus erō.	locūtus erō.	mentitus erō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	horter.	verear.	loquar.	mentiar.
IMPF.	hortārer.	verērer.	loquerer.	mentīrer.
PERF.	hortātus sim.	veritus sim.	locūtus sim.	mentītus sim.
PLUPF.	hortātus essem.	veritus essem.	locūtus essem.	mentītus essem.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	hortāre.	verēre.	loquere.	mentīre.
FUT.	hortātor.	verētor.	loquitur.	mentītor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	hortārī.	verērī.	loquī.	mentīrī.
PERF.	hortātum esse.	veritum esse.	locūtum esse.	mentītum esse.
FUT.	hortātūrum	veritūrum	locūtūrum	mentītūrum
	[esse].	[esse].	[esse].	[esse].

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	hortāns.	verēns.	loquēns.	mentīēns.
PERF.	hortātus.	veritus.	locūtus.	mentītus.
FUT.	hortātūrus.	veritūrus.	locūtūrus.	mentītūrus
GERUN- DIVE.	{hortandus.	verendus.	loquendus.	mentiendus

GERUND.

GEN.	hortandi.	verendi.	loquendi.	mentiendi.
------	-----------	----------	-----------	------------

SUPINE.

ACC.	hortātum.	veritum.	locūtum.	mentītum.
------	-----------	----------	----------	-----------

VOCABULARY.

LATIN-ENGLISH.

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl. [cf. Eng. *of, off*] originally implying separation, *from away, from, out of*; agency, *by*; time, *since, after*; direction or place, *from, at, on, in*; **ā dextrō** (*ministrō*) *cornū*, *on the right (left) wing*; **ā novissimō** *āgmine*, *in the rear*.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr. *hide*.

abdūcō [*ab, off + dūcō, lead*], -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr. *lead away, lead off, ABDUCT*.

aberrō [*ab, off + errō, wander*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *wander off, go astray*.

abiciō [*ab, off + iaciō, throw*], -icere, -ici, -iectum, v. tr. *throw off, throw away, cast off*.

ablātus, perf. part. pass. of *auferō*.

absoldō [*abs, off + caedō, cut*], -ere, -oldī, -cisum, v. tr. *cut off*.

absēns, -tis, adj. [part. of *absum*] *absent*.

absolvō [*ab, off, from + solvō, loose*], -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, v. tr. *free from, clear, acquit, ABSOLVE*.

abstineō [*abs, off, from + teneō, hold*], -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr. *keep back, hold off; refrain from, ABSTAIN*.

absum [*ab, off, from + sum, am*], -esse, -fui, -futurus, v. intr. with abl. *be away, be distant, BE ABSENT*: **proximē absum**, *am nearest*.

abūtor [*ab, off, from + ūtor, use*], -ūti, -ūsus sum, dep. v. with abl. *misuse, abuse*.

ac, conj. See *atque*.

Acca, -ae, f. *Acca Larentia*, wife of Faustulus and foster-mother of Romulus and Remus.

accēdō [*ad, to + cēdō, go away*], -cēdere, -cēssi, -cēssurus, v. intr. *go to, approach*.

accidō [*ad, to + cadō, fall*], -cidere, -cidi, —, v. intr. *fall upon, come to pass, happen*.

accingō [*ad, to + cingō, gird*], -ere, -nxi, -netum, v. tr. *gird on, bind on*.

accipiō [*ad, to + capiō, take*], -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *receive, accept*.

accommodō [*ad, to + commodō, fit*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *fit to, adapt, apply*.

accurrō [*ad, to + currō, run*], -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, v. intr. *run to, hasten up to*.

accūsō [*ad, to + causa, cause*, originally = *ad causam prōvocāre*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *call to account, accuse*.

acer, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj. [*√ AC-*, *sharp*] *sharp, keen, eager, active*; comp. **ācrior**, superl. **ācerrimus**.

aciēs, **ei**, f. [*√ AC-*, *sharp*] *edge; line of battle*.

acriter, adv. [**acer**, *sharp*] *sharply, keenly, eagerly, fiercely*; comp. **ācrius**, superl. **ācerrimē**.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *acuō*, *sharpen*] *sharpened, sharp, keen, ACUTE*.

ad, prep. with accus. usually denoting motion, *to, towards*; place, *near, at*; purpose with gerund and gerundive, *for, for the purpose of, in order to*.

addō [*ad, to + dō, give*], -dere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. *add*.

addūcō [*ad, to + dūcō, lead*], -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr. *lead on, induce, influence*.

adductus [part. of *addūcō*, *lead on*], *led on, induced, influenced*.

- adeo**, adv. [ad, to + eo, that point, thither] to this, so far, so, so much, so very, to such a degree.
- adeo** [ad, to + eo, go], -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, v. intr. go to, approach, enter upon.
- aderō** [ad, to + ferō, bring], -ferre, attuli, adlātum or allātum, v. tr. bear to, bring to, report.
- afficiō** [ad, to + faciō, make], -ere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr. affect, treat, afflict.
- affinis**, -is, m. and f. [ad, near + finis, end] relation by marriage.
- affirmō** [ad, to + firmō, strengthen], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. strengthen, AFFIRM.
- adhibeo** [ad, to + habeo, hold], -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum, v. tr. hold to, bring to, apply, employ, consult.
- adhortātiō**, -ōnis, f. [adhortor, exhort] exhortation, encouragement.
- adligō** [ad, to + ligō, bind], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. bind to.
- administrō** [ad, to + ministrō, tend], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. direct, rule, manage, control, ADMINISTER.
- admirātiō**, -ōnis, f. [admiror, admire] admiration.
- admiror** [ad, at + miror, wonder], -ari, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. regard with wonder, wonder at, ADMIRE.
- admoveō** [ad, up to + moveō, move], -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr. move up to, move to, bring near.
- adolēscō** [ad, up + olēscō, grow], -olēscere, -olēvi, -olētum, v. intr. grow up, come to maturity.
- adripiō** [ad, at + rapiō, snatch], -ere, -ripui, -reptum, v. tr. snatch at, seize, grasp.
- adsidē** [ad, upon + sidē, sit], -ere, -sēdi, —, v. intr. sit upon, sit down.
- adsurgō** [ad, up + surgō, rise], -ere, -surrexi, -surrectum, v. intr. rise up, rise.
- adsum** [ad, at, near + sum, am], -esse, adfui or affui, adfuturus or affutu-
- rus**, v. intr. with dat. be here, be present.
- adolēscēns**, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscō, grow up] youth, young person.
- adultus**, -a, -um [part. of adolēscō, grow up], grown up, grown, ADULT.
- advertō** [Intens. of adveniō], -āre, —, —, v. intr. advance, approach.
- adventus**, -us, m. [adveniō, arrive] approach, arrival, ADVENT.
- adversarius**, -i, m. [adversus, adverse] enemy, adversary.
- adversum**. See adversus.
- adversus**, -a, -um [part. of advertō, turn towards], turned towards, in front, unfavorable, ADVERSE.
- adversus** and **adversum**, prep. with accus. [ad, towards + vertō, turn] towards, opposite to, against.
- aedēs**, -is, f. temple.
- aedificō** [aedēs, temple + faciō, make], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. build, EDIFY.
- Aedilis**, -is, m. AEDILE.
- Aedui**, -i, m. an Aeduan, a member of a Gallic tribe.
- aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, adj. ill, sick, feeble, weak.
- aegrē**, adv. painfully, unwillingly.
- aegritūdō**, -inis, f. [aeger, sick] sickness, vexation.
- Aegyptus**, -i, f. EGYPT.
- aemulātiō**, -ōnis, f. [aemulor, rival] rivalry, emulation.
- aequalis**, -is, m. and f. [aequus, equal] contemporary, comrade.
- aequor**, -oris, n. [aequus, level] a level surface, the sea.
- aerarium**, -i, n. [aerarius, of copper] the part of the temple of Saturn at Rome in which the public treasure was kept; the treasury.
- aes**, **aeris**, n. copper, money; **aes ali-** num, debt.
- aestas**, -ātis, f. summer.
- aetās**, -ātis, f. [for aevitās from aevum, age] time of life, age.

afferō, see **adferō**.

affirmō, see **adfirmō**.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Libya*, the country of the Carthaginians; sometimes **AFRICA**, referring to the whole continent.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj. [**Āfrica**, *Africa*] *African*.

ager, **agri**, m. [cf. Eng. *acre*] *field, territory*.

agger, **aggeris**, m. *mound, wall, rampart*.

aggredior [ad, to + **gradior**, go], -i, **aggressus** sum, v. tr. *approach, advance; attack*.

agitō [freq. of **agō**, drive], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *drive, chase, shake*, AGITATE.

agmen, -inis, n. [**agō**, drive] *that which is driven; army on the march, column*.

agnōscō [ad, to oneself + **gnōscō**, get *know* edge of], -ere, -ōvi, -itum, v. tr. *recognize*.

agō, **agere**, **ēgi**, **āctum**, v. tr. *drive, lead, do, pass*, ACT: **āctum est**, it is all over with, all is lost.

agricola, -ae, m. [**ager**, *field* + **colō**, till] *farmer*.

ala, -ae, f. *wing*.

Alba, -ae, f. [**albus**, white] *Alba*, or *Alba Longa*, the long white city, the name of an ancient city in Latium.

Albānus, -i, m. [**Alba**] *an Alban*, a citizen of *Alba Longa*.

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white*.

ālea, -ae, f. *a game with dice; die*.

Alexander, -ri, m. *Alexander the Great*, King of *Macedon*.

aliās, adv. [**alius**, another] *at another time, at some other time*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [**alius**, another] *another's, of another*. See **aes**.

aliquandīū, adv. *for awhile*.

aliquandō, adv. *at some time, finally*.

aliqui, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, indef. pron.

adj. [✓ **ALI**, some or other + **qui**, who] *some, any*.

aliquis, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, indef. pron. [✓ **ALI**, some or other + **qui**, who] *someone, anyone*.

aliquot, indef. num. adj. *some, several*.

aliquoties, adv. *several times*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. [✓ **ALI**, other] *another, other; alius... alius, one... another*.

Allobrogēs, -um, m. *the Allobroges*, a Celtic tribe in Gaul.

ālō [✓ **AL**, feed], **alere**, **ālui**, **altum** or **alitum**, v. tr. *feed, support, nourish*.

Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps*.

alter, -tera, -terum, pron. adj. [✓ **AL** or **ALI**, other] *the other (of two), the second; alter... alter, the one... the other*.

altitudō, -inis, f. [**altus**, high] *height, depth*, ALTITUDE.

altum, -i, n. [**altus**, high, deep] *the deep sea; deep*.

altus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **ālō**, feed] *nourished; high, lofty, deep*.

alveus, -i, m. *hollow, cavity, boat*.

ambitiō, -ōnis, f. [**ambiō**, go around] *ambition*.

ambulō [**am** (**ambi**-) *about* + ✓ **BA**, go], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *go about, take a walk, walk*.

amicitia, -ae, f. [**amicus**, friend] *friendship, alliance*.

amicus, -i, m. [**amō**, love] *loved one, friend*.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [**amō**, love] *loving, kind, friendly*.

āmittō [**ā**, from + **mittō**, send], -mittere, -misi, -misum, v. tr. *send away, let go; lose*.

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *love, be fond of*.

amor, -ōris, m. [**amō**, love] *love*.

ampliō [**amplius**, more], -āre, **ēvi**, -ētum, v. tr. *widen, enlarge, extend*.

amplius, adv. also indecl. subst. and adj.

- [comp. of *amplus*, *large*, and *amplē*, *largely*] *more, further, longer, more than.*
- Amūlius**, -ī, m. *Amulius*, son of Proca, King of Alba, and uncle of Romulus and Remus, whom he tried to murder.
- ancilla**, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*
- angor**, -ōris, m. *anguish, strangling.*
- angustia**, -ae, f. sing. rare, usually pl. *angustiae*, -arum, f. [*angustus*, *narrow*] *narrowness, difficulty.*
- angustus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. *angō*, *throatle*] *narrow.*
- anima**, -ae, f. [√ AN-, *breathe*] *air, breath, life.*
- animadvertō** [*animus*, *attention* + *ad-vertō*, *turn*], -ere, -ī, -versum, v. tr. and intr. *give attention to, attend to, consider, observe; punish.*
- animal**, -alis, n. [*anima*, *breath*] *living being, animal.*
- animus**, -ī, m. [√ AN-, *breathe*] *intellect, mind, attention.*
- annōna**, -ae, f. [*annus*, *year*] *a year's produce.*
- annus**, -ī, m. *year.*
- ante**, prep. with acc. *before.*
- antē**, adv. [*ante*, *before* + *ea*, *these things*] *before, formerly.*
- anteeō** [*ante*, *before* + *eō*, *go*], -īre, -īvi or -īi, —, v. intr. *go before, precede.*
- Antiochus**, -ī, m. *Antiochus*, a Greek philosopher and teacher.
- antiquus**, -a, -um, adj. [*ante*, *before*] *old, ancient, antique.*
- Antonius**, -ī, m. *Marcus Antonius*, member of second triumvirate: *Caius Antonius Hybrida*, Cicero's colleague in his consulship.
- anulus**, -ī, m. *ring.*
- anxius**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. *angō*, *throatle*] *troubled, ANXIOUS.*
- aper**, *apri*, m. *wild-boar.*
- aperiō**, -īre, -erui, -ertum, v. tr. *open, show, make known.*
- appellō** [*ad*, *to* + *pellō*, *drive*], -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr. *address, call by name, call, name, APPEAL.*
- Appenninus**, -a, -um, adj. [sc. *mōna*] *the Apennines.*
- apprehendō** [*ad*, *at* + *-prehendō*, *catch*], -ere, -ndi, -nsum, v. tr. *catch at, seize.*
- appropinquō** [*ad*, *to* + *propinquō*, *draw near*], -āre, -āvi, -atum, v. tr. *draw near to, approach, come near.*
- aptus**, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable, fitted.*
- apud**, prep. with acc. *with, by, near, among, before, in the presence of, at the house of; in the works of.*
- aqua**, -ae, f. *water.*
- aquilifer**, -feri, m. [*aquila*, *eagle* + √ FER-, *carry*] *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.*
- Aquitānus**, -ī, m. *an Aquitanian*, an inhabitant of Aquitania in Gaul.
- ara**, -ae, f. *altar.*
- arātrum**, -ī, n. [*arō*, *plough*] *a plough.*
- arbitrium**, -ī, n. [*arbitror*, *judge*] *judgment, wish, will.*
- arbitror** [*arbitror*, *a judge*], -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *judge, believe, think.*
- arbor**, -oris, f. *tree.*
- arceō** [√ ARC-, *make secure*], -āre, -ui, —, v. tr. *shut up; keep off.*
- arcessitus**, -a, -um [part. of *arcessō*, *summon*], *invited, summoned.*
- arcessō** [intens. of *accedō*, *approach*], -ere, -ivi, -itum, v. tr. *cause to come, call, summon, invite.*
- arcus**, -ūs, m. *bow.*
- arduus**, -a, -um, adj. *sleep, hard, difficult, ARDUOUS.*
- Ariovistus**, -ī, m. *Ariovistus*, king of the Suebi.
- Aristidēs**, -īs, m. [Ἀριστοίδης] *Aristides*, an Athenian general and statesman, who was called *the Just* on account of his integrity.
- arma**, -arum, n. pl. [*armō*, *arm*] *ARMS.*
- armātus**, -a, -um [part. of *armō*, *arm*], *armed, in arms.*

Armenia, -ae, f. *Armenta*.

armilla, -ae, f. [cf. *armus*, *shoulder*] *bracelet, armlet*.

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *plough*.

Arpinum, -ī, n. *Arpinum*, a city about fifty miles S. E. of Rome.

arrogantia, -ae, f. [*adrogāns*, *assuming*] *ARROGANCE*, insolence, pride.

ars, **artis**, f. [1 √ *AR*-, *fl*] *practical skill*, *ART*; *knowledge*, *stratagem*.

arx, **arceis**, f. [*arceō*, *shut in*] *castle*, *citadel*, *fortress*.

asinus, -ī, m. *ass*, *beast of burden*.

asper, -era, -erum, adj. [*ab*, *without* + *spēs*, *hope*] *without hope*; *hostile*, *cruel*, *rough*.

aspērnor [*ab*, *from* + *spērnor*, *remove*], -ārī, ātus sum, v. dep. tr. *reject*, *despise*.

asylum, -ī, n. [Gr. *ἀσυλον*, *place of refuge*] *place of refuge*, *ASYLUM*.

at, adverb. conj. *but*; cf. *sed*, *autem*.

āter, **ātra**, ātrum, adj. *black*.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. [Gr. *Ἀθήναι*] *Athens*, chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece.

Athēniensis, -is, m. and f. [*Athēnae*] *an Athenian*.

atque, *coörd.* conj. [*ad*, *in addition to* + *que*, *and*] (used before vowels and consonants, *q̄* only before consonants) *and*, *and also*, *and moreover*.

atrociter, adv. [*atrōx*, *cruel*] *savagely*, *fiercely*, *cruelly*.

atrōx, gen. -ōis, adj. *savage*, *fierce*, *cruel*.

auctoritās, -ātis, f. [*auctor*, *author*] *power*, *AUTHORITY*.

audācia, -ae, f. [*audāx*, *bold*] *daring*, *boldness*, *AUDACITY*.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [*audēō*, *dare*] *daring*, *bold*, *AUDACIOUS*.

audēō [for *avideō*, from √ 1 *AV*-, *desire*], -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. tr. v. *venture*, *dare*.

audiō [2 √ *AV*-, *notice*], -īre, -īvi, -itum, v. tr. *hear*.

auferō [*abs*, *away* + *ferō*, *bear*], **auferre**, **abstulī**, **ablātum**, v. tr. *take away*, *carry away*, *bear off*, *remove*.

augeō [∇ *AUG*-, *increase*], -ēre, **auxī**, **auctum**, v. tr. *increase*, *spread*, *augment*.

augurium, -ī, n. [*augur*, *augur*] *observance of omens*, *divination*, *AUGURY*.

Augustus, -ī, m. [*augustus*, *consecrated*] *Augustus*, the cognomen given to Octavius Caesar after he became emperor.

augustus, -a, -um, adj. [*augeō*, *increase*] *increased*; *consecrated*, *majestic*, *AUGUST*.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [*aurum*, *gold*] *of gold*, *golden*.

auspiciū, -ī, n. [*auspex*, *augur*, from *avis*, *bird* + ∇ *SPEC*-, *see*] *divination from the flight of birds*, *augury from birds*, *divination*, *augury*: *auspicia adhibere*, *to consult the auguries from birds*.

aut, *disjunc.* conj. marking an important difference, *or*; *corrective or emphatic*, *or at least*, *or rather*, *or else*: *aut... aut*, *either... or*.

autem, adverb. conj. (never first word in a clause) *but*, *however*, *moreover*; cf. *at* and *sed*.

auxēre = **auxērunt**, 3d pl. perf. of **augeō**.

auxiliū, -ī, n. [cf. *augeō*, *increase*] *help*, *aid*; pl. *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.

avāritia, -ae, f. [*avārus*, *greedy*] *greed*, *AVARICE*.

avārus, -a, -um, adj. [1 √ *AV*-, *desire*] *greedy*, *covetous*, *AVARICIOUS*.

avidus, -a, -um, adj. [1 √ *AV*-, *delight*] *desirous*, *eager*, *greedy for*.

avis, -is, f. [3 √ *AV*-, *blow*, *waft*] *bird*.

avocō [*ā* from + *voō*, *call*], -āre, -āvī, ātum v. tr. *call off*, *call away*.

avus, -ī, m. *grandfather*, *ancestor*.

B

barbarus, -i, m. [Gr. *βάρβαρος*] **BAR-BARIAN.**

beātus, -a, -um [part. of *beō*, *bless*], *ble-sed, happy.*

Belga, -ae, m. a *Belgian*, an inhabitant of Northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [*bellum, war*] *fond of war, warlike.*

bellō [*bellum, war*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *to war, carry on war, make war.*

bellum, -i, n. [for *duellum*, *√ DVA-*, *apart*] *war, conflict.*

bene, adv. [*bonus, good*] *well.*

beneficium, -i, n. [*bene, well + faciō, do*] *favor, kindness, service, benefit.*

benignē, adv. [*benignus, kind*] *kindly, courteously, in a friendly manner.*

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [*bene, well + √ GEN-, born*] *well-born, kind, friendly, BENIGNANT.*

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast.*

bibliothēca, -ae, f. *library.*

Bibulus, -i, m. *Marcus Bibulus*, consul with Julius Caesar.

bis, adv. *twice.*

bona, -ōrum, n. [*bonus, good*] *goods, property.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good*; comp. *melior*, superl. *optimus.*

bōs, bovis, m. and f. [Gr. *βοῦς*] *ox, cow.*

bracchium, -i, n. *arm.*

brevis, brevis, breve, adj. *short, BRIEF.*

Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*

Britannus, -i, m. a *Briton.*

Brundisium, -i, n. *Brundisium*, a seaport in Southern Italy.

Brūtus, -i, m. *Marcus Junius Brutus*, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

C

cadāver, -eris, n. [*√ CAD-, fall*] *dead body, corpse, carcass.*

cadō [*√ CAD-, fall*], **-ere, cecidī, cāsum,** v. intr. *fall, die, be slain.*

caedēs, -is, f. [*caedō, cut, kill*] *killing, slaughter, murder.*

caelum, -i, n. *sky, heaven, climate, air.*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar, Caius Julius*, a famous Roman general, statesman, and writer.

calamitās, -ātis, f. *loss, injury; disaster, misfortune, CALAMITY.*

calcar, -āris, n. [*calx, heel*] *spur.*

Calpurnia, -ae, f. *Calpurnia*, wife of Caesar.

calvitium, -i, n. [*calvus, bald*] *baldness.*

calvus, -a, -um, adj. *bald, hairless.*

Calvus, -i, m. *Caius Licinius Macer Calvus*, a poet, who lampooned Julius Caesar.

Campanus, -a, -um, adj. *Campanian.*

campester, -tris, -tre, adj. [*campus, plain*] *of a level field, flat, level.*

campus, -i, m. *plain, field.*

Caninius, -i, m. *Caius Caninius Rebilus*, consul for a few hours.

cantō [freq. of *canō, sing*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *sing.*

caper, capri, m. *he-goat.*

capio [*√ CAP-, take*], **capere, cēpi, captum,** v. tr. *take, seize, CAPTURE.*

Capitōlium, -i, n. [*caput, head*] **THE CAPITOL**, a temple on the southern spur of the Capitoline Hill, erected in honor of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva; also used for the *Capitoline Hill*, on which the Capitol stood.

capra, -ae, f. *she-goat*: *Caprae Palūs*, the *Goat's Pool*, the place in the Campus Martius whence Romulus disappeared.

captivus, -i, m. [*capio, take*] *prisoner, CAPTIVE.*

capto [*capio, take*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *seize, take, capture.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua*, a prosperous city of Campania in Italy.

caput, -itis, n. *the head*; **CAPITAL.**

cācer, -eris, m. *prison, jail.*

carmen, -inis, n. *song, poem*.

carpō, -ere, -si, -tum, v. tr. *pick, pluck*.

carrus, -i, m. *wagon*, CAR, CART.

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage*, a large city on the coast of Northern Africa, near the modern Tunis.

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious, beloved*: **cārē**, adv. *dearly*.

casa, -ae, f. *a small house, cottage, hut*.

Casca, -ae, m. *Caius Servilius Casca*, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

Cassius, -i, m. *Caius Cassius Longinus*, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

castellum, -i, n. [dimin. of **castrum**, *camp*] *fort, stronghold, redoubt, castle*.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl. *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [**cadō**, *fall*] *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss*.

catēna, -ae, f. *chain, fetter*.

Catilīna, -ae, m. *Lucius Sergius Catilīna*, a notorious conspirator of Rome and opponent of Cicero, whom he tried to murder.

Catō, -ōnis, m. [**catus**, *sagacious*] *Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis*, a famous Roman.

Catullus, -i, m. *Caius Valerius Catullus*, a great Roman lyric poet.

catulus, -i, m. [dimin. of **catus**, *cat*] *a young animal, whelp, puppy, cub*.

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason; excuse; case at law*: Abl. **causā** (always after the Gen. case), *for the sake of*: **causam dicere**, *to plead a case*.

caveō [*√ CAV-*, *watch*], -ēre, **cāvī**, **cāutum**, v. tr. *watch, beware of, take care*.

cēdō [*√ CAD-*, *fall*], -ere, **cēsi**, **cēssum**, v. intr. *withdraw, yield*.

celeber, -bris, -bre, adj. [*√ CEL-*, *drive*] *frequented, renowned, famous*.

celebrō [*celeber*, *famous*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *crowd, praise, make famous, honor, celebrate*.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj. [*√ CEL-*, *drive*]

swift, quick: comp. **celerior**; superl. **celerrimus**.

celeritās, -ātis, f. [**celer**, *swift*] *swiftness, speed, celerity*.

celeriter, adv. [**celer**, *swift*] *swiftly, speedily, quickly*; comp. **celerius**, superl. **celerrimē**.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *hide, keep secret, conceal*.

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner*.

cēnsēō, -ēre, -ulī, -um, v. tr. *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion*.

centēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [**centum**, *hundred*] *hundredth*.

centum, num. adj. indecl. *hundred*, CENT.

centuria, -ae, f. [**centum**, *hundred*] *a division of a hundred men*, A CENTURY.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [**centuria**, *century*] *commander of a century, captain*, CENTURION.

certāmen, -inis, n. [**certō**, *struggle*] *battle, struggle, decisive contest*.

certē, adv. [**certus**, *certain*] *really, surely, certainly*.

certō [**certus**, *certain*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *match, fight, combat*.

certus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **cernō**, *decide*] *decided, fixed, certain*: **certiōrem aliquem facere**, *inform someone*; **certior fiō**, *I am informed*.

cervix, -icis, f. *neck*.

cervus, -i, m. *a stag*.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. *delay, stop; be idle, cease*.

(**cēterus**), -a, -um, adj. *other*: as a subst. *rest, remainder*.

Christus, -i, m. [Gr. *χριστός*, *anointed*] CHRIST.

Chrysogonus, -i, m. *Lucius Cornelius Chrysogonus*, a freedman of Sulla.

cibus, -i, m. *food*.

cicer, -eris, n. *chick-pea*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. [**cicer**, *chick-pea*] *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, a family name of the Tullian gens, of whom Marcus Tullius

- Cicero, the famous orator, statesman, and writer, is most widely known.
- Cinna**, -ae, m. *Cinna*.
- circā**, adv. and prep. with acc. *around, round about*.
- circum**, adv. and prep. with acc. [acc. of *circus, circle*] *around, round about, near*.
- circumārō** [*circum, around + arō, plough*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *plough around*.
- citerior**, *citerior*, *citerius*, gen. -ōris, adj. comp. (no positive) *on this side, nearer, next*; superl. *citimus*.
- civicus**, -a, -um, adj. [*civis, citizen*] *civic*.
- civilis**, -is, -e, adj. [*civis, citizen*] *civil*.
- civis**, -is, m. and f. [*√ CI-*, *rest, lie*] *citizen*.
- civitas**, -atis, f. [*civis, citizen*] *body of citizens; state*.
- clādēs**, -is, f. [*√ CEL-*, *strike*] *destruction, defeat, death*.
- clam**, adv. *secretly*.
- clāmītō** [freq. of *clāmō, cry out*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *cry aloud, call loudly*.
- clāmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. [*√ CAL-*, *call*] *cry aloud, call loudly*.
- clāmōr**, -ōris, m. [*√ CAL-*, *call*] *loud call, shout, cry*.
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj. [*√ CAL-*, *call*] *called; bright, clear; famous, glorious, eminent*.
- clāssis**, -is, f. [*√ CAL-*, *call*] *class; fleet*.
- clēmēter**, adv. [*clēmēns, mild*] *mildly, mercifully*.
- cliēns**, -entis, m. *CLIENT*.
- clipeus**, -i, m. *round shield, made of metal*.
- Clōdius**, -i, m. *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, Cicero's bitterest enemy.
- Clūsianus**, -a, -um, adj. [*Clūsium*] *belonging to Clusium: as a subst. an inhabitant of Clusium*.
- Cocles**, -itis, *one-eyed*, surname of Horatius, who defended the bridge against Porsenna's attack on Rome.
- coepti**, perf. ind. of *coeptō*, q. v.
- (*coeptō*, -ere), *coepti*, *coeptum*, v. tr. *begin, commence: only the perfect tenses are found in classical Latin*.
- coerceō** [*con, completely + arceō, enclose*], -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *close on all sides; restrain, repress, control*.
- cōgitātiō**, -ōnis, f. [*cōgitō, think*] (*thinking, thought, design, plan*).
- cōgnōmen**, -inis, n. [*com, with, added + (g)nōmen, name*] *surname, family name, name*.
- cōgnōscō** [*com, intens. + (g)nōscō, know*], -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, v. tr. *learn, know, understand, recognize*.
- cōgō** [*com, together + agō, drive*], *cōgere*, *cōgī*, *cōactum*, v. tr. *drive together, force, compel, collect*.
- cohors**, *cohortis*, f. *COHORT*.
- collis**, -is, m. *hill*.
- collocō** [*com, together + locō, place*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *place together, collect into one place*.
- colloquium**, -i, n. [*colloquor, converse*] *conversation, conference, colloquy*.
- colō** [*√ COL-*, *till*], -ere, *colui*, *cultum*, v. tr. *till; cultivate; care for, honor, worship*.
- columba**, -ae, f. *dove, pigeon*.
- combūrō** [*con, completely + būrō, burn*], -ere, -ūsi, -ūstum, v. tr. *burn up*.
- comes**, -itis, m. and f. [*com, with + √ I-*, *go*] *comrade, companion*.
- cōmitās**, -atis, f. [*cōmis, kind*] *courtesy, kindness*.
- comitium**, -i, n. [*com, together + √ I-*, *go*] *The Comitium, place of coming together, next to the Forum, where the elections took place*.
- comitor** [*comes, companion*], -āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *accompany, attend*.
- commēstus**, -ūs, m. [*commēō, go and come*] *going to and fro; leave of absence; provisions, supplies*.

committō [com, together + mittō, send], -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr. unite, begin, intrust, commit.

commodum, -i, n. [commodus, with due measure] convenience, advantage, profit.

commodus, -a, -um, adj. [com, with + modus, measure] suitable, fit, agreeable, advantageous.

commonēfaciō [com, intens. + moneō, warn + faciō, make], -ere, -feci, -factum, v. tr. warn, admonish, remind.

commoveō [com, together + moveō, move], -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr. move, arouse, excite.

communiō [com, intens. + muniō, fortify], -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr. fortify, intrench.

communis, **commūnis**, **commūne**, gen. -is, adj. [com, together + √ MU-, bind] bound together, common, general.

commutō [com, intens. + mutō, change], -ere, -avi, -atum, v. tr. change, change completely.

compār, -paris, adj. [com, with + pār, equal] like, equal.

1. **comparō** [com, completely + parō, prepare], -ere, -avi, -atum, v. tr. prepare, make ready, gain, get, secure.

2. **comparō** [compār, equal], -ere, -avi, -atum, v. tr. bring together as equals, match, compare.

(**compēs**, -pedis), f. sing. only in abl. chain, shackle, fetter.

compellō [com, together + pellō, drive], -ellere, -puli, -pulum, drive together, force, COMPEL.

compleō [com, intens. completely + pleō, fill], -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, v. tr. fill up, fill full.

complūrēs, **complūrēs**, **complūra** and **complūria**, adj. [com, intens. + plūrēs, many, more] more, not a few, many.

comprehendō [com, intens. +prehendō, seize], -ere, -hendi, -hēsum, v. tr. seize, arrest.

comprimō [com, together + premō, press], -ere, -pressi, -pressum, v. tr.

press together, restrain, put down, check, subdue.

concēdō [con, completely + cēdō, go], -cēdere, -cēssi, -cēssum, v. intr. go away, yield, CONCEDE, allow.

concidō [con, together + cadō, fall], -ere, -cidi, —, v. intr. fall together, fall, perish, be slain.

conciliō [concilium, meeting], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. bring together, unite, CONCILIATE; win, obtain.

conciō [con, intensive + ciō, rouse], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. rouse, urge, incite, cause.

concordia, -ae, f. [concor-, of the same mind] concord, harmony, union.

concupiscō [con, intens. + cupiō, desire], -ere, -cupivi, -cupitum, v. tr. long for, strive after.

condō [con, together + √ DA-, put], -dere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. put together, build, hide.

condoleō [con, intens. + doleō, be pained], -dolēre, -doli, —, v. intr. be pained, suffer, be sorry.

cōnferō [con, together + ferō, bring], -ferre, -tuli, **conlātum** and **collātum**, v. tr. bring together, collect, CONFER; sē cōnferre, betake oneself, go.

cōnfestim, adv. immediately.

cōnficiō [con, completely + faciō, make], -ficere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr. make, accomplish, finish, wear out.

cōnfirmō [con, intens. + firmō, strengthen], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. make firm, strengthen, establish.

cōnfiō [con, together + fiō, flow], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. flow together, cause, arouse.

cōnfluō [con, together + fluō, flow], -ere, -fluxi, —, flow together, gather, assemble.

cōnfodiō [com, completely + fodiō, dig], -ere, -fodi, -fossam, v. tr. dig up; transfix, stab.

confugiō [con, together + fugiō, flee],

- fugere, -fūgi, —, v. tr. *flee, flee for refuge.*
- congruō, -ere, -ui, —, v. intr. *coincide, agree.*
- coniciō [con, together + iaciō, throw], -icere, -ici, -iectum, v. tr. *throw together, throw, put, unite.*
- coniūx or coniux, -iugis, m. and f. [con, together + √ IUG-, bind] *married person, husband, wife.*
- coniūratiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear together] *a swearing together, alliance, plot, conspiracy.*
- coniūrātus, -i, m. [coniūrō, conspire] *conspirator.*
- coniūrō [con, together + iūrō, swear], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *swear together, conspire.*
- conlēga, -ae, m. *colleague, associate.*
- conlocō, see collocō.
- cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *try, attempt, endeavor.*
- cōnscendō [con, intens. + scandō, climb], -ere, -scendi, -scōsum, v. tr. *climb; embark.*
- cōnscrībō [con, together + scrībō, write], -scrībēre, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr. *write together, enlist, enroll.*
- cōnscientia, -ae, f. [cōnsciūs, conscious] *knowledge, consciousness.*
- cōnserō [con, together + serō, twine], -ere, -serui, -sertum, v. tr. *join together, connect; with manum, manūs, right hand to hand.*
- cōnseruō [con, together + seruō, save], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *save together, save, preserve.*
- cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *look at, regard attentively.*
- cōnsiliū, -i, n. [cf. cōnsulō, consult] *consulting body, council; deliberation; plan, purpose, design; prudence, wisdom.*
- cōnsistō [con, completely + sistō, stand], -sistere, -stīti, -stītum, v. intr. *stand still, stand, halt.*
- cōnspectus, -ūs, m. [cōnspiciō, perceive] *sight, view.*
- cōnspiciō [con, together + speciō, look], -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum, v. tr. *look at closely, perceive, see.*
- cōnspicor [con, together + speciō, look], -āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *get sight of, perceive, see.*
- cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstāns, firm] *firmness, strength, constancy.*
- cōnstat, see cōnstō.
- cōnsternō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *confound, dismay, terrify.*
- cōnstituō [com, intens. + statuō, set], -ere, -ui, -ātum, v. tr. *arrange, draw up, select, manage, determine, decide.*
- cōnstitūtum, -i, n. [cōnstituō, determine] *agreement, appointment.*
- cōnstō [con, together + stō, stand], -āre, -stīti, -stātūrus, v. intr. *agree; impers. satis cōnstat, it is well known.*
- cōnsuēscō [con, intens. + suēscō, accustom], -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, v. intr. *accustom, accustom oneself, become accustomed.*
- cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, consult] *consul.*
- cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul, consul] *consulship.*
- cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -ultum, v. tr. *deliberate, consult, take measures, resolve.*
- cōntemplor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *gaze at, look at, contemplate.*
- cōntendō [con, intens. + tendō, stretch], -ere, -tendi, -tentum, v. intr. *stretch tight; march rapidly, hasten; ask, entreat.*
- cōntentiō, -ōnis, f. [con, intens. + √ TEN-, stretch] *struggle, dispute, contest.*
- cōntentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of cōntineō, hold in] *CONTENTED, with abl.*
- cōntineō [con, together + teneō, hold], -āre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr. *hold in, hold together, restrain, contain.*
- cōntinuō, adv. [continuus, joining] *immediately.*

- cōntiō, -ōnis, f.** [for **conventiō** from **con**, *together* + **VEN-**, *come*] a *coming together, meeting, assembly*.
- contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.:** *adv. opposite, face to face; on the contrary; prep. against, in the face of, contrary to*.
- contrahō [con, together + trahō, draw]**
-ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, v. tr. *draw together, collect*.
- contrārius, -a, -um, adj.** [contrā, *over against*] *lying over against, opposite, with dat.*
- conūbium, -i, n.** [con, *together* + nūbō, *marry*] *marriage, right of marriage*.
- conveniō [con, together + veniō, come],**
-ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. intr. *come together, assemble, meet, CONVENE*.
- convertō [con, completely + vertō, turn];**
-vertere, -verti, -versum, v. tr. *turn completely, turn, flip, direct, CONVERT*.
- convincō, -ere, -vici, -victum, v. tr.**
[com, *intens.* + vincō, *conquer*] *overcome, convict*.
- convocō [con, together + vocō, call],**
-āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *call together, assemble, summon*.
- coōrior [con, intens. + orior, rise],**
-ōriri, -ōrtus sum, dep. v. intr. *come forth, arise*.
- cophinus, -i, m.** *basket*.
- cōpia, -ae, f.** [for **co-opia** from **com**, *intens.* + **ops**, *wealth*] *abundance, plenty*:
pl. **cōpiae, -ārum**, *forces, troops*.
- cor, cordis, n.** *heart*.
- Corinthus, -i, f.** *Corinth, a city of Greece, situated on the Isthmus of Corinth, now Corinto*.
- Cornēlia, -ae, f.** *Cornelia, daughter of Cinna*.
- cornū, -ūs, n.** *horn, wing (of an army)*.
- corōna, -ae, f.** *wreath, crown*.
- corpus, -oris, n.** *body*.
- corrigō [con, intens. + rēgō, keep straight],**
-ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, v. tr. *make straight, improve, correct*.
- crās, adv.** *to-morrow*.
- Crassus, -i, Marcus Crassus, called Dives**
on account of his wealth.
- crēdō [✓ CRAT-, faith + ✓ DA-, give, put],**
-ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. *put faith in, trust, believe, suppose, think*.
- Cremonā, -ae, f.** *Cremona, a town in Cisalpine Gaul*.
- creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.** *bring forth, make, choose, CREATE*.
- crīnis, -is, m.** *hair*.
- cruciō [crux, cross],**
-āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *put on the rack, torture, crucify*.
- crux, crucis, f.** *cross, gallows*.
- cuculus, -i, m.** *starling*.
- cūius, gen. sing. of cui and of quis.**
- culex, -icis, m.** *gnat*.
- culpa, -ae, f.** *fault, error, guilt, blame*.
- culpō [culpa, blame],**
-āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *blame, find fault with*.
- culter, -tri, m.** [✓ CEL-, *strike*] *knife*.
- cultus, -ūs, m.** [✓ COL-, *till*] *labor, care; style, refinement, luxury*.
- cum, conj.** *of time, when, while, as long as; of cause, since, as, inasmuch as; of concession, though, although: cum . . . tum, both . . . and, while . . . especially*.
- cum, prep. with abl., with, along with,**
in company with.
- cupiditās, -ātis, f.** [cupidus, *desirous*] *desire, ambition*.
- cupidus, -a, -um, adj.** [cupiō, *desire*] *desirous of, eager for, greedy, covetous; with gen.*
- cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.** *long for, desire, wish*.
- cūr, adv.** *interrog. why? wherefore?*
- cūra, -ae, f.** [cf. **cūrō**, *care*] *care, trouble, attention*.
- cūria, -ae, f.** *curia, one of the ten divisions into which each of the three tribes of patricians was divided; senate-house, place of meeting of the senate*.
- cūrō [cf. cūra, care],**
-āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *care for, take care of*.

currō, currere, ecurrī, cursum, v. intr. *run*.

currus, -ūs, m. [**currō, run**] *chariot, car*.

cursus, -ūs, m. [cf. **currō, run**] *running, course, voyage*.

cūstōdiō [cūstōs, guard], -īre, -īvi, -itum, v. tr. *watch, guard, defend*.

cūstōs, -ōis, m. and f. *guard, watch, defender*.

Cyrrus, -ī, m. *Cyrus the Great, founder of the Persian empire*.

D

Dāci, -drum, m. *the Dacians, people on north bank of the Danube*.

damnō [damnum, loss], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *adjudge guilty, condemn*.

dē, prep. with abl. denoting separation, *from*; of place and motion, *from, out of*; of time, *after, during, in*; of source, *from, out of*; of cause, *on account of, through*; of relation, *about, concerning*.

dea, -ae, f. [**deus, god**] *goddess*.

dēbeō [dē, from + habēō, hold], -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *withhold; owe, be due; ought, must, should*.

dēbilis, -is, -e, adj. [**dē, not + habilis, manageable**] *weak; lame, disabled*.

dēcedō [dē, from + cēdō, go], -ere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr. *go from, depart, withdraw; die*.

decem, indecl. num. adj. *ten*.

December, -bris, -bre, adj. [**decem, ten**] *of the tenth, tenth month, December*.

deceō, -āre, -ui, —, used only in 3d pers. sing. *be seemly, become, be proper, be suitable*.

dēcernō [dē, from + cernō, separate], -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, v. tr. *separate from, decide, determine, vote*.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth*; with *sextus*, *sixteenth*.

dēcipiō [dē, away + capiō, take], -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. *cheat, deceive*.

dēdeceō [dē, away + deceō, become],

-āre, -ui, —, used only in 3d pers. sing. *be unseemly, be unbecoming, be improper*.

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [**dēdō, surrender**] *a giving up, surrender*.

dēdō [dē, away + dō, give], -ere, -idi, -ditum, v. tr. *give away, give up, surrender*.

dēfendō [dē, from, off + fendō, ward], -ere, -fendi, -fensum, v. tr. *ward off, guard, defend*.

dēferō [dē, down + ferō, bear], -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v. tr. *remove, report, submit, announce*.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, tired, worn out*.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f. [**dēfōrmis, ugly**] *ugliness, deformity*.

dēfungor [dē, intens. + fungor, perform], -ī, dēfunctus sum, dep. v. intr. *perform, finish, with abl.*

dēhonestō [dē, from + honestō, honor], -āre, -āvi, —, v. tr. *dishonor, disgrace*.

dēiciō [dē, down + iaciō, throw], -ere, -īci, -iectum, v. tr. *throw down, hurt down, bring down*.

deinde or dein, adv. *then, next, there-after*.

dēlectō [intens. of dēliciō, entice], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *allure, charm, delight*.

dēleō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *erase, blot out, destroy, delete*.

dēligō [dē, out of + legō, gather], -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, v. tr. *pick out, gather, choose*.

Delphi, -ōrum, m. *Delphi, a town of Phocis, in central Greece, now Castri, where the famous oracle of Apollo and Diana was*.

dēmigrō [dē, from + migrō, depart], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *move, depart, migrate*.

dēmōnstrō [dē, from + mōnstrō, show], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *show, DEMONSTRATE*.

dēnegō [dē, inten. + negō, *deny*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *deny, refuse*.

dēnique, adv. *at last, at length, finally; in fact, in a word*.

dēnūtiō [dē, from + nūtiō, *declare*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *declare, announce, order*.

dēponō [dē, down + ponō, *put*], -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr. *put down, deposit*.

dēprecor [dē, from + precor, *pray*], -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *avert by prayer, pray, plead*.

dēprehendō [dē, down + prehendō, *snatch*], -ere, -ndī, -nsum, v. tr. *take away, seize, capture*.

dēscendō [dē, down + scandō, *climb*], -ere, -ndī, -nsum, v. tr. *climb down, descend*.

dēserō [dē, un + serō, *bind*], -ere, -rui, -rtum, v. tr. *leave, abandon, desert*.

dēsiderium, -ī, n. [dēsiderō, *desire*] *longing for, desire; want, need; grief*.

dēsiliō [dē, down + salio, *leap*], -ire, -ili, -sultum, v. intr. *leap down, dismount*.

dēsistō [dē, off + sistō, *stand*], -ere, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr. *leave off, desist from, cease*.

dēstinō [dē, int. + √ STA-, *stand*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *make fast, design*.

dēsum [dē, from + sum, *am*], esse, -fui, -futurus, v. intr. *be absent, lack, be wanting*.

dētegō [dē, un + tegō, *cover*], -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, v. tr. *uncover, expose*.

dēterreo [dē, from + terreo, *frighten*], -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *deter, restrain, hinder*.

dētineō [dē, down + teneō, *hold*], -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr. *hold back, restrain, detain*.

dētrahō [dē, from + trahō, *draw*], -ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, v. tr. *draw from, pull down, take off, take down*.

deus, -ī, m. [√ DIV-, *shine, bright*] *god, deity*.

dēvincō [dē, int. + vincō, *conquer*], -ere, -vici, -victum, v. tr. *conquer, defeat*.

dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum, adj. *right*.

dextra, -ae, f. [adj. from dexter, sc. manus], *right hand*.

diadēma, -atis, n. *royal crown, diadem*.

Dīana, -ae, f. [for Divāna, from √ DIV-, *bright, shine*] *Diana*, ancient Roman goddess of the moon, afterwards identified with the Greek Artemis, goddess of the chase.

dicō [√ DIC-, *show*], -ere, dixi, dictum, v. tr. *say, speak, tell, call, name; causam dicere, plead a case; diem dicere, make an accusation against*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, *dictate*] **DICTATOR**, a chief magistrate, to whom unlimited powers were granted.

dictitō [freq. of dicō, *say*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *say often, say frequently*.

diēs, -is, m., and sometimes fem. in sing. [√ DI-, *shine*], *day, time; in diēs, daily, day by day; diem dicō, make an accusation against*.

differō [dis, *apart* + ferō, *bear*], -ferre, distuli, dilatum, v. tr. *bear apart, scatter, put off, defer, DIFFER*.

difficilis, -is, -e, adj. [dis, negative + facilis, *easy*] **DIFFICULT, hard, perilous**.

dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus, *worthy*] *worth, dignity, rank, authority*.

dignus, -a, -um, adj. *worthy, deserving*.

diligēns, -entis, adj. [part. of diligō, *love*] *industrious, attentive, DILIGENT*.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns, *diligent*] *industriously, attentively, DILIGENTLY*.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, *diligent*] *industry, attentiveness, DILIGENCE*.

diligō [dis, *apart* + legō, *choose*], -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, v. tr. *choose apart, esteem, love*.

dimicō [dis, intens. + micō, *move to and fro*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *fight struggle*.

dimittō [dis, *away* + mitto, *send*], -ere,

- miſi**, -**miſſum**, v. tr. *send away*, DISMISS.
- dirigō** [*dis*, intens. + **rēgō**, *lay straight*], -**ere**, -**rēxi**, -**rēctum**, v. tr. *arrange*, *send*, *aim*, *steer*, DIRECT.
- dirimō** [*dis*, *apart* + **emō**, *take*], -**ere**, -**emi**, -**emptum**, v. tr. *separate*; *end*, *settle*.
- diertus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [part. of **disserō**, *set in order*] *skilful*, *clever*, *fluent*, *eloquent*.
- dripiō** [*dis*, *apart* + **rapio**, *snatch*], -**ere**, -**ui**, -**reptum**, v. tr. *snatch apart*, *plunder*, *pillage*.
- discōdō** [*dis*, *apart* + **cōdō**, *go*], -**ere**, -**cēsi**, -**cēsum**, v. intr. *go apart*, *depart*, *withdraw*, *go off*.
- discipulus**, -**i**, m. [**discō**, *learn*] *learner*, *pupil*, DISCIPLE.
- dicō** [✓ **DIC-**, *show*], -**ere**, **didici**, —, v. tr. *learn*.
- discurrō** [*dis*, *apart* + **currō**, *run*], -**currere**, -**curri** and -**concurri**, -**cursum**, v. intr. *run different ways*, *run to and fro*, *wander*.
- discipio** [*dis*, *apart* + **specio**, *see*], -**ere**, -**spēxi**, -**spectrum**, v. tr. *discern*, *perceive*, *distinguish*.
- displaceō** [*dis*, neg. + **placeō**, *please*], -**ere**, -**ui**, -**itum**, v. tr. *displease*.
- dispōnō** [*dis*, *apart* + **pōnō**, *put*], -**ere**, -**posui**, -**positum**, v. tr. *place apart*, *arrange*, DISPOSE.
- disputō** [*dis*, intens. + **putō**, *think*], -**ere**, -**avi**, -**atum**, v. tr. *argue*, *discuss*, *dispute*.
- dissimilis**, -**is**, -**e**, adj. [*dis*, neg. + **similis**, *like*], *unlike*, *different*, DISSIMILAR.
- dissimulō** [*dis*, neg. + **simulō**, *make like*], -**ere**, -**avi**, -**atum**, v. tr. *make unlike*, *hide*, *conceal*.
- distribuō** [*dis*, *apart* + **tribuō**, *grant*], -**ere**, -**ui**, -**atum**, v. tr. *divide*, DISTRIBUTE.
- diū**, adv. [cf. **diēs**, *day*] *all day*; *long*, *for a long time*: comp. **diūtius**; superl. **diūtissimē**.
- diūtius**, adv. comp. of **diū**, *longer*.
- diuturnus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [**diū**, *long time*] *of long duration*, *lasting*, *long*.
- diversus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [part. of **divertō**, *turn different ways*] *turned different ways*, *opposite*, *contrary*.
- dives**, -**itis** [cf. **dis**], *rich*, *wealthy*.
- dividō** [*dis*, *apart* + ✓ **VID-**, *see*], -**ere**, -**visi**, -**visum**, v. tr. *part*, DIVIDE, *share*, *distribute*.
- divinitus**, adv. [**divinus**, *divine*] *from heaven*, *by divine influence*.
- Divitiacus**, -**i**, m. **Divitiacus**, a chief of the Aeduans.
- divitiæ**, -**arum**, f. [**dives**, *rich*] *riches*, *wealth*.
- dō** [✓ **1 DA-**, *give*], *dare*, **dedi**, **datum**, v. tr. *give*, *put*: **poenās dare**, *suffer punishment*.
- doceō** [✓ **DIC-**, *show*], -**ere**, -**ui**, **docui**, v. tr. *show*, *teach*.
- doctrina**, -**ae**, f. [**doctor**, *teacher*] *teaching*, *learning*; *erudition*, *wisdom*.
- doctus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [**doceō**, *teach*], *taught*, *learned*.
- doleō**, -**ere**, -**ui**, -**itūrus**, v. intr. *be pained*, *suffer*.
- dolor**, -**oris**, m. [**doleō**, *be pained*] *pain*, *grief*.
- dolōsē**, adv. [**dolōsus**, *crafty*] *craftily*, *deceitfully*.
- dominātiō**, -**onis**, f. [**dominor**, *be lord*] *rule*, *power*.
- dominatus**, -**ūs**, m. [**dominor**, *be lord*] *rule*, *command*, *tyranny*.
- dominor** [**dominus**, *lord*], -**ari**, -**atus sum**, dep. v. intr. *be lord*, *be master*, *rule*.
- dominus**, -**i**, m. [cf. **domō**, *tame*] *master*, *lord*.
- domus**, -**ūs**, f. *house*, *dwelling*; loc. **domi**, *at home*; acc. **domum**, *homewards*, *to the house*; abl. **domō**, *from home*.
- dōnec**, conj. *as long as*, *while*, *until*.
- dōnō** [**dō**, *give*], -**ere**, -**avi**, -**atum**, v. tr. *give*, *present*, DONATE.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō, give] gift, present.

dorsum, -ī, n. ridge, back.

dubitō [dubius, doubtful], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. be in doubt, DOUBT, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [√ DVA-, apart, two] moving two ways, uncertain, doubtful.

ducentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ducenti, two hundred] two hundredth.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, two + centum, hundred] two hundred.

dūcō [√ DVC-, lead], -ere, dūxī, ductum, v. tr. lead, guide, construct, make; think, consider: in mātrimonium dūcere, lead in marriage, marry.

dulcis, -is, -e, adj. sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

dum, conj. while, as long as, until.

dummodo, cond. conj. provided that.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. [√ DVA-, two] two.

duodecim, num. adj. [duo, two + decem, ten] twelve.

duodēni, -ae, -a, num. adj. distr. twelve each, twelve apiece.

dux, ducis, m. and f. [√ DVC-, lead] leader, guide, commander.

Dyrrāchium, -ī, n. Dyrrachium, a city on the coast of Illyria, where those coming from Italy landed.

E

ē, see **ex**.

ecquid, interrog. adv. at all?

ēdictum, -ī, n. [ēdicō, declare] proclamation, edict.

ēdō [ex, out of + 2 DA-, put], -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr. bear, produce, tell, show.

ēducō [ex, out + dūcō, lead], -ducere, dūxī, ductum, v. tr. lead forth.

ēducō [cf. ēducō, lead out], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. bring up, EDUCATE.

ēfferō [ex, out + ferō, bear], efferre, ex-

tuli, ēlātum, v. tr. carry out, take away, ELATE.

efficiō [ex, thoroughly + faciō, do, make], -ficere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr. work out, bring to pass, effect, make.

efflagitō [ex, int. + flagitō, demand], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. demand urgently, request.

effundō [ex, out + fundō, pour], -fundere, -fudi, -fūsum, v. tr. pour out, pour forth, spread abroad, overflow.

effusus, part. of effundō, overflowed.

ego, pers. pron. I.

ēgredior [ex, out + gradior, walk],

ēgredi, ēgressus sum, dep. v. intr. go out, go away, go from.

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ex, out + grex, flock] select, distinguished, noble.

ēheu, interj. alas.

ēlabor [ex, out + labor, slip], -ī, ēlapsus sum, v. intr. dep. slip away, escape.

ēlabōrō [ex, forth + labōrō, labor], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. labor, endeavor, take pains.

elephantus, -ī, m. elephant.

ēligō [ex, out + legō, choose], -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, v. tr. choose out, choose, select.

ēloquentia, -ae, f. [ēloquēns, eloquent] eloquence.

ēmergō [ex, out + mergō, dip], -ere, -mersī, -mersum, v. intr. come forth, emerge.

[chase.

emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum, v. tr. buy, purchase, enī, conj. (never first word in a clause) for, namely, in fact.

ēnitor [ex, forth + nitor, strain], -ī, -nīxus or -nīsus, dep. v. tr. force away out, endeavor, strive.

ēō, adv. [is, this] to that place, thither.

ēō [√ I-, go], ire, ivi or ii, itum, v. intr. go.

Epaminōndās, -ae, m. Epaminondas, a celebrated general and statesman of Thebes.

Ephesus, -a, -um, adj. [Ephesus] Ephesian, of Ephesus.

epigramma, -atis, n. *inscription, epigram*.

Epirus, -i, f. *Epirus*, a province in northern Greece.

epistula, -ae, f. *a written communication, letter*.

eques, -itis, m. [**equus**, *horse*] *horseman, rider; cavalryman, knight*.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [**eques**, *horseman*] *equestrian, cavalry, of knights*.

equitatus, -us, m. [**eques**, *horseman*] *body of horsemen, cavalry*.

equitō [**eques**, *horseman*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *ride*.

equus, -i, m. *horse*.

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *wander, wander away, err*.

error, -ōris, m. [cf. **errō**, *wander*] *wandering, error, doubt, uncertainty*.

ēruditus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **ērudīō**, *train*] *trained, educated, learned*.

ērupō [**ex**, *forth* + **rumpō**, *break*] *burst forth*, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, v. intr. *break out*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. [**ērupō**, *burst forth*] *a bursting forth, salty*.

et, adv. and conj. 1, as adv. *also, too, even*; 2, as conj. *and, and yet*: **et** ... **et**, *both ... and*.

etiam, adv. [**et**, *and* + **iam**, *now*] *even yet, still, also, even now*.

Etrusci, -ōrum, m. the **ETRUSCANS**, the inhabitants of Etruria.

Euripidēs, -is, m. *Euripides*, a Greek dramatic poet.

Eurōpa, -ae, f. **EUROPE**.

ēvadō [**ex**, *out* + **vādō**, *go*], -ere, -vāsi, -vāsūm, v. intr. *come out, go forth, escape, EVADE*.

ēvertō [**ē**, *out* + **vertō**, *turn*], -ere, -tī, -sum, v. tr. *overturn, overthrow, ruin, destroy*.

ēvocō [**ex**, *out* + **vocō**, *call*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *call out, call forth, summon, EVOKE*.

ex, or before consonants, **ē**, prep. with

abl. out, out of, from; of place, *out of, from*; of time, *from, since*; of source and material, *from, of*; of cause, *from, by reason of*; of measure and correspondence, *to, according to*: **ex mōre regis**, *after the manner of or like a king*.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **excellō**, *be eminent*] *elevated, high, tall*; noble, illustrious.

excerpō [**ex**, *out* + **carpō**, *pick*], -ere, -psi, -ptum, v. tr. *pick out, choose, select, gather*.

excipiō [**ex**, *out* + **capiō**, *take*], -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, v. tr. *take out*; receive, welcome; capture.

excitō [freq. of **excitō**, *call out*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *call out, summon, wake, rouse, EXCITE*.

exclāmō [**ex**, *out* + **clāmō**, *cry*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *cry out, EXCLAIM*.

excludō [**ex**, *out* + **cludō**, *shut*], -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, v. tr. *shut out, hinder, prevent, EXCLUDE*.

excūsō [**ex**, *free from* + **causa**, *judicial process*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. **EXCUSE**.

exerceō [**ex**, *out* + **arceō**, *shut*], -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *shut out of an enclosure, employ, train, EXERCISE*.

exercitus, -us, m. [**exerceō**, *train*] *the thing trained, army*.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj. *little, small, short*.

exitus, -us, m. [**ex**, *out* + **ī**, *go*] *a going out, end, lot, death*.

eximius, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **eximō**, *take out*] *taken out, selected; uncommon, distinguished*.

eximō [**ex**, *out* + **emō**, *take*], -ere, -emi, -emptum, v. tr. *take out, remove, deliver, release*.

exitium, -i, n. [**ex**, *out* + **ī**, *go*] *ruin, death, destruction*.

expediō [**ex**, *out* + **pēs**, *foot*], -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr. *set free, make ready; procure, secure*.

- expellō** [ex, out + pellō, drive], -ere, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr. drive out, expel.
- exporior, -iri, -pertus sum**, dep. v. tr. try, prove; contend with, meet with.
- expetō** [ex, out + petō, seek], -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, v. tr. seek out.
- explōrator, -ōris**, m. [explōrō, investigate] a spy, scout.
- explōrō** [ex, out + plōrō, seek], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. investigate, try, spy, EXPLORE.
- expōnō** [ex, forth + pōnō, put], -pōnere, -posui, -positum, v. tr. put forth, EXPOSE, abandon; explain.
- expositiō, -ōnis**, f. [cf. expōnō, expose] a setting forth, exposure, abandonment.
- expugnātiō, -ōnis**, f. [expugnō, storm] a storming, siege.
- expugnō** [ex, out to the end + pugnō, fight], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. take by storm, capture, overcome, conquer.
- existō** [ex, forth + sistō, stand], -ere, -isti, —, v. intr. stand forth, appear, become, be.
- expectō** [ex, forth + spectō, look], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. look out for, wait for, await, EXPECT.
- existō** [ex, forth + stō, stand], -stāre, —, v. intr. stand forth, be exultant, exist.
- extrā**, prep. with acc. [exter, outside] outside of, beyond, without.
- extrēmus, -a, -um**, adj. [superl. of exter, outside] utmost, farthest, last, extreme.
- F**
- fābula, -ae**, f. [√ FAF-, say] account, story, fable.
- facētē**, adv. [facētus, fine] finely, gracefully; wittily: facētē dicta, witticisms.
- facile**, adv. [facilis, easy] easily, readily.
- facilis, -is, -e**, adj. [√ FAC-, make] easy, without difficulty.
- facinus, -oris**, n. [faciō, do] a deed, act; crime.
- faciō** [√ FAC-, make, do], -ere, -fēci, -factum, v. tr. make, do, build, perform: certiorē aliquem facere, inform some one: pass. fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, be done, happen: certior fiō, I am informed.
- fācundia, -ae**, f. [fācundus, eloquent] eloquence, command of language.
- faenum, -i**, n. hay, fodder.
- fāma, -ae**, f. [√ FAF-, say] report, rumor, tradition; renown, FAME, character.
- familia, -ae**, f. [famulus, servant] the slaves in a household, family servants, domestics, household; FAMILY.
- familiāris, -is, -e**, adj. [familia, household] belonging to a family, FAMILIAR, intimate; rēs familiāris, property.
- fāmōsus, -a, -um**, adj. [fāma, report] much talked of; slanderous.
- fās**, indecl. n. divine law; right, duty, justice.
- fascē, -is**, m. bundle; pl. fascēs.
- fāstī, -ōrum**, m. pl. almanac, calendar.
- fātālis, -is, -e**, adj. [fātum, fate] FATAL, dangerous.
- faucē, -ium**, f. throat.
- Faustulus, -i**, m. Faustulus, the shepherd that found Romulus and Remus and carried them home to his wife Acca (q. v.) to be brought up.
- faustus, -a, -um**, adj. blessed, lucky, happy.
- fāvēō, -ēre, fāvi, fantum**, v. intr. FAVOR, befriend, with dat.
- fēliciter**, adv. [fēlix, lucky] luckily, fortunately, successfully.
- fēlix, -ix, -ix**, gen. -icis, adj. lucky, fortunate, successful.
- fēmina, -ae**, f. female; woman.
- fera, -ae**, f. [ferus, wild] wild beast, wild animal.
- ferē**, adv. nearly, almost, about, for the most part.
- ferō** [√ FER-, bear], ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr. bear, carry; suffer; report, say; bring, render.

- ferōx, -ōx, -ōx**, gen. -ōcis, adj. [cf. *ferus*, *wild*] *bold, fierce, spirited, impetuous*.
- ferreus, -a, -um**, adj. [*ferrum*, *iron*] of *iron, made of iron, iron*.
- fertilitās, -ātis**, f. [*fertilis*, *fertile*] **FERTILITY**.
- ferus, -a, -um**, adj. *wild, savage, barbarous*.
- fēstinō** [*fēstinus*, *hasty*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. *hasten, be in haste, hurry*.
- fideliter**, adv. [*fidelis*, *faithful*] *faithfully*.
- fidēs, -ei**, f. [✓ *FID-*, *trust*] *trust, faith, belief; good faith*.
- fidus, -a, -um**, adj. [✓ *FID-*, *trust*] *trusty, faithful*.
- fiērī**, inf. of *fiō*, used as pass. of *faciō*.
- filia, -ae**, f. *daughter*.
- filius, -i**, m. *son*.
- finis, -is**, m. *end, boundary, limit*: pl. *territory, country*.
- finitimus, -a, -um**, adj. [*finis*, *end*] *adjoining, neighboring*.
- fiō, fierī, factus sum**, used as pass. of *faciō* (q. v.), *be done, be made, happen*.
- firmō** [*firmus*, *strong*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make firm; strengthen, secure, fortify*.
- firmus, -a, -um**, adj. *strong, firm, powerful*.
- flagitō** [✓ *FLAG-*, *blaze*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *demand, entreat*.
- flēō** [✓ *FLU-*, *flow*], *flēre, flēvi, flētum*, v. intr. *weep, cry, wail*.
- flōrēō** [*flōs*, *flower*], -āre, -ui, —, *flourish, be successful*.
- flōs, flōris**, m. *flower, blossom*.
- fluctus, -ūs**, m. [✓ *FLU-*, *flow*] *flood, wave*.
- flūmen, -inis**, n. [✓ *FLU-*, *flow*] *flood, river, stream*.
- foedus, -eris**, n. [✓ *FID-*, *bind, trust*] *league, treaty, agreement*.
- fōns, fontis**, m. [✓ *FU-*, *pour*] *fountain, spring, fount*.
- fore, foret**, see *sum*.
- fōrma, -ae**, f. *form, shape, figure, looks*.
- formidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr. *dread, fear*.
- forte**, adv. [abl. of *fors*, *chance*] *by chance, by accident, perhaps*.
- fortis, -is, -e**, gen. *is*, adj. *strong; brave, manly*.
- fortissimō**, adv. superl. of *fortiter*.
- fortiter**, adv. [*fortis*, *strong*] *strongly, bravely, boldly*.
- fortitūdō, -inis**, f. [*fortis*, *brave*] *strength, bravery, manliness, boldness*.
- fortūna, -ae**, f. [*fors*, *chance*] *chance, fate, fortune; the goddess Fortune*.
- forum, -i**, n. [cf. *foris*, *out of doors*] *an open space, market-place, forum*. *Forum Rōmānum*, an open space between the Capitoline and Palatine hills, surrounded by porticos and shops, where the commercial and political life centred.
- fossa, -ae**, f. [*fossus*, *dug*] *ditch, trench*.
- foveō, -āre, fōvi, fōtum**, v. tr. *warm; favor, assist, support*.
- fabricō** [*fabrica*, *workshop*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make, build, construct*.
- fragor, -ōris**, m. [✓ *FRAG-*, *break*] *crash, noise, thunder*.
- frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum**, v. tr. *break*.
- frāter, frātris**, m. *brother*.
- fretum, -i**, n. *strait, sound*.
- frigus, -oris**, n. *cold*.
- frōns, frontis**, m. *forehead; front; & fronte, in front*.
- fructus, -ūs**, m. [cf. *fruo*, *enjoy*] *enjoyment; produce, crops, fruit*.
- frūmentārius, -a, -um**, adj. [*frūmentum*, *corn*] of *corn, fertile in corn; & frūmentāria, corn, supply of corn, provisions*.
- frūmentum, -i**, n. [cf. *fruo*, *enjoy*] *corn, grain*.

fruor, frui, fructus sum, dep. v. with abl. *delight in, enjoy*.

frustrā, adv. [cf. *fraus, deception*] *in error; in vain*.

fuga, -ae, f. [√ FVG-, *flee*] *flight*.

fugio [√ FVG-, *flee*], **fugere, fugi, fugitūrus**, v. intr. *flee, take flight*.

fugio [fuga, *flight*], **-āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr. *put to flight, rout*.

fulmen, -inis, n. *lightning*.

futūrum esse, fut. inf. of **sum**.

Fulvius, -i, m. *Aulus Fulvius*, one of Catiline's followers.

fundō [√ FVD-, *pour*], **-ere, fudi, fūsum**, v. tr. *pour; scatter, rout*.

fungor, fungi, functus sum, dep. v. with abl. *busy oneself, be engaged in, perform*.

fūnus, -eris, n. *burial, funeral*.

furor, -ōris, m. [furō, *rage*] *rage, passion, madness, fury*.

G

Gādēs, -ium, f. *Gades*, a town in southern part of Spain, now *Cádiz*.

Gāius, -i, m. praenomen of Julius Caesar.

Gallia, -ae, f. *GAUL*, which included the country that is now France, Belgium, Holland, and the western parts of Germany and Switzerland.

Gallus, -i, m. a *GAUL*.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj. of *GAUL*, *Gallie*.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvissus sum, semi-dep. v. tr. *be glad, rejoice*.

gaudium, -i, n. [cf. *gaudeō, rejoice*] *joy, delight*.

geminus, -a, -um, adj. *twin-born*; as a subst. plur. **geminī, -ōrum**, *twins*.

Genāva, -ae, f. *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges on the shores of Lake Lemmannus.

gener, -erī, m. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *son-in-law, daughter's husband*.

genitus, -a, -um, perf. pass. part. of **gignō**, *born*.

gēns, gentis, f. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *race, family, people, nation*.

genus, -eris, n. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *race, family; rank; class, kind, order*.

Germānus, -i, m. a *GERMAN*.

gerō [√ GES-, *carry*], **gerere, gessi, gestum**, v. tr. *carry, bear, wear; bel-lum gerere, manage, wage a war; sū gerere, bear oneself, act, behave*.

gignō [√ GEN-, *beget*], **-ere, genui, genitum**, v. intr. *beget, bear*.

gladius, -i, m. *sword*.

glōria, -ae, f. *GLORY, fame, renown, honor*.

Graecia, -ae, f. *GREECE*.

Graecus, -i, m. a *GREEK*.

grānum, -i, n. *grain, seed*.

graphium, -i, n. *writing-style, pen*.

grātia, -ae, f. [grātus, *pleasing*] *favor, regard; thanks, gratitude; influence, honor*.

grātiā [abl. of preceding], *for the sake of*.

grētus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, pleasing, pleasant, agreeable, GRATEFUL, thankful*.

gravis, -is, -e, adj. *heavy, severe, earnest, bitter, GRAVE*.

graviter, adv. [gravis, *heavy*] *heavily, severely, vehemently*.

gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernō, *steer*] *steersman, helmsman*.

H

habeō [√ HAB-, *hold*], **-ēre, -ui, -itum**, v. tr. *have, hold, keep*.

habitō [freq. of *habeō, hold*], **-āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. intr. and tr. *dwelt, live, inhabit*.

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal*, a great general of Carthage, who came near overthrowing Rome in the Second Punic War.

haruspex, -icis, m. *haruspex, sooth-sayer*.

hasta, -ae, f. *staff, spear*.

haud, adv. *not, not at all*; in good prose only with adjectives and adverbs.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. a **HELVETIAN**, a Celtic tribe living between Jura, Lacus Lemannus, Rhodanus and Rhenus, and divided into four cantons.

Herculēs, -is, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, the god of strength.

heri, adv. *yesterday*.

hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f. *heir*.

Hermēs, -ae, m. *Hermes*, bust of *Hermes*, which was placed on a square pillar before the doors of Athenian houses in honor of the god.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl. [**hiems**, *winter*] *winter-quarters*.

hic, adv. *in this place, here, hereupon*.

hic, **haec**, **hōc**, gen. **hūius**, dem. pron. *this, this of mine*; as a pers. pron. *he, she, it*, pl. *they*.

hiems, -emis, f. *winter, winter-time, storm*.

hinc, adv. *from this place, hence*.

Hispania, -ae, f. *Spain*.

historia, -ae, f. *history*.

hodiē, adv. [**hōc diē**, *on this day*] *to-day*.

homō, -inis, m. and f. *human being, person, man*.

honestū, adv. [**honestus**, *honorable*] *honorably*.

honor, -ōris, m. *honor, esteem*; *public office*.

hōra, -ae, f. *hour*.

Horātius, -i, m. *Horatius*, name of a Roman gens. See **Cocles**.

Horātius, -i, m. *Horace*, a great Roman poet.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. tr. *urge, encourage, exhort*.

hortus, -i, m. *garden*.

hospes, -itis, m. [cf. **hostis**, *stranger, enemy*] *entertainer, host*.

Hostilius, -i, m. *Hostilius*, name of a

Roman gens: *Tullius Hostilius*, third king of Rome.

hostis, -is, m. and f. *stranger, foreigner, enemy*.

hūc, adv. *hither*.

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. [**hūmānus**, *human*] *human nature; kindness; culture, refinement*.

humī [loc. of **humus**, *ground*], *on the ground*.

humilis, -is, -e, adj. [**humus**, *ground*] *low, lowly; small; base, mean*.

I

iaceō [✓ **IAC**, *go, send*], -ēre, -ui, —, v. Intr. *be thrown, lie*.

iaciō [✓ **IAC**, *go, send*], -ere, **iaci**, **iac-tum**, v. tr. *throw, cast, hurl*.

iacōtātiō, -ōnis, f. [**iacō**, *throw*] *lossing, shaking motion*.

iacō [freq. of **iaciō**], -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. tr. *throw, cast, hurl*.

iam, adv. *already, now, at last*: **nōn iam**, *no longer*.

Iāniculum, -i, n. [**Iānus**] *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome, on which the mythical temple of Ianus was situated.

ibi, adv. [**is**] *in that place, there*.

[**icō**, **icere**], **icī**, **ictum**, pres. system rare: v. tr. *strike, hit*: with **foedus**, *make a treaty*.

ictus, -a, -um, part. of **icō**.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, demon. pron. *same*: likewise, also.

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, proper, suitable, apt, convenient*.

Idūs, **Iduum**, f. *Ides*, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October, but the 13th of the other months.

igitur, conj. (rarely first word of a clause) *therefore, then, accordingly*.

ignāvia, -ae, f. [**ignāvus**, *idle*] *idleness, worthlessness, sloth, cowardice*.

ignis, -is, m. *fire*.

ignōrō [* **ignārus**, *ignorant*, from

✓ GNO-, *know*]. -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. tr. *not know, be ignorant of*.
 ignōscō [in, *not* + (g)nōscō, *know*], -ere, -nōvi, -nōtum, v. intr. *pardon, forgive, indulge*.
 ignōtus, -a, -um, *unknown*.
 ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. *that (yonder)*: as pers. pron. *he, she, it*.
 imāgō, -inis, f. [cf. *imitor, imitate*] *imitation, likeness, statue*.
 imbellis, -is, -e, adj. [in-, *not* + bellum, *war*] *unwarlike*.
 imber, -bris, m. *rain, shower, violent rain*.
 immēnsus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not* + mēnsus, *measured*] *not to be measured, immense*.
 immortalis, -is, -e, adj. [in, *not* + mortālis, *mortal*] *not mortal, immortal*.
 immōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not* + mōtus, *moved*] *not moved, undisturbed, unmoved*.
 impatiēns, -entis, adj. [in, *not* + patiēns, *suffering*] *not suffering, impatient*.
 impedimentum, -i, n. [impediō, *hinder*] *that which hinders, impediment; pl. baggage*.
 impediō [in, int. + pēs, *foot*], -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr. *entangle; hinder, prevent*.
 impēnsa, -ae, f. *expenditure, outlay*.
 imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, *command*] *commander, general*.
 imperfectus, -a, -um, adj. *unfinished*.
 imperium, -i, n. [imperō, *command*] *command, rule, power*.
 imperō [in, upon + parō, *put*], -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. intr. with dat. *put upon, command, order, rule; levy*.
 impetrō, -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. tr. *obtain, get, gain*.
 impetus, -ūs, m. [in, *against* + petō, *strike*] *a striving against; attack, assault*.
 impius, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not* + pius,

dutiful, pious] *undutiful, unpatriotic, wicked*.
 impōnō [in, upon + pōnō, *put*], -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr. *put or place upon; mount, put; IMPOSE*.
 impositus, -a, -um, part. of impōnō.
 imprimis, adv. [in, in + primus, *first*] *especially*.
 improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not* + probus, *good*] *not good, wicked*.
 impūgnō [in, *against* + pūgnō, *fight*], -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. tr. *attack, oppose*.
 imus, lowest, superl. of inferus.
 in, prep. with acc. or abl. With acc. 1, after verbs of motion, *into, in, upon; against, towards*; 2, of purpose, *for, in order to*; with abl. 1, of place, *in, within, on, over*; 2, of time, *in, during, at*.
 incendium, -i, n. [in, *to* + ✓ CAND-, *glow*] *flame, fire, conflagration*.
 incendō [in, *into* + ✓ CAND-, *glow*], -ere, -ndi, -cēsum *set fire to, burn; rouse, incite*.
 inceptum, -i, n. [part. of incipiō, *begin*] *beginning, attempt; undertaking*.
 incertus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not* + certus, *certain*], *uncertain*.
 incidiō [in, in, on + cadō, *fall*], -ere, -cidi, —, v. intr. *fall in; arise, come upon; happen*.
 incitō [in, on + citō, *urge*], -āre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. tr. *urge on, spur on, incite*.
 incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō, *inhabit*] *inhabitant*.
 incolō [in, in + colō, *live, dwell*], -ere, -ui, —, *be at home, dwell*.
 incolumis, -is, -e, adj. *sound, uninjured, safe, unharmed*.
 incredibilis, -is, -e, adj. [in, *not* + credibilis, *to be believed*] *not to be believed, INCREDIBLE*.
 inrepō [in, intens. + crepō, *rattle*], -āre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *make resound, crash, chide, rebuke, scold*.

- incumbō** [in, upon + *cumbō, *lie*], -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, v. intr. *lean upon; exert oneself; attend to*.
- indiciū**, -i, n. [in, to + √ DIC-, *point*] *notice, information, sign*.
- indico** [index, *one who points out*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *point out, show, inform, indicate*.
- indico** [in, to + dico, *say*] -ere, -dixi, -dictum, v. tr. *declare publicly, announce, pronounce, appoint: bellum indicere, declare war against*.
- indignor** [indignus, *unworthy*], -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep. *deem unworthy; be indignant at, be angered at*.
- indignus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, not + dignus, *worthy*] *unworthy, unbecoming, undeserving*.
- indō** [in, into, on + √ DA-, *put*], -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. *put into; give, confer*.
- indolēs**, -is, f. [indu (= in), in + √ OL-, *grow*] *inborn quality, nature, disposition, character*.
- indulgeō**, -āre, -dulsei, (-dultum), v. intr. with dat. *be kind to, yield, INDULGE*.
- industria**, -ae, f. [industrius, *active*] *diligence, industry, zeal*.
- ineō** [in, upon + eō, *go*], -ire, -ivi (-it), -itum, v. intr. *enter upon, enter, go into*.
- inferior**, -or, -ius, adj. [comp. of inferus] *lower, INFERIOR*.
- inferō** [in, to, against + ferō, *bear*], -ferre, -tulī, inlātum or illātum, v. tr. *bring in, bring against: bellum inferre, make war upon, with dat.: sē inferre, betake oneself, go*.
- inferus**, -a, -um, adj. *below, beneath, lower: comp. inferior: superl. infimus or imus*.
- infestō** [infestus, *disturbed*], -āre, —, —, v. tr. *make unsafe, annoy, disturb*.
- infestus**, -a, -um, adj. *made unsafe, disturbed, hostile*.
- infimus**, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of inferus] *lowest*.
- informō** [in, to + formō, *give shape*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *shape, fashion; inform, instruct*.
- infrēnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *bridle*.
- ingemō** [in, at + gemō, *groan*], -ere, -ui, —, v. intr. *groan at, mourn, lament*.
- ingenium**, -i, n. [in, in + √ GEN-, *beget*] *nature, innate quality, disposition, talent*.
- ingēns**, -ēns, -ēns, gen. -entis, adj. [in, not + √ GEN-, *beget*] *not natural; very great, vast, huge, enormous*.
- iniciō** [in, into + iacio, *throw*], -ere, -ieci, -iectum, v. tr. *throw into; apply; seize; inspire; inject*.
- inimicitia**, -ae, f. [inimicus, *unfriendly*] *unfriendliness, enmity, hostility*.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, not + amicus, *friendly*] *unfriendly, hostile: as a subst. personal foe, enemy*.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, not + aequus, *just*] *unjust, wrong*.
- initium**, -i, n. [in, upon + √ I-, *go*] *a going in, entrance; beginning*.
- iniūria**, -ae, f. [in, against + iūs, *right*] *injustice, wrong, insult, injury*.
- inlātus**, part. of inferō.
- innixus**, -a, -um [part. of innitor, *lean upon*], *leaning upon, supporting oneself by*.
- innumerābilis**, -is, -e, adj. [in, not + numerābilis, *to be numbered*] *not to be numbered, countless, innumerable*.
- inopia**, -ae, f. [inops, *needy*] *want, famine, need, poverty*.
- inopinātus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, not + opinātus, *supposed*] *unexpected*.
- inquit** (placed after one or more words), *said he, says he*.
- inrideo** [in, at + rideō, *laugh*], -āre, -risi, -risum, v. tr. *laugh at, joke, jeer, ridicule*.
- inruō** [in, against + ruō, *rush*], -ere, -ui, —, v. intr. *rush in, rush upon, make an attack*.
- inscientia**, -ae, f. [insciō, *not know*] *ignorance, want of knowledge*.

inscius, -a, -um, adj. [cf. *insciō*, not know] not knowing, ignorant, unaware.

insidiae, -arum, f. *ambush, snares.*

insideō [in, on + *sedeō*, sit], -ēre, -sēdī, —, v. tr. sit upon, encamp on.

insidiōr [*insidiae*, ambush], -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. intr. with dat. lie in ambush, lie in wait for.

insigne, -is, n. mark, proof; standard; honor.

insignis, -is, -e, gen. -is [in, upon + *signum*, sign, mark], distinguished by a mark, eminent, distinguished, splendid.

insolenter, adv. [*insolēns*, unusual] unusually, insolently, arrogantly.

instituō [in, into + *statuō*, place], -ere, -nī, -ūtum, v. tr. fix, found, train.

instruō [in, on + *struō*, build], -ere, -xī, -ctum, v. tr. build on, fit out, draw up, furnish.

insuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *insuēscō*, be unaccustomed] unaccustomed, unusual, inexperienced.

insula, -ae, f. island, isle.

insum [in, in, among + *sum*, am], -esse, -fui, v. intr. be in, be among, with dat.

intelleō [inter, between + *legō*, choose], -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, v. tr. perceive, understand.

inter, prep. with acc. among, amid, between.

intercalārius, -a, -um, adj. *intercalary.*

intercalō [inter, between + *calō*, call], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. intercalate, insert in the calendar.

interdicō [inter, between + *dicō*, speak], -ere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr. forbid, interdict.

interēā, adv. [inter, among + *ea*, these things] meanwhile.

interfector, -ōris, m. [*interficiō*, kill] slayer.

interficiō [inter, between + *faciō*, make], -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr. put out of the way, kill, destroy.

interim, adv. in the meantime, meanwhile.

interimō [inter, within + *emō*, take], -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, v. tr. take from within, abolish, kill.

interitus, -ūs, m. [inter, among + *√I-*, go] overthrow, destruction, death.

interrogō [inter, among + *rogō*, ask], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. ask, inquire, question.

interrumpō [inter, between + *rumpō*, break], -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr. break apart, break in pieces, destroy.

intersum [inter, between, among + *sum*, am], -esse, -fui, -futurus, v. intr. with dat. be between, be among, be present.

intumescō [in, intens. + *tumescō*, begin to swell], -ere, -mui, —, v. intr. rise, swell up, rage.

invādō [in, into + *vādō*, go], -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, v. intr. go into, attack, invade.

invehō [in, in + *vehō*, carry], -ere, -vēxī, -vectum, v. tr. carry in; pass. ride in, sail in.

invidēō [in, at + *videō*, look], -ēre, -visī, -visum, v. intr. with dat. look askance at; envy, hate, judge.

invidia, -ae, f. [*invidus*, envious] envy, jealousy, ill-will, unpopularity.

invitus, -a, -um, adj. against the will, unwilling.

iocus, -ī, m. play, joke.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demon. adj. and pron. that or this very (person); self, in person; he, she, it; himself, herself, itself.

ira, -ae, f. wrath, anger, passion.

irātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of *irāscor*, be angry] angered, in anger, angry.

is, ea, id, demon. pron. that: as pers. pron. he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron. that (of yours): as pers. pron. he, she, it.

ita, adv. in this manner, so: *nōn ita*, not so, not thus.

Italia, -ae, f. *Italy*.

itaque, conj. [ita, thus + que, and] and so, and thus, accordingly.

iter, **itineris**, n. [√ I-, go] a going, journey, march, road, way: **ex itinere**, on the march.

Iuba, -ae, m. *Juba*, a king of Numidia.

iubeō, -ēre, **iūssi**, **iūssum**, v. tr. order, command, urge.

iucundus, -a, -um, adj. pleasant, agreeable, delightful.

iudex, -icis, m. and f. [iūs, right, law + √ DIC-, point out] judge, juror.

iudicium, -i, n. [iudex, judge] judgment, trial; court.

iudicō [iudex, judge], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. judge; deem, consider; declare, proclaim.

iugulum, -i, n. throat, neck.

iugum, -i, n. [√ IUG-, bind] that which binds together, a yoke; ridge.

Iulia, -ae, f. *Julia*.

Iulius, -i, m. *Julius*, the name of a famous Roman gens, to which *Caius Julius Caesar* belonged.

iungō [√ IUG-, bind], -ere, **iūxi**, **iūctum**, v. tr. bind together, unite, yoke.

iunior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of *iuvenis*, young] younger.

Iuppiter, **Iovis**, **Iovem**, **Iove**, m. [√ DIV-, shine + pater, father] *Jupiter*, the son of *Saturnus*, the supreme god.

iūs, **iūris**, n. [√ IV-, bind] that which is binding, law, right, justice.

iusiurandum, **iurisiurandi**, n. [iūs, right + iūrō, swear] oath.

iustitia, -ae, f. [iustus, just] justice, equity.

iuvenis, -is, m. and f. young person, youth.

L

labor, -ōris, m. [cf. **labōrō**, toil] toil, LABOR.

labōriōsus, adv. [labōriōsus, toilsome] industriously.

labōrō [cf. labor, toil], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. work, toil, suffer, LABOR.

lao, **lactis**, n. milk.

lacerō [lacer, mangled], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. mangle; tear in pieces; wreck, slander, abuse.

laetus, -a, -um, adj. glad, merry, cheerful, pleasing.

laeva, -ae, f. [laevus, left, sc. manus] left hand.

lambō, -ere, —, —, v. tr. lick.

lapis, -idis, m. stone.

Larentia, -ae, f. *Acca Larentia*, wife of *Faustulus*, the king's shepherd who found *Romulus* and *Remus*.

latebra, -ae, f. [cf. lateō, hide], hiding-place.

lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, v. intr. lurk, lie hid.

lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide] width, latitude.

latrātus, -ūs, m. [latrō, bark], a barking, a bark.

latrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. bark, bark at.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. wide, broad.

latus, -eris, n. side, plank.

laudō [laus, praise], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. praise, laud, commend.

laurea, -ae, f. the laurel tree, laurel crown, bay wreath.

laus, **laudis**, f. [cf. laudō, praise] praise, commendation, fame, glory.

lectica, -ae, f. [lectus, couch] litter.

lēgātīō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, send with a commission] embassy, legation.

lēgātus, -i, m. [lēgō, send with a commission] ambassador, lieutenant.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, gather] a gathering, body of soldiers, legion.

legō [√ LEG-, gather], -ere, **lēgi**, **lēctum**, v. tr. gather, collect; choose, appoint.

Lentulus, -i, m. *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus*, son-in-law of *Cicero*.

lentus, -a, -um, adj. [lēnis, soft] pliant, slow.

lēs, -ōnis, m. *lion*.
 lēx, lēgis, f. *law, bill, condition*.
 liber, -er, m. [libens, willing] *willingly, cheerfully, gladly*.
 liber, libri, m. *book*.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj. *free*.
 liberi, -orum, m. [liber, free] *free persons; children*.
 liberō [liber, free], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *free, liberate*.
 libertās, -ātis, f. [liber, free] *freedom, liberty*.
 libertus, -i, m. [liber, free] *a freedman*.
 licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. v. *it is permitted, it is allowed; one may*.
 ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum, wood] *wooden, made of wood*.
 lineamentum, -i, n. [linea, string] *line, mark; feature, lineament*.
 lingua, -ae, f. *tongue; language*.
 littera, -ae, f. *letter (of the alphabet); pl. litterae, -arum, f. letter, epistle; literature*.
 litus, -oris, n. *shore*.
 locus, -i, m. pl. loci and loca, *place, spot, position*.
 longē, adv. [longus, long] *far, far off; by far*.
 longus, -a, -um, adv. *long*.
 loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, dep. v. intr. *speak, talk*.
 lūctus, -ūs, m. [cf. lūgēō, mourn] *sorrow, grief, mourning, distress*.
 lūcus, -i, m. [✓ LVC-, shine] *sacred grove; wood, grove*.
 lūdibrium, -i, n. [lūdus, play] *mockery, derision*.
 (lūdicer), -era, -erum, adj. [lūdus, play] *belonging to play, done in sport, sportive*.
 lūdō [cf. lūdus, play], -ere, lūsi, lūsum, v. intr. *play*.
 lūdus, -i, m. *play, game; school; pl. public games*.

lūgēō, -ēre, lūxi, lūctum, v. tr. *lament, bewail, mourn*.
 lūmen, -inis, n. [✓ LVC-, shine] *light*.
 lūna, -ae, f. [✓ LVC-, shine] *moon*.
 lupa, -ae, f. [cf. lupus, wolf] *she-wolf*.
 lupus, -i, m. [cf. lupa, she-wolf] *wolf*.
 lūstrō [lūstrum, purification], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *light up, review*.
 lūx, lūcis, f. [✓ LVC-, shine] *light; day, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak*.
 lūxuria, -ae, f. [lūxus] *luxuriance; luxury, extravagance*.

M

Macedonia, -ae, Macedonia, a country north of Greece.
 maestus, -a, -um, adj. *sad, sorrowful, gloomy*.
 magis, adv. [cf. magnus, great] *more, rather*.
 magister, -tri, m. *master, teacher, commander*.
 magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, master] *office of master, civil office, magistracy; magistrature*.
 magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great] *greatness, size, magnitude*.
 magnopere, adv. [abl. of magnum opus, great work] *very much, greatly, exceedingly*.
 magnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large; comp. maior; superl. maximus*.
 maior, -or, -ius, gen. -ōris [comp. of magnus], *greater, larger*.
 male, adv. [malus, bad] *badly, wrongly, unsuccessfully; comp. peius; superl. pessimē*.
 mālō [magis, rather + volō, wish], māllo, mālui, —, v. tr. *wish rather, choose rather, prefer*.
 malum, -i, n. [malus, bad] *bad thing, evil*.
 malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil, not good; comp. peior; sup. pessimus*.
 mandō [manus, hand + ✓ DA-, put],

- āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *put in hand, order, command.*
- manēō [√ MAN-, *stay*], -ēre, mānsi, mānsum, v. intr. *stay, remain, wait.*
- manō, -āre, -āvi, —, v. intr. *flow, run; spread.*
- manus, -ūs, f. [√ MA-, *measure*] *hand; band, force, troops.*
- mare, -is, n. *sea.*
- Mare Superum, *the Upper Sea.*
- Marius, -i, m. *Marius.*
- Mars, Mārtis, m. *Mars, the god of war; war, battle.*
- Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars, of March.*
- māter, -tris, f. *mother.*
- mātrimōnium, -i, n. [māter, *mother*] *wedlock, marriage: in mātrimōnium dūcere, lead in marriage, marry: in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage, marry.*
- mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter, *mother*] *married woman, wife, mother, MATRON.*
- mātūrō [mātūrus, *timely*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *ripen; make haste, hasten.*
- mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. *mature, ripe, timely, seasonable, proper.*
- māximē, adv. [māximus, *greatest*] *most, greatly, especially.*
- māximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of māgnus] *greatest, largest.*
- medicīna, -ae, f. [medicus, *physician*] *the art of healing, medicine.*
- medicus, -i, m. *physician, surgeon.*
- meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *consider, plan, devise.*
- melior, -or, -ius, adj. comp. of bonus, *better.*
- memini, -isse [√ MAN-, MEN-, *mind*], only used in the perfect tenses, *recall, call to mind, recollect, call to mind.*
- memorābilis, -is, -e, adj. [memor, *mindful*] *memorable, noteworthy.*
- memoria, -ae, f. [memor, *mindful*] *MEMORY, remembrance.*
- mēns, mentis, f. [√ MAN-, MEN-, *mind*] *mind, feeling, plan.*
- mēnsa, -ae, f. [from mēnsus, part. of metior, from √ MA-, *measure*] *table.*
- mēnsis, -is, m. [√ MA-, *measure*] *month.*
- mentior, -ārī, -itus sum, dep. v. intr. *lie, tell a lie.*
- mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, *trade*] *MERCHANT, trader.*
- Mercurius, -i, m. *MERCURY, the messenger of the gods.*
- mereō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *deserve, earn, win, MERIT.*
- mergō, -ere, mersi, mersum, v. tr. *plunge, sink.*
- merx, -cis, f. *goods, wares.*
- metuō [metus, *fear*], -ere, -ui, —, v. tr. *fear, dread.*
- meus, -a, -um, posse. adj. [mē, *me*] *of me, my, mine.*
- miles, -itis, m. and f. *soldier.*
- Mīlētus, -i, f. *Miletus, a city of Ionia in Asia Minor.*
- mīliēns, *a thousand times.*
- mīlitāris, -is, -e, adj. [mīles, *soldier*] *of a soldier, of war: res mīlitāris, art of war.*
- mīlitia, -ae, f. [mīles, *soldier*] *military service: mīlitiae (loc. gen.), in war, in the field.*
- Memmius, -i, m. *Caius Memmius Germellus, a famous Roman.*
- mille, num. adj. indecl. in sing.; pl. mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, n. *thousand.*
- Miltiadēs, -is, m. *Miltiades, a famous Greek general, who defeated the Persians at the battle of Marathon.*
- minimē, adj. [sup. of parum, *little*] *least, least of all, very little; by no means, not at all.*
- minimus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of parvus, *small*] *smallest, least.*
- minitor [freq. of minor, *threaten*], -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *threaten, menace.*
- minor, -or, -us, gen. -ōris, adj. [comp. of parvus, *small*] *smaller.*
- minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. *threaten.*

mirābilis, -is, -e, adj. [*miror, wonder at*] *wonderful, strange, marvellous.*

mirificus, -a, -um, adj. [*mirus, wonderful + √ FAC-, make*] *wonderful, marvellous.*

miror [*mirus, wonderful*], **-āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr.** *wonder, wonder at, admire.*

mirus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. *miror*] *wonderful, marvellous, amazing.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, MISERABLE.*

miseret [*miser, wretched*], **-ēre, -uit, -itum est, impers. v. it** *grieves, makes miserable.*

missiō, -ōnis, f. [*mittō, send*] *sending; release, discharge.*

mitēsco, -ere [*mitis, mild*], **v. intr.** *become mild or mellow, grow gentle.*

Mithridātes, -is, m. *Mithridates, king of Pontus.*

mittō [*√ MIT-, send*], **-ere, misi, missum, v. tr.** *send, let go.*

Mitylēnae, -arum, f. *Mitylene, a city of Greece.*

moderātiō, -ōnis, f. [*moderor, set bounds to*] *moderation, self-control.*

mōdo, adv. [abl. of *modus, measure*] *only, merely: modo... modo, sometimes... sometimes.*

modus, -i, m. *measure, manner, mode.*

moenia, -ium, n. pl. [*√ MV-, shut*] *defensive walls, city walls, walls.*

molestia, -ae, f. [*molestus, troublesome*] *trouble, annoyance, vexation.*

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [*mōlē, mass*] *troublesome, annoying.*

mōlior [*mōlē, mass*], **-iri, -itus sum, dep. v. tr.** *endeavor, do, undertake.*

Molō, -ōnis, m. *Apollonius Molo, of Rhodes, a celebrated Greek rhetorician.*

mōmentum, -i, n. [*√ MOV-, move*] *movement; moment, instant.*

moneō [*√ MAN-, mind*], **-ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr.** *remind, advise, warn.*

mōns, montis, m. [*√ MAN-, project*] *MOUNTAIN.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *show, point out.*

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

morbus, -i, m. *sickness, disease.*

morior [*√ MAR-, die*], **moriri and mori, mortuus sum, dep. v. intr.** *die.*

moror [*mora, delay*], **-āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. and intr.** *delay, remain, retard, detain.*

mors, mortis, f. [*√ MAR-, die*] *death.*

mōs, mōris, m. [*√ MA-, measure*] *manner, habit, custom; conduct, character.*

mortuus, from morior.

moveō [*√ MOV-, move*], **-ēre, mōvi, mōtum, v. tr.** *move, remove.*

mox, adv. *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman.*

multiplex, -icis, adj. [*multus, many + √ PLEC-, fold*] *manifold, many.*

multitūdō, -inis, f. [*multus, much*] *great number, crowd, multitude.*

multō, adv. [abl. of *multum, much*] *by much, much, a great deal.*

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much, pl. many: comp. plūs; superl. plūrimus.*

mundus, -i, m. *world; heavens.*

mūniō [*moenia, defensive walls*], **-ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.** *defend with a wall, fortify; build.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [*mūniō, defend with a wall*] *a fortifying; defence, fortification.*

munus, -eris, n. [*√ MV-, fasten*] *service, office, duty; reward, gift.*

mūrus, -i, m. [*√ MV-, shut, fasten*] *wall, city wall.*

mūtō [freq. of *moveō, move*], **-āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.** *move often; change, alter.*

N

nam, conj. *for.*

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus or nactus sum, dep. v. tr. *get, find, meet with.*

nārrō [√ GNA-, *know*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make known, tell, say*.

nāscor [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*], **nāsoi**, **nātus** sum, dep. v. intr. *be born, spring from, arise*.

nāsus, -i, m. a *nose*.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **nātus**, *birth*] a *being born*; *race, nation*.

nātū [abl. of **nātus**], *by birth*; *in age*.

nātūra, -ae, f. [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*] *birth*; *NATURE*.

(**nātus**, -ūs), m. used only in abl. sing. [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*] *birth, age*.

naufragium, -i, n. [**nāvis**, *ship* + √ FRAG-, *break*] *shipwreck*.

nauta, -ae, m. [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**, *ship*] *sailor*.

nāvicula, -ae, f. [**nāvis**, *ship*] a *small vessel, boat, skiff*.

nāvigium, -i, n. [**nāvis**, *ship*] *vessel, ship, boat*.

nāvis, -is, f. *ship*.

nē, neg. conj. of purpose, *that not, lest*; with subjv. in wishes, commands, etc., *not*.

-**ne**, interrog. adv. enclitic: it is not translated and simply asks a question without implying anything as to the answer.

nec, see **neque**.

necessarius, -a, -um, adj. [**necesse**, *necessary*] **NECESSARY**, *needful*.

necessitas, -ātis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*] **NECESSITY**, *need*.

neō [cf. **nox**, *death*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *slay, kill*.

nefās, n. indecl. [**nē**, *not* + **fās**, *divine law*] *something contrary to divine law*; *sin, crime*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *say no, deny, refuse, say not*.

negōtium, -i, n. [**nec**, *not* + **ōtium**, *leisure*] *business, occupation*; *trouble, difficulty*.

nēmō, —, dat. **nēmīni**, acc. **nēmīnem**, gen. and abl. supplied by **nūllus** homi-

nīs and **nūllō** *homine*, m. and f. [**nē**, *not*, **no** + **homō**, *person*] *no one, no man, nobody*.

neque or **nec**, conj. [**nē**, *not* + **que**, *and*] *and not, nor*: **neque** . . . **neque**, *neither* . . . *nor*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, pron. and adj. [**nē**, *not* + **uter**, *either*] *neither the one nor the other, neither*.

nex, **necis**, f. [**neō**, *kill*] *death, murder, slaughter*.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black, dark*.

nihil, n. indecl. [**nē**, *not* + **hīlum**, *a whit*] *nothing*.

nihildum, indecl. n. *nothing as yet*.

nisi, conditional conj. [**nē**, *not* + **si**, *if*] *if not, unless, except*.

nītēns, -ntis, adj. [part. of **niteō**, *shine*] *shining, brilliant*; *illustrious, distinguished*.

nix, **nivis**, f. *snow*.

nō, **nāre**, **nāvi**, —, v. intr. *swim*.

nōbīlis, -is, -e, adj. [√ GNO-, *know*] *well-known, famous*; *high-born, noble*.

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [**nōbīlis**, *known*] *fame*; *nobility, aristocracy*.

noceō [cf. **neō**, *kill*], -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, v. intr. with dat. *harm, hurt, injure*.

noctū, adv. [**nox**, *night*] *by night, at night*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [**nox**, *night*] *at night, nocturnal*.

nōll, **nōllite**, imperat. mood of **nōlō**, used with the infn. of other verbs to represent the neg. imperat. and translated *do not, don't*.

nōlō [**nōn**, *not* + **volō**, *will*], **nōlle**, **nōlui**, —, v. tr. *be unwilling, will not, wish not*.

nōmen, -inis, n. [√ GNO-, *know*] *means of knowing, name*.

nōminō [**nōmen**, *name*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *name, call by name*.

nōn, neg. adv. [**nē**, *not* + **nūm**, *one*] *not, by no means, not at all*.

nōnne, interrog. adv. expecting an affirmative answer, *not*.

nōnnullus, -a, -um, adj. [nōn, *not* + nullus, *none*] *not none, some*.

nōnnumquam, adv. [nōn, *not* + numquam, *never*] *sometimes*.

nōs, pers. pron. pl. of ego, *we, us*.

nōscō [√ GNO-, *know*], -ere, nōvī, nōtum, v. tr. *learn, know*.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, *we*] *our, ours, of us*.

novus, -a, -um, *new, young*: novissimum agmen, *rear line*.

nox, noctis, f. [cf. noceō, *harm*] *night*.

nūbēs, -is, f. [√ NUB-, *cloud*] *cloud*.

nūbō [cf. nūbēs, *cloud*] -ere, nūpī, nūptum, v. intr. with dat. *veil oneself for*; marry, used of the woman.

nullus, -a, -um, gen. nullius, dat. nulli, adj. [nē, *not* + ullus, *any*] *not any, none, no*.

num, interrog. adv. expecting a negative answer: in indirect questions, the neg. force is lost and **num** means simply *whether*.

numerō [numerus, *number*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *count, pay*.

numerus, -i, n. *number, quantity, amount*.

Numida, -ae, m. & NUMIDIAN.

Numidia, -ae, f. *Numidia*, a province of Northern Africa.

Numitor, -ōris, m. *Numitor*, king of Alba Longa, father of Rhea Silvia and grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam, adv. [nē, *not* + umquam, *ever*] *not ever, never*.

nunc, adv. *now, at present, at this time*.

nūntius, -i, m. [cf. nūntiō, *report*] *bearer of news, messenger*.

nūper, adv. [for noviper, from novus, *new*, recent] *newly*; recently, lately.

nūptus and **nūptum**, from nūbō.

nūsquā, adv. [nē, *not* + usquā, *anywhere*] *nowhere, in no place*.

nūtō [nūō, *nod*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *nod, waver*.

0

Ō, interjec. *O! oh!*

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of, for*.

obicīō [ob, *before*. against + iaciō, *throw*], -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr. *throw before, cast before, expose*; set against, oppose.

oblītus, -a, -um, adj. with gen. [part. of obliviscor, *forget*] *forgetful, unmindful*.

obliviscor, **oblivisci**, **oblītus** sum, verb dep. with gen. *forget*.

obnoxius, -a, -um, adj. [ob, *to* + noxius, *hurtful*] *liable, exposed*.

obruō [ob, intens. + ruō, *rush down*], -ere, -ui, -ūtum, v. tr. *rush down violently, overwhelm, cover*; bury; slay, destroy.

obses, -idis, m. and f. [ob, *before* + √ SED-, *sit*] *one who sits as a pledge, hostage*.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. obsideō, *sit before*] *siege, blockade*.

obstistō [ob, *against* + sistō, *stand*], -ere, -stiti, -stitum, v. intr. with dat. *oppose, resist*.

obstupefaciō [ob, *before* + stupefaciō, *astonish*], -facere, -fēcī, -factum, v. tr. *astonish, amaze, stupefy*.

obsum [ob, *against* + sum, *am*], -esse, -ui, —, v. intr. with dat. *be against, be opposed to*; injure.

obtinēō [ob, *before* + teneō, *hold*], -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr. *hold before*; OBTAIN; keep.

obtingō [ob, *to* + tangō, *touch*], -ere, -igi, —, v. intr. *fall to the lot of, befall*.

obtreator, -ōris, m. [obtreorō, *belittle*] *detractor, disparager, traducer*.

obveniō [ob, *before* + veniō, *come*], -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. intr. with dat. *come before, fall by lot*.

obviam, adv. [ob viam, *in the way*] *in the way*; towards: obviam eō, *go to meet*.

obvolvō, -a, -um, adj. [part. of obvolvō, *roll around*] *covered, wrapped up*.

obvolvō [ob, completely + volvō, roll], -ae, -vi, -volūtum, v. tr. roll around, cover, wrap up.

occāsio, -ōnis, f. [ob, to + √ CAD-, fall] favorable moment, occasion.

occidō [ob, down + caedō, strike], -ere, -cidi, -cisum, v. tr. strike down, cut down, kill.

occupō [ob, intens. completely + √ CAP-, take], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. take completely, seize, OCCUPY.

oceānus, -i, m. OCEAN.

octō, num. adj. eight.

oculus, -i, m. [√ AC-, sharp] eye.

odium, -i, n. hatred, hate, aversion.

offendō [ob, against + *fendō, strike], -ere, -ndi, -nsium, v. tr. strike against, OFFEND, displease.

offerō [ob, before + ferō, bear], -ferre, -obtulī, -oblātum, v. tr. bear before, present, show, OFFER.

officiū, -i, n. [for opificiū, from opus, work + √ FAC-, do] service, kindness, duty, business.

olim, adv. at that time, formerly, once, once upon a time.

omnis, -is, -e, adj. all, every, whole.

opera, -ae, f. [opus, work] service, work, assistance: **operam dare**, give attention to.

oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, impers. v. it is necessary, is proper, behooves.

oppidānus, -i, m. [oppidum, town] townsman.

oppidum, -i, n. [ob, on + *pedum (cf. Gr. πῆδον), ground] town, city.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. [ob, before + *portūnus, from portus, harbor] fit, suitable, favorable, OPPORTUNE.

oppositus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of oppōnō, set against] opposed, OPPOSITE.

opprimō [ob, down + premō, press], -ere, -pressi, -pressum, v. tr. press down; overthrow, crash.

oppugnō [ob, against + pugnō, fight], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. fight against, storm, besiege.

(ops), opis, f. (no nom. or dat. sing.) aid, power, influence.

optimās, -ātis, f. [optimus, best] aristocrat, patrician.

optimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of bonus] best.

optiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. optō, choose] choice.

optō, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. choose, prefer; wish, pray for.

opus, -eris, n. work, labor; need, want.

orātiō, -ōnis, f. [orō, speak] speaking, speech, oration.

orātor, -ōris, m. [orō, speak] one who speaks, orator.

orbis, -is, m. circle, orb: **orbis terrarum**, earth, world.

ordinō [ordō, row, line], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. set in order, arrange.

ordō, -inis, m. [√ OL-, √ OR-, grow] row, line, order, rank.

Orgetorix, -igis, m. *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian noble.

orior [√ OL-, √ OR-, grow, rise], -iri, **ortus sum**, dep. v. intr. arise, rise, start, begin.

ornāmentum, -i, n. [ornō, fit out] that which adorns, jewel, ornament.

ornātus, -a, -um, adj. [ornō, fit out] fitted out, adorned, decorated; eminent, illustrious.

ornō, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. fit out, adorn, furnish.

orō [ōs, mouth], -āre, -avi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. speak; plead, pray, beg.

ōs, **ōris**, n. mouth; face, features.

ostendō [ob(s), before + tendō, stretch], -ere, -di, -tum, v. tr. stretch out before, show, display.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [ōtium, leisure] full of leisure, at leisure, disengaged, free from public cares.

ōtium, -i, n. [√ AV-, delight] leisure, freedom from business; ease, rest.

P

paene, adv. *almost, nearly.*

paenitē [cf. *poena, penalty*], -āre, -ui, —, *make sorry*; used impersonally, *it repents, dissatisfies.*

pāgus, -i, m. *a district, canton.*

palam, adv. *openly, plainly, publicly.*

pālūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh, pool.*

pār, **paris**, adj. *equal, like, well-matched.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. with dat. or *ad* and acc. [part. of **parō**, *prepare*] *prepared, ready.*

parō, -āre, **peperci** or **parci**, **parsum**, v. intr. with dat. *spare.*

parous, -a, -um, adj. *sparing, frugal.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of **pariō**, *beget*] *parent, father, mother.*

parō, -āre, -ui, —, v. intr. with dat. *appear*; *obey, be subject to.*

pariter, adv. *equally, alike.*

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ētum, v. tr. *make ready, prepare, plan.*

parrioidium, -i, n. [**parrioida**, *a parricide*] *murder of a father, parricide.*

pars, **partis**, f. *part, piece, share.*

Parthi, -ōrum, m. *Parthians, a people living south of the Caspian Sea.*

parvulus, adj. dim. [**parvus**, *small*] *very small*; as subst. *infant.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little, short*; comp. *minor*; superl. *minimus.*

passus, -ūs, m. [**pateō**, *stretch*] *step, pace*; *mille passus*, *thousand paces, mile.*

passus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **pandō**, *spread out*] *outspread, extended*; *disseminated.*

pāstor, -ōris, m. [✓ **PA**-, *feed*] *one who feeds*; *herdsman, shepherd.*

patefaciō [**pateō**, *lie open* + **faciō**, *make*], -āre, -feci, -factum, v. tr. *lay open, disclose, expose.*

pater, **patria**, m. [✓ **PA**-, *feed*], *one who feeds*; *father*; pl. *senators.*

paternus, -a, -um, adj. [**pater**, *father*] *of a father*; *paternal.*

patiēns, -ntis, adj. [part. of **patior**] *suffering, enduring, capable of enduring, PATIENT.*

patienter, adv. [**patiēns**, *patient*] *with patience, PATIENTLY.*

patientia, -ae, f. [**patiēns**, *patient*] *PATIENCE, endurance.*

patior, **pati**, **passus sum**, v. dep. tr. *suffer, bear, endure.*

patria, -ae, f. [fem. of **patrius**, *ancestral*, sc. *terra, land*] *native land, fatherland.*

patrimōnium, -i, n. [**pater**, *father*] *inheritance from a father, PATRIMONY.*

patrōnus, -i, m. [**pater**, *father*] *protector, PATRON, advocate, pleader.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj. usually plural, *few, little.*

paulum, adj. *for a little while.*

pāx, **pācis**, f. *peace, treaty, compact, agreement.*

pectus, -oris, n. *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. [**pecus**, *cattle*, the earliest kind of wealth] *wealth, property, riches*; *money.*

pecus, -oris, n. *cattle*, of all kinds; *flock, herd.*

pedes, -itis, m. [**pēs**, *foot*] *foot-soldier.*

pēior, -or, -us, gen. -ōris, adj. [comp. of **malus**, *bad*] *worse.*

pellō [✓ **PEL**-, *drive*], -āre, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, v. tr. *drive, hurl*; *banish*; *expel.*

per, prep. with acc. of space, *through, across*; of time, *during*; of agency or means, *by the agency of, by means of.*

peragrō [**per**, *through* + **ager**, *field*], -āre, -āvi, -ētum, v. tr. *wander through, traverse, pass through.*

percussor, -ōris, m. [cf. **percutiō**, *strike*] *striker, murderer.*

percutiō [**per**, *thoroughly* + **quatiō**, *strike*], -āre, -cussi, -cussum, v. tr. *strike thoroughly, overthrow, defeat, slay.*

perdō [**per**, *through* + ✓ 2 **DA**-, *put*],

- ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr. *destroy, squander, waste, lose.*
- perducō [per, through + ducō, lead], -ere, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr. *lead through, lead, conduct.*
- peregrinus, -a, -um, adj. [per, through + ager, field] *foreign.*
- perfacilis, -is, -e, adj. [per, through + facilis, easy] *very easy.*
- perferō [per, through + ferō, bear], -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr. *bear through, spread abroad; announce; suffer.*
- perficiō [per, thorough + faciō, do], -facere, -feci, -factum, v. tr. *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.*
- perfidus, -a, -um, adj. [per, breaking through + FID-, trust] *promise-breaking, treacherous, faithless.*
- periculōsus, -a, -um, adj. [periculum, trial] *dangerous, perilous.*
- periculum, -i, n. *trial, danger, peril, risk.*
- peritus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of perior, try] *experienced, trained, skilful.*
- permovēō [per, thoroughly + movēō, move], -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr. *move deeply, induce, persuade.*
- perōrō [per, to the end + ōrō, speak], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *speak to the end, plead at length.*
- perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *continuous: in perpetuum, forever; perpetuō, forever.*
- persaepe, adv. [per, very + saepe, often] *very often.*
- persequor [per, completely + sequor, follow], -i, -cūtus sum, v. dep. tr. *follow completely, pursue.*
- persuadeō [per, completely + suadeō, persuade], -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, v. intr. with dat. *PERSUADE.*
- pertaesum est, impers. v. [perf. of pertaesdet, it wears completely] *it wears, it disgusts, it makes sick: pertaesus, p. p. being disgusted at.*
- perterritus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of per-
- terreō, thoroughly frighten] *thoroughly frightened.*
- pertināciter, adv. [pertināx, persevering] *perseveringly, stubbornly.*
- pertineō [per, through to the end + teneō, hold], -ēre, -ui, —, v. intr. *stretch out, reach, extend.*
- perturbō [per, thoroughly + turbō, disturb], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *disturb, confuse, confound.*
- pēs, pedis, m. *foot: pedem referre, retreat.*
- peessimus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of malus] *worst.*
- petitiō, -ōnis, f. [petō, seek] *attack; candidacy, petition.*
- petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, v. tr. *strive for, seek; demand, beg.*
- Pharnacēs, -is, m. *Pharnaces, son of Mithridates.*
- Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj. *PHARSALIAN.*
- philosophia, -ae, f. *PHILOSOPHY.*
- philosophus, -i, m. *a PHILOSOPHER.*
- pietās, -ātis, f. [pius, dutiful] *dutiful conduct, PIETY, duty.*
- pigeō, -ēre, -ui and pigritum est, v. tr. *feel annoyance: usually impers. it irks, disgusts, displeases.*
- piger, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy.*
- pilum, -i, n. *javelin.*
- pirāta, -ae, m. *sea-robber, pirate.*
- piscis, -is, m. *fish.*
- Placentia, -ae, f. *Placentia, a city in Cisalpine Gaul.*
- placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. intr. with dat. *please, seem best: impers. it is determined, is agreed upon: .*
- plaga, -ae, f. *stroke, blow.*
- plānitēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, smooth] *level ground, plain.*
- plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ei or -i, f. [✓ PLE-, full] *the common people, commons, plebeians.*
- plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [✓ PLE-, full] *full, filled.*

plārique, plārōrumque, *m.* *most people, very many.*

Plīnius, -ī, *m.* *Caius Plīnius Secundus, a famous Roman writer.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of multus, much*] *most, very many.*

plūs, plūris, *adj.* [*comp. of multus, much*] *more.*

pōculum, -ī, *n.* *cup, bowl.*

pōena, -ae, *f.* [*pūniō, punish*] *satisfaction, punishment, penalty.*

pōsta, -ae, *m.* *post.*

polliceor [*prō, forth + liceor, bid*], **-ārī, -itus sum**, *dep. v. tr.* *promise.*

Pompēianus, -a, -um, *adj. of Pompey, Pompey's.*

Pompēius, -ī, *m.* *Pompey, Cn. Pompēius Magnus, the enemy of Caesar.*

Pomptinus, -a, -um, *adj.* *Pomptine, the marshes on the coast of Latium.*

pōnō [*for posinō from por (prō), forth + sinō, set*], **-ere, posui, positum**, *put down, put, place: castra pōnere, pitch camp.*

pōns, pontis, *m.* *bridge.*

ponticalus, -ī, *m.* [*pōns, bridge*] *a little bridge.*

Pontus, -ī, *m.* *Pontus, province in Northern Asia Minor.*

populus, -ī, *m.* [*✓ PLE-, all*] *people, nation.*

Porsena, -ae, *m.* *Lars Porsena, king of Etruria.*

porta, -ae, *f.* *city-gate, gate, door.*

porticus, -ūs, *f.* [*porta, gate*] *a covered walk, colonnade, portico.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *v. tr.* *bear, carry, bring.*

portōrium, -ī, *n.* [*cf. porta, gate*] *tax, duty.*

portus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf. porta, gate*] *harbor, haven.*

possum [*potis, able + sum, am*], **posse, potui**, —, *v. intr.* *be able, have power, can.*

post, *adv. and prep. with acc.:* *as adv.*

afterwards, later, behind; as prep. after, since, behind, next to.

postē, adv. [*post, after + ea, these things*] *after this, afterwards, later.*

(posterus, -a, -um), *adj.* [*post, after*] *coming after, following, next; comp. posterior; superl. postrēmus.*

postrēmō, adv. *finally, at last.*

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *v. tr.* *ask, demand, claim, desire.*

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*possum, am able*] *able, mighty, powerful, potent.*

potētātus, -ūs, *m.* [*potēns, able*] *might, power, rule, dominion.*

potentia, -ae, *f.* [*potēns, able*] *power, might, force.*

potestās, -ātis, *f.* [*potis, able*] *power, sway.*

potior [*potis, able*], **-īrī, potitus sum**, *dep. v. with abl.* *become master of, get, obtain.*

praebeō [*prae, before, forth + habēō, hold*], **-āre, -uī, -itum**, *v. tr.* *hold forth, offer, give, furnish.*

praecedō [*prae, forth + cēdō, go*], **-ere, -cēssi, -cēssum**, *v. tr. and intr.* *go forth, PRECEDE; surpass, excel, outdo.*

praeceptor, -ōris, *m.* [*prae, before + ✓ CAP-, take*] *teacher, instructor, PRECEPTOR.*

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [*prae, before + ✓ CAP-, take*] *instruction, PRECEPT, rule.*

praecidō [*prae, before + caedō, cut*], **-ere, -cidi, -cisum**, *v. tr.* *cut off in front, cut off.*

praecipio [*prae, beforehand, forth + capiō, take*], **-ere, -cipui, -ceptum**, *v. tr. and intr.* *take beforehand; advise, warn, order.*

praecīlūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [*prae, intens. + clīlūs, bright*] *very bright, brilliant; eminent, excellent, famous.*

praeda, -ae, *f.* *property taken in war, booty, plunder.*

praedicatō, -ōnis, *f.* [*praedicō, boast*] *a boast.*

praedicō [*prae, before + dicō, say*],

-ere, -dixi, -dictum, v. tr. *say before*,
PREDICT.

praecipuſ, adv. *especially*.

praedō, -ōnis, m. [*praeda*, *booty*] *robber, pirate*.

praefātus, -a, -um [part. of **praefor*, *say beforehand*] *saying beforehand*.

praeforō [*prae*, *before* + *ferō*, *bear*],
-ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr. *bear before*,
offer, place before.

praeforſ, -ſcis, adj. [*prae*, *intens.* +
forſ, *violent*] *very violent, insolent*.

praemittō [*prae*, *before* + *mittō*, *send*],
-ere, -miſi, -miſſum, v. tr. *send for-
ward, despatch in advance*.

praemium, -i, n. *advantage, reward*,
PREMIUM.

praesens, -entis, adj. [part. of *prae-
sum*, *be before*] PRESENT, *at hand*.

praesidium, -i, n. [*praesens*, from *prae*,
before + *√SID-*, *aid*], *defence, help, pro-
tection*.

praestō [*prae*, *before* + *stō*, *stand*],
-ſre, -ſtiti, -ſtitum, v. intr. with dat.
stand out, stand before, excel, surpass.

praesum [*prae*, *before* + *sum*, *am*],
-esse, -fuli, —, *am before, am set over*,
have charge of.

praetereō [*praeter*, *by* + *eo*, *go*], -ire,
-ivi or -ii, -itum, v. tr. and intr. *go by*,
pass by.

praeter, prep. with acc. *past, by, against*,
contrary to; *beyond, besides*.

praetor, -ōris, m. [for *praetor*: *prae*,
before + *√I-*, *go*] *leader, chief magis-
trate, PRAETOR*.

praeveniō [*prae*, *before* + *veniō*, *come*],
-ire, -veni, -ventum, v. tr. *come before*,
precede, PREVENT.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj. *crooked, deformed*;
wrong, bad, wicked.

pridem, adv. *long ago, long since*.

pridiſ, adv. *on the day before*.

primum, adv. [sup. of *prae*] *first*: *quam
primum*, *as soon as possible*.

primus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of *prae*] *(the first)*, *first*.

princeps, -ipis, m. [*primus*, *first* +
√CAP-, *take*] *foremost*: *chief, emi-
nent*; *leader, chief, ruler*.

principātus, -ūs, m. [*princeps*, *chief*]
beginning; *chief command, supremacy*,
leadership.

prior, -or, -us, gen. -ōris, adj. [comp. of
prae], *former, PRIOR, first (of two)*.

privātum, adv. [*privātus*, *private*] *PRIV-
ATELY, in private*.

privō [*privus*, *one's own*], -ſre, -ſvi,
-ſtum, v. tr. *DEPRIVE, rob*.

prō, prep. with abl. *before, in front of, in
behalf of*; *instead of*.

proavus, -i, m. [*prō*, *before* + *avus*,
grandfather], *great-grandfather*.

Proca, -ae, m. *Proca*, king of the Alſians,
father of Numitor and Amulius.

prōcedō [*prō*, *forward* + *cedō*, *go*], -ere,
-ceſſi, —, v. intr. *go forward, ad-
vance, PROCEED*.

prōclāmō [*prō*, *out* + *clāmō*, *call*], -ſre,
-ſvi, -ſtum, v. tr. *call, cry out*.

procul, adv. [*prō*, *forth, away* + *√CEL-*,
drive], *at a distance, away, far, far off*.

Proculus, -i, m. *Julus Proculus*, a Ro-
man, to whom Romulus appeared, as he
said, after death.

prōditō, -ōnis, f. [*prō*, *forth, away* +
√DA-, *give*], *betrayal, treason, treach-
ery*.

proellir [*proelium*, *battle*], -ſri, -ſtus
sum, dep. v. tr. *join battle, fight*.

proelium, -i, n. *battle, combat*.

profectō, adv. [*prō*, *according to* + *fac-
tum*, *fact*] *assuredly, certainly, indeed*.

profiſcor [*prō*, *forth* + **faciſcor* (*fac-
iſcō*), *begin to make*], *set forward, set
out, go forth, march forth*.

prōfligō [*prō*, *forward* + *fligō*, *strike*],
-ſre, -ſvi, -ſtum, v. tr. *strike down*,
overthrow, defeat.

profugiō [*prō*, *forth* + *fugiō*, *flee*], -ere,
-fugi, —, v. intr. *flee, run away, es-
cape*.

profugus, -i, m. [*prō*, *forth* + *√FVG-*,
flee] *fugitive, banished = exile*.

- prōfundō** [prō, forth + fundō, pour], -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr. *pour forth; waste, squander.*
- progredior** [prō, forth + gradior, go], -gredi, -gressus sum, dep. v. intr. *go forth, advance.*
- prohibeo** [prō, forth + habeo, hold], -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. *keep away from, check, hinder, prevent, PROHIBIT.*
- proinde**, adv. *hence, therefore, accordingly.*
- prōmineō**, -ēre, -ui, —, v. intr. *stand out, lean forward, stretch out.*
- prōmissum**, -i, n. [prōmittō, promise] PROMISE.
- prōmittō** [prō, forth + mittō, send], -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr. *let go; PROMISE, assure.*
- prōnepōs**, -ōtis, m. [prō, before + nepōs, grandson] *great-grandson.*
- prope**, adv. *about, nearby, almost*: comp. **propius**; sup. **proximē.**
- prōpensus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of prōpendō, hang down] *hanging down; inclined, disposed.*
- properō** [properus, quick], -ēre, -avi, -atum, v. intr. *make haste, go quickly, hasten.*
- propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], *near, neighboring*: as a subst. *kinsman, relation.*
- propior**, -or, -us, gen. -ōris, adj. [prope, near] *nearer.*
- prōpōnō** [prō, before + pōnō, place], -ere, -poni, -positum, v. tr. *PROPOSE, report, offer.*
- propter**, prep. with acc. [prope, near] *near: on account of.*
- prōscribō** [prō, forth + scribō, write], -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr. *write forth, publish, outlaw, PROSCRIBE.*
- prōsequor** [prō, before + sequor, follow], -sequi, -secutus sum, dep. v. tr. *accompany, attend.*
- prōsiliō** [prō, forth + saliō, jump], -ire, -ui, —, v. intr. *jump forth, leap forward.*
- prōsperus**, -a, -um, adj. [prō, according to + spēs, hope] *according to hope; favorable, prosperous.*
- prōsum** [prō, for + sum, am], **prōdesse**, **prōful**, —, v. intr. with dat. *am before, am useful to, benefit.*
- protinus**, adv. *immediately, at once.*
- prōvehō** [prō, forward + vehō, carry], -ere, -vexi, -vectum, v. tr. *carry forward; pass. move forward, sail.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, f. *territory, PROVINCE.*
- proximē**, adv. sup. *nearest.*
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj. sup. [prope, near] *nearest, last: in proximō (sc. locō), in the neighborhood, near-by.*
- prōdēns**, -ēns, -ēns, gen. -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns, foreseeing] *wise, knowing, sagacious, PRUDENT.*
- prudentia**, -ae, f. [prōdēns, prudent] *wisdom, sagacity, PRUDENCE.*
- Ptolemaeus**, -i, m. *Ptolemy, name of several kings of Egypt.*
- pūblicō**, adv. [pūblicus, of the people] *PUBLICLY, in the name of the state.*
- pūblicō** [pūblicus, of the people], -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr. *throw open to the people; open.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people, of the people] **PUBLIC**: in **pūblicō**, *openly, publicly.*
- pudēō**, -ēre, -ui or **puditum est**, *be ashamed*; usually impersonal, *it makes ashamed*; **mē pudet**, *I am ashamed.*
- pudor**, -ōris, m. *shame, disgrace.*
- puella**, -ae, f. [dim. fem. of puer, boy] *girl, maiden.*
- puer**, -erī, m. *boy, young man*: pl. **puerī**, *children.*
- puerilis**, -is, -e, adj. [puer, boy] *boyish, childish, youthful.*
- pūgiō**, -ōnis, m. *dagger.*
- pūgna**, -ae, f. *hand-to-hand fight, battle combat.*
- pūgnō** [pūgna, fight], -āre, -avi, -atum, v. tr. *fight, give battle.*

pulcher, -era, -erum, adj. *beautiful, glorious.*

pulsus, -a, -um, part. of **pellō**.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. **PUNIC**, *Carthaginian.*

pūniō [poena, punishment], **-ire, -ivi, -itum**, v. tr. **PUNISH**.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *judge, suspect, believe, think.*

Q

quadrāgintā, num. adj. *forty.*

quā dē causā, *for what reason, wherefore.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, v. tr. *seek, look for.*

quaestor, -ōris, m. [from **quaerō**, seek] **QUAESTOR**.

quaestūra, -aē, f. [**quaestor**, *quaestor*] *the office of quaestor, quaestorship.*

quaestus, -ūs, m. [**quaerō**, seek] *gain, profit, advantage.*

quālis, -is, -e, adj. *of what sort, of what kind, what kind of.*

quam, adv. and conj. as adv. *in what manner, how*; as conj. after a comp. than: **quam** with superl. as . . . as possible, e.g. **quā primum**, *as soon as possible.*

quamquam, concess. conj. *although, though.*

quamvis, conj. *although, though.*

quantum, adv. *how much, as much as.*

quāre, adv. [**quē**, by what + **rē**, means] *by what means, wherefore, therefore.*

quārtānus, -a, -um, adj. [**quārtus**, fourth] *occurring on the fourth day, QUARTAN.*

quasi, adv. [**quam**, as + **si**, if] *as if, just as if.*

quater, adv. [**quattuor**, four] *four times.*

quattuor, num. adj. *four.*

-que, conj. enclit. and.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj. *who, which, what, that.*

qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj. *what? which? what kind of?*

quia, causal conj. *because.*

quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, indef. rel. pron. [**qui**, who + **-cumque**, indef. suffix] *whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam and as subst. **quiddam**, indef. pron. *a certain, a, somebody, one*: pl. *some, some things.*

quidem, adv. *indeed, certainly*: **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*

quiētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **quiēscō**, rest] **QUIET**, *calm, inactive.*

quīn, conj. [**qui**, why + **nē**, not] *so that not, but, but that*; often translated from, the following finite verb being rendered by our participle in *ing*.

quīndecim, num. adj. indecl. *fifteen.*

quīnquāgintā, num. adj. indecl. *fifty.*

quīnque, num. adj. indecl. *five.*

quīnquies, adv. *for the fifth time, five times.*

quīntus, -a, -um, adj. [**quīnque**, five] *fifth.*

Quirīnālis, -is, -e, adj. [**Quirīnus**] of *Quirīnus, of Romulus, Quirīnal*, referring to the Quirīnal Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -ī, m. [**Quirīs** = Curēs] *Quirīnus*, name of Romulus after he had been deified.

quis, qua, quid, indef. pron. used with **si, nisi**, num. **nē**, *anyone, anything, someone, something.*

quis, quid, interrog. pron. *who? which one? what man? what thing? what?*

quisnam, quāenam, quidnam, interrog. pron. *who then? who, pray?*

quisquam (m.), **quicquam** (n.), indef. pron. [**quis**, anyone + **quam**, indef. suffix], *any, anyone, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque and as adj. **quodque**, indef. rel. pron. *each, each one, everybody, everything, all.*

quīvis, quāvis, quīvis and **quodvis**,

indef. pron. *anyone (you please), anyone, anything.*

quō, adv. [old dat. of **qui**] *whither, where.*

quod, causal conj. *because.*

quondam, adv. *formerly, once.*

quoque, conj. placed after the emphatic word, *also, too.*

quōrsum, adv. [**quō**, *whither* + **versus**, *ward*] *whitherward, whither.*

quot, interrog. and rel. adj. indecl. *how many? as many as.*

R

rapina, -ae, f. [✓ **RAP**, *snatch*] *robbery, plunder.*

rapīō [✓ **RAP**, *snatch*], -ere, -pī, **rap-tum**, v. tr. *snatch, seize and carry off.*

raptus, -a, -um, part. of **rapīō**.

rārus, -a, -um, adj. *thin, RARE; infrequent, uncommon.*

ratīō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **reor**, *reckon*] *reckoning, account; course, conduct, plan.*

ratus, -a, -um [part. of **reor**], *thinking.*

rebellō [**re**, *again* + **bellō**, *wage war*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *wage war again, REBEL, revolt.*

recidō [**re**, *back* + **cadō**, *fall*], -ere, **recidi** or **recidi**, **recāsurus**, v. intr. *fall back; pass, return; result, turn out.*

recipiō [**re**, *back* + **capiō**, *take*], -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. *take back, recover.*

reconciliō [**re**, *again* + **conciliō**, *procure*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *procure again; restore, reunite, RECONCILE.*

rēctō, adv. [**rēctus**, *straight*] *in a straight line; rightly, well, properly.*

recūsō [**re**, *again* + **causa**, *cause*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *refuse, deny.*

redeō [**red**, *back* + **eō**, *go*], -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, v. intr. *go back, return.*

redigō [**red**, *back* + **agō**, *bring*], -ere, -ēgi, -ētum, v. tr. *bring back, reduce.*

redimō [**red**, *back* + **emō**, *buy*], -ere,

-dēmi, -dēptum, v. tr. *buy back, REDEEM, ransom.*

redintegrō [**red**, *again* + **integrō**, *make whole*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *make whole again, renew.*

reditus, -ūs, m. [**redeō**, *return*] *return.*

referō [**re**, *back* + **ferō**, *bring*], -ferre, **rettulī**, -lātum, v. tr. *bring back, REFER; report, relate.*

refoveō [**re**, *again* + **foveō**, *warm*], -āre, -fōvī, —, v. tr. *warm again, revive.*

rēgina, -ae, f. [**rēx**, *king*] *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f. [✓ **REG**, *guide*] *direction; REGION, district.*

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [**rēx**, *king*] *kingly, royal, king's.*

rēgnō [**rēgnum**, *royal power*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. *have royal power, be king, REIGN.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. [✓ **REG**, *rule*] *royal power; supreme power, realm, kingdom.*

regredior [**re**, *back* + **gradior**, *walk*], -ī, -gressus sum, dep. v. intr. *retreat, return.*

relābor [**re**, *back* + **lābor**, *slide*], -lābi, -lāpsus sum, dep. v. intr. *slide back, flow back, sink back.*

religō [**re**, *back* + **ligō**, *bind*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *bind back, bind fast, fasten on.*

relinquō [**re**, *behind* + **linquō**, *leave*], -ere, -liquī, -lictum, v. tr. *leave behind, leave, abandon.*

reliquiae, -arum, f. [**reliquus**, *remaining*] *what is left, remnants.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [**relinquō**, *leave*] *left, rest, remaining.*

remaneo [**re**, *back* + **maneo**, *stay*], -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, v. intr. *stay behind, REMAIN.*

remittō [**re**, *back* + **mittō**, *send*], -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr. *send back, let go back, give up; REMIT.*

removed [**re**, *back* + **moveō**, *move*], -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr. *move back, withdraw, REMOVE.*

- Remus, -i, m.** *Remus*, the brother of Romulus.
- renūtiō** [re, again + nūtiō, announce], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. announce again, announce.
- renuō** [re, back + nuō, nod], -ere, -ui, —, v. tr. nod backwards, refuse, decline.
- repellō** [re, back + pellō, drive], -ere, **reppul**, **repulsum**, v. tr. drive back, drive away; *repulse*, **REPEL**.
- repente**, adv. [**repēns**, sudden] suddenly, unexpectedly.
- repentinus**, -a, -um, adj. [**repēns**, sudden] sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō** [-re, back + portō, bring], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. find, meet with; get, obtain.
- repetundae**, -ārum, f. extortion.
- reportō** [re, back + portō, bring], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. bring back, win, gain.
- repudiō** [-āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. divorce].
- repugnō** [re, against + pugnō, fight], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. oppose, resist.
- repulsa**, -ae, f. [part. f. of **repellō**, drive back] *REPULSE*, rejection.
- reputō** [re, again + putō, think], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. think over, reflect, meditate.
- rēs**, rei, f. thing, event, circumstance, affair: **rēs publica**, **REPUBLIC**, state; **rēs frumentāria**, corn supply; **rēs familiāria**, property, estate.
- rescindō** [re, back + scindō, cut], -ere, -scidi, -scissum, v. tr. cut off, cut down, break down.
- rescissus**, part. of **rescindō**.
- resistō** [re, back + sistō, stand], -ere, -stisti, —, v. intr. stand back, halt, stop; oppose, **RESIST**.
- respicō** [re, back + speciō, look], -ere, -spēxi, -spectum, v. tr. look back, gaze at.
- respondēō** [re, back, in return + spondeō, promise], -āre, -spondi, -spōnsum, v. tr. answer, **RESPOND**.
- restinguō** [re, back + stinguō, quench], -ere, -axi, -actum, v. tr. put out, quench, extinguish.
- restituō** [re, again + statuō, set up], -ere, -ui, -ātum, v. tr. set up again, replace, rebuild; restore, revive.
- retrahō** [re, back + trahō, draw], -ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, v. tr. draw back; call back, bring back.
- revertō** [re, back + vertō, turn], -ere, -verti, —, see **revertor**.
- revertor**, -i, **reversus sum**, perf. usually **reverti**, dep. v. intr. turn back, return, come back, **REVERT**.
- revocō** [re, back + vocō, call], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. call back, recall.
- rēx**, rēgis, m. [**regō**, rule] king.
- Rhēa**, -ae, f. *Rhea*, praenomen of Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
- Rhēnus**, -i, m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany.
- rhētōr**, -ōris, m. *rhetorician, orator*.
- Rhodanus**, -i, m. *the Rhone*, a river flowing through southeastern Gaul into the Mediterranean.
- Rhodus**, -i, f. *Rhodes*, an island of the Mediterranean, south of Asia Minor.
- rideō**, -ēre, **risi**, **risum**, v. tr. and intr. laugh, laugh at.
- ripa**, -ae, f. *bank (of a river)*.
- rivulus**, -i, m. [dim. of **rivus**, brook] a little brook, stream.
- rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. ask, question, beg.
- Rōma**, -ae, f. **ROME**.
- Rōmāni**, -ōrum, m. [**Rōma**, *Rome*] **THE ROMANS**.
- Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [**Rōma**, *Rome*] **ROMAN**, of *Rome*.
- Rōmulus**, -i, m. *Romulus*, brother of Remus, mythical founder of Rome and its first king.
- rosa**, -ae, f. *rose*.
- Rōscius**, -i, m. *Sextus Roscius*, defended by Cicero.

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw] *beak, ship's beak*; pl. **rōstra**, the speaker's stand in the Forum.

Rubio, -ōnis, m. *the Rubicon*, a small river between Cisalpine Gaul and Italy.

ruina, -ae, f. [ruō, fall] *falling down; fall, ruin, destruction*.

ruō, -ere, **ruī**, **rutum**, v. intr. *fall with violence; go to ruin; hurry, hasten*.

rūri [loc. of **rūs**], *in the country*.

rūs, **rūris**, n. *country* (as opposed to city), *fields*: **rūri**, loc. *in the country*.

S

Sabini, -ōrum, m. *Sabines*, an ancient Italian people, dwelling in central Italy, north of Latium.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [**sacer**, *sacred* + $\sqrt{\text{DA-}}$ *give*] *priest, priestess*.

saepe, adv. *often, many times, frequently*: comp. **saepius**; sup. **saepissimōs**.

saepiō [**saepēs**, *hedge*], -īre, **saepal**, **saepum**, v. tr. *hedge in, surround, fortify*.

saepius, comp. of **saepe**. [violent.

saevus, -a, -um, adj. *raging, furious*.

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*.

(**saltus**, -ūs) m. [**salīō**, *leap*] only acc. and abl. sg. and pl. *leap, spring, jump*.

salūbritās, -ātis, f. [**salūbris**, *healthful*] *healthfulness*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. [**salvus**, *sound*] *soundness, health, safety*.

salūtō [**salūs**, *safely*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *greet, pay respects, call upon*, **SALUTE**.

salvus, -a, -um, adj. *in good health, sound, safe*.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [**sapiō**, *be wise*] *wise, sensible*.

sapienter, adv. [**sapiēns**, *wise*] *wisely, sensibly*.

sapientia, -ae, f. [**sapiēns**, *wise*] *wisdom, prudence, intelligence*.

satis, adv. *enough, sufficiently*.

scelus, -eris, n. *wicked deed, crime, sin*.

schola, -ae, f. [Gr. σχολή, *leisure*] *leisure for learning; school*.

sciō [$\sqrt{\text{SCI-}}$, *divide, distinguish*], -īre,

-īvi or -īl, -ītum, v. tr. *know, understand, know how*.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio*, a famous Roman.

scissem, plupf. subjv. of **sciō**.

scribō, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, v. tr. *scratch, write*.

scrinium, -ī, n. *case, book-box*.

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield, buckler*.

sē, see **sul**.

sēcōdō [**sē**, *apart* + **cōdō**, *go*], -ere, -cōssi, -cōssum, v. intr. *go away, secede, withdraw*.

sector [freq. of **sequor**, *follow*], -āri, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *follow eagerly, attend*.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [**sequor**, *follow*] *following, next; second; favorable*.

sed, advers. conj. *but*.

sēdēs, -is, f. [$\sqrt{\text{SED-}}$, *sit*] *seat, bench, chair; site*.

sēditio, -ōnis, f. [**sēd**, *apart* + $\sqrt{\text{I-}}$, *go*] *a going aside, dissension, civil discord, mutiny, SEDITION*.

sella, -ae, f. [$\sqrt{\text{SED-}}$, *sit*], *seat, chair*.

sēmet, emphatic for **sē**.

semper, adv. *ever, always, forever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [**semper**, *always*] *veritable*.

senātor, -ōris, m. [**senātus**, *senate*] *member of the senate, SENATOR*.

senātorius, -a, -um, adj. [**senātor**, *senator*] *senatorial, of a senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. **senex**, *old*] *council of elders, SENATE*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [**senex**, *old*] *old age*.

senex, **senis**, adj. *old, aged*: comp. **senior**.

senior, -ōris, *older*, comp. of **senex**.

sententia, -ae, f. [**sentio**, *think*] *sentiment, opinion, wish, desire*.

sēparātim, adv. [**sēparātus**, *separated*] SEPARATELY.

septem, num. adj. indecl. *seven*.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. adj. [**septem**, *seven*] *seventh*.

septendecim, num. adj. indecl. *seventeen*.

sequor, **sequi**, **secūtus sum**, dep. v. tr. *follow*.

sēriō, adv. [**sērius**, *earnest*] *earnestly*, SERIOUSLY.

sermō, -ōnis, m. *talk, speech, conversation*.

serva, -ae, f. [**servus**, *slave*] *female slave, maid*.

servilis, -is, -e, adj. [**servus**, *slave*] *of a slave*, SERVILE.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [**servus**, *slave*] *condition of a slave, slavery*.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make safe, save, preserve, rescue*.

servus, -i, m. *slave, servant*.

sēstertius, -i, m. *a sestertius, a small silver coin, worth two and a half asses*.

seu, conj. *see* **seu**.

sēverē, adv. [**severus**, *grave*] *gravely*, SEVERELY, *seriously*.

sex, num. adj. indecl. *six*.

sexāgintā, num. adj. indecl. *sixty*.

si, conj. *if, whether*.

sic, adv. *thus, so*.

siccō [**siccus**, *dry*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make dry, dry*.

siccus, -a, -um, adj. *dry*: in **siccō**, *on dry land*.

Siculus, -a, -um, adj. *Sicilian*.

sidus, -eris, n. *star, constellation*.

signō [**signum**, *sign*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *to sign*.

signum, -i, n. *mark, sign; ensign, standard*.

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest*.

Silvia, -ae, f. *see* **Rhea**.

- **simillimus**, -a, -um, superl. of **similis**.

similis, -is, -e, adj. *like, resembling*,

similar: comp. **similior**; superl. **simillimus**.

simul, adv. *at the same time*.

simulō [**similis**, *like*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make like, imitate, feign, pretend*.

simultās, -ātis, f. [**simul**, *at the same time*] *dissension, rivalry, jealousy*.

sine, prep. with abl. *without*.

singulāris, -is, -e, adj. [**singuli**, *one at a time*] *one by one*; SINGULAR, *remarkable*.

singuli, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time*, SINGLE, *every*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left*.

sinō, -ere, **sivi**, **situm**, v. tr. *let down, fix; suffer, allow*.

situs, *situated*, part. of **sinō**.

sive, conj. or **seu** [**si**, *if* + **ve**, or] or *if*, or *rather*, or: **sive**... **sive** or **seu**... **seu**, *either ... or, whether ... or*.

sōbrius, -a, -um, adj. [**sē**, *not* + **ebrius**, *drunk*] *not drunk*, SOBER.

socer, -eri, m. *father-in-law*.

societās, -ātis, f. [**socius**, *fellow*] *fellowship; league, alliance*.

sociō [**socius**, *sharer*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *share*.

socius, -i, m. *fellow, comrade; ally*.

Sōcratēs, -is, m. *Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher*.

sōl, **sōlis**, m. *the sun*.

soleō, -āre, **solitus sum**, semi-dep. v. am *'accustomed, am wont*.

sōlitūdō, -inis, f. [**sōlus**, *alone*] *desert, wilderness*.

solitus, -a, -um [part. of **soleō**] *accustomed, wonted*.

solum, -i, n. *soil, ground*.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **sōlius**, dat. **sōlli**, *alone, only, single-handed*: **sōlum**, adv. *alone, only, merely*.

solvere [**sē**, *apart* + **luō**, *loose*], -ere, **solvī**, **solūtum**, v. tr. *loosen, unbind*.

somnus, -i, m. [for **sopnus**; cf. **sōpiō**, *put to sleep*] *sleep*.

- soror, -ōris, f.** *sister.*
- sors, sortis, f. lot, fate, fortune, destiny.**
- spatium, -i, n.** *SPACE, distance; period of time.*
- speciēs, -ei, f.** [*√SPEC-, look*] *look, appearance, pretence.*
- spectāculum, -i, n.** [*spectō, look at*] *place in theatre; show, SPECTACLE.*
- spectō** [*freq. of speciō, look*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *look on, look at, behold, watch.*
- spērō** [*spēs, hope*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *hope, look for, expect.*
- spēs, spei, f.** *hope, expectation.*
- spiritus, -ūs, m.** [*spīrō, breathe*] *breathing, breath; SPIRIT, courage.*
- splendor, -ōris, m.** *brightness, SPLENDOR; honor, dignity.*
- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.** *plunder, SPOIL, rob.*
- spondeō, -ēre, spondi, spōsum, v. intr.** *promise sacredly, promise.*
- sponde** [*abl. of spōns*], *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*
- Spūrinna, -ae, m.** *Spurinna, a soothsayer.*
- statim, adv.** [*√STA-, stand*] *steadily; on the spot, at once, instantly.*
- status, -ae, f.** [*status, p. of sistō, place*] *image, STATUE.*
- statuō** [*status, station*], -ere, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr. *cause to stand; determine, decide.*
- statūra, -ae, f.** [*√STA-, stand*] *height, size, STATURE.*
- status, -ūs, m.** [*√STA-, stand*] *station, position; STATE, condition.*
- stella, -ae, f.** *star.*
- stercus, -oris, n.** *filth.*
- stipendium, -i, n.** [*for *stipipendium: stips, small coin + *pendium, cf. pendere, pay*] *a paying of tax; pay, wages; military service, campaign.*
- stō** [*√STA-, stand*], -āre, steti, statum, v. intr. *stand, stand by.*
- strictus, -a, -um, adj.** [*part. of stringō*] *drawn.*
- studiōsē, adv.** [*studiōsus, eager*] *eagerly, zealously, anxiously.*
- studiōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [*studium, zeal*] *eager, zealous, anxious, devoted, STUDIOUS.*
- studium, -i, n.** [*studiō, give attention*] *application, eagerness, zeal, STUDY.*
- stultitia, -ae, f.** [*stultus, foolish*] *folly, foolishness, simplicity.*
- stultus, -a, -um, adj.** *foolish, simple.*
- suādeō** [*suāvis, sweet*], -ēre, suāsi, suāsum, v. intr. *PERUADE, advise, urge.*
- sub, prep.** with acc. and abl.: with abl. *of rest, under, below, beneath; with acc. of motion, under.*
- subigō** [*sub, from under + agō, drive*], -ere, -ēgi, -ēctum, v. tr. *drive from under; subjugate, conquer.*
- subitō, adv.** [*subitus, sudden*] *suddenly.*
- sublātus**, see tollō.
- sublicius, -a, -um, adj.** [*sublica, stakes*] *resting upon piles.*
- subolē, -is, f.** [*sub, from below + √OL-, grow*] *sprout; offspring, progeny, posterity.*
- subsequor** [*sub, after + sequor, follow*], -i, -secūtus sum, dep. v. int. *follow after, follow up.*
- subsidiū, -i, n.** *troops in reserve; help, aid, assistance.*
- subsistō** [*sub, under + sistō, stand*], -ere, -stiti, v. intr. *stop, stay, halt.*
- subsum** [*sub, under + sum, am*], -esse, -ui, —, am *under, am near, am at hand.*
- succēssus, -ūs, m.** [*succēdō, come up*] *a coming up, approach, SUCCESS.*
- sufficiō** [*sub, under + faciō, make*], -ere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr. *pul under, satisfy, SUFFICE.*
- suffodiō** [*sub, under + fodiō, dig*], -ere, -fodi, -fossus, v. tr. *dig under, stab underneath.*

suffigō [sub, under + **figō**, fasten] -ere, -fixi, -fixus, v. tr. fasten under, nail to.

suffragātor, -ōris, m. [suffragor, favor by voting] favorer, supporter, partisan.

sui, **sibi**, **se**, **se**, reflex. pron. himself (herself, itself, themselves).

Sulla, -ae, m. Sulla.

Sullānus, -a, -um, adj. of Sulla; as a subst. a follower of Sulla.

sum [√ ES-, be], **esse**, **ful**, **futūrus**, v. intr. am, exist, live.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **superus**, upper] highest, greatest.

sūmō [sub, from below + **emō**, take] -ere, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptum**, v. tr. take, take up, assume.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptus, outlay] of expense, SUMPTUARY.

sūmptus, part. of **sūmō**.

super, prep. with acc. and abl.: with abl. over, above, on; with acc. over, above, upon, beyond.

superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super, above] haughty, proud, arrogant.

superincidō [super, from above + in, upon and **cadō**, fall], -ere, —, —, v. intr. fall from above, fall down upon.

superior, -or, -us, gen. -ōris, adj. [comp. of **superus**] superior, victorious.

superō [superus, over, above], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. pass over, surpass, conquer, overcome.

supersum [super, above + sum, am] -esse, -fui, —, v. intr. with dat. am over, survive.

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super, above] that which is above, upper, higher.

superveniō [super, upon + **veniō**, come], -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr. come up, arrive; come upon, surprise.

supervivō [super, beyond + **vivō**, live], -ere, -vixī, —, v. intr. outlive, SURVIVE.

supplicium, -i, n. [supplex, kneeling in

entreaty] kneeling, death penalty, punishment.

suscipiō [sub(s), from under + **capiō**, take], -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. take from under, take, receive, undertake.

suspectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **suspi-ciō**] mistrusted, SUSPECTED.

sustineō [sub(s), from under, up + **teneō**, hold], -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, v. tr. hold up, keep up, support, SUSTAIN.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. [cf. **sui**, of himself, &c.] belonging to oneself; his own, her own, his, hers, its, their: always used with reference to the subject of the sentence.

T

taedet, -ēre, **taeduit**, **taesum est**, v. impers. it disgusts, wearies: **mō taedet**, I am disgusted.

taedium, -i, n. weariness, tediousness, disgust.

talentum, -i, n. A TALENT, a Greek standard of value worth about \$1,080 in gold.

tālis, -is, -e, adj. such, of such a kind.

tam, adv. in such a degree, such, so.

tamen, adv. yet, but, nevertheless.

tamquam, conj. as if.

tandem, adv. at length, finally.

tantopere, adv. [tantus, so great + opus, labor] so greatly, so earnestly.

tantum, adv. [tantus, so great] only, merely.

tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great, such.

tardō [tardus, slow], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. hinder, delay, retard.

Tarentum, -i, n. Tarentum, a famous and powerful Greek city in the southern part of Italy on the Gulf of Tarentum.

Tarpēia, -ae, f. Tarpeia, name of the Roman maiden who opened the gates to the Sabines in the hope that she would receive their rings and bracelets in return.

Tarquinii, -ōrum, m. Tarquinii, a city in the southern part of Etruria.

Tatius, -i, m. gentile name of *Titus Tatius*, a famous Sabine leader.

taurus, -i, m. a bull.

tegō, -ere, **tēxi**, **tēctum**, v. tr. cover, cover over.

tēlum, -i, n. spear, javelin, weapon.

tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus, time] time; storm, tempest.

templum, -i, n. temple.

tempus, -oris, n. time, season.

tendō [√TEN-, stretch], -ere, **tetendi**, **tentum** or **tēsum**, v. tr. and intr. stretch, extend, direct.

tenebrae, -arum, f. pl. darkness, gloom.

teneō [√TEN-, stretch], -ēre, -ui, —, v. tr. hold, grasp, keep.

tentō [intens. of tendō, stretch], -ēre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. handle, make trial, attempt, try.

tergum, -i, m. back: **ā tergō**, in the rear.

terra, -ae, f. [cf. **torreō**, dry up] earth, ground, land: **orbis terrae** or **terrārum**, the earth.

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr. frighten, alarm, terrify.

terribilis, -is, -e, adj. [**terreō**, frighten] frightful, TERRIBLE.

territus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of **terreō**, frightened] frightened, in fright.

terror, -ōris, m. [cf. **terreō**, frighten] great fear, dread, TERROR.

tēstāmentum, -i, n. [cf. **tēstor**, witness] will, TESTAMENT.

tēstor [tēstis, witness], -āri, -ātus, dep. v. tr. witness, testify.

Themistoclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles*, a famous general and statesman of Athens.

Tiberis, -is, m. *the Tiber*, the chief river in Latium, upon which Rome was situated.

Tiberius, -i, m. *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, v. tr. fear, be afraid of.

Timoleōn, -ontis, m. *Timoleon*, a Greek.

titulus, -i, m. a title.

Titus, -i, m. *Titus*, a Roman first name.

toga, -ae, f. THE TOGA, gown.

tollō, -ere, **sustuli**, **sublātum**, v. tr. raise, lift, cheer, carry off.

tonitrus, -ūs, m. [tonō, make a loud noise] thunder.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, dat. **tōti**, adj. all, the whole, entire.

trādō [trāns, across + dō, deliver], -ere, -idi, -ditum, v. tr. give up, deliver, surrender; betray.

trāciō [trāns, across + iaciō, throw], -ere, -ieci, -iectum, v. tr. throw across, transfer, lead across; stab, pierce.

trānō [trāns, across + nō, swim], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. swim across.

trāns, prep. with acc. across, over.

trānseō [trāns, across + eō, go], -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, v. tr. go across, cross over, pass by.

trānsiliō [trāns, across + saliō, leap], -ire, -ui, —, leap across, jump over.

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. [trāns, across + versus, turned] TRANSVERSE, crosswise.

trepidātiō, -ōnis, f. [trepidō, hurry with alarm] hurry; alarm, confusion.

trepidō [trepidus, restless], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. hurry with alarm, hesitate, tremble.

trēs, **trēs**, **tria**, num. adj. three.

tribūnus, -i, m. [tribus, tribe] head of a tribe, tribune.

tribuō [tribus, tribe], -uere, -ui, -ūtum, v. tr. give, transfer, yield, confer.

triennium, -i, n. [trēs, three + annus, year], space of three years, three years.

trigintā, num. adj. indecl. thirty.

tristis, -is, -e, adj. sad, sorrowful; bitter, severe.

triumphus, -i, m. a TRIUMPH.

trucidō [trux, wild + √SCID-, cut], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. cut to pieces, kill, slay.

tū, tui, tibi, tē, tē, pers. pron. *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.*

tueor, -eri, tūtus, dep. v. tr. *look at, guard, protect.*

tum, adv. *then, at that time.*

tunc, adv. *then, at that time.*

turbulentus, -a, -um, adj. [*turba, commotion*] *full of commotion, disturbed, stormy.*

turpis, -is, -e, adj. *ugly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable.*

turpitudō, -inis, f. [*turpis, ugly*] *ugliness; shame, disgrace, dishonor.*

tūtela, -ae, f. [*tueor, look at*], *watcher, defender; tutor, guardian.*

tūtōr [*tueor, look at*], -eri, -ētus sum, dep. v. tr. *watch, protect, defend.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [*tū, thou, you*] *thy, thine, your, yours.*

U

uber, -eris, n. *dug, teat, udder, breast.*

ubi, adv. rel. and interrog. *in which place, where, when.*

ullus, -a, -um, gen. *ullius*, dat. *ulli* [*or unulus, dim. of unus*], *any, any-one.*

ulterior, -or, -us, adj. gen. -ōris, *further.*

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last.*

ultrā, prep. with acc. *beyond, passing.*

ultrō, adv. *to the farther side; voluntarily, willingly.*

umbra, -ae, f. *shade, shadow.*

umerus, -i, m. *shoulder.*

undique, adv. [*unde, whence: que, indef. suffix*] *from every quarter, on all sides, all around.*

universus, -a, -um, adj. [*unus, one + versus, turned*] *all together, all; whole, entire.*

unus, -a, -um, num. adj. gen. *unius*, dat. *uni*, *one, alone.*

urbānus, -a, -um, adj. [*urbs, city*] *of the city; as a subst. a wit, wag.*

urbs, urbis, f. *walled town, city.*

usque, adv. *as far as, all the way, even.*

usurpō [*usus, use + √RAP-, seize*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *seize, make use of.*

usus, -us, m. [*utor, use*] *use; profit, need, want; skill.*

ut or uti, conj. *that, in order that, so that.*

uter, utris, m. *bag of hide, leathern bottle, skin.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both.*

utilis, -is, -e, adj. [*utor, use*] *useful, advantageous.*

utinam, adv. *I wish that; if only; would that.*

utor, uti, usus sum, dep. v. with abl. *use, employ.*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*

V

vādum, -i, n. *shoal, ford.*

vāgitus, -us, m. [*vāgiō, cry*] *crying, squalling.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [*valeō, be strong*] *health; sickness.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [*valeō, be strong*] *strong, powerful, able.*

vānus, -a, -um, adj. *vain, false.*

vāstō [*vāstus, empty*], -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. *make empty, lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, waste; vast, huge.*

vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctum [*√VEH-, carry*], v. tr. *carry, bear; pass. be carried, hence, sail, ride.*

vegetus, -a, -um, adj. *enlivened, animated, bright.*

velōx, -ōx, -ōx, gen. -ōcis, adj. *swift, quick, rapid, fleet.*

veluti, adv. *just as, like.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [*vēnor, hunt*] *a hunting, hunt.*

- venēnum**, -ī, *strong potion, poison.*
- venerātiō**, -ōnis, f. [**veneror**, *reverence*] *reverence, respect, veneration.*
- venia**, -ae, f. *pardon.*
- veniō** [✓ **VEN-**, *come, go*] -īre, **vēni**, **ventum**, v. intr. *come.*
- vēnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. intr. *hunt.*
- ventus**, -ī, m. *wind.*
- vēr**, **vēris**, n. *spring.*
- verbum**, -ī, n. *word; saying.*
- verēcundia**, -ae, f. [**vereor**, *fear*] *fear, respect, reverence.*
- vereor**, -ārī, -itus sum, dep. v. tr. *reverence, respect, fear.*
- vērō**, adv. [**vērus**, *true*] *in truth, indeed, certainly; but, however.*
- verruca**, -ae, f. *a wart.*
- versiculus**, -ī, m. [**versus**, *verse*] *a little verse, versicle.*
- versor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. *be engaged in, be busy, conduct oneself.*
- versus**, -ūs, m. [**vertō**, *turn*] **VERSE**, *line of poetry.*
- vērūm**, conj. [**vērus**, *true*] *but, however.*
- vērūm**, -ī, n. [**vērus**, *true*] *truth.*
- vērū**, -a, -um, adj. *true, real.*
- Vesta**, -ae, f. *Vesta*, daughter of Saturn and Ops, goddess of flocks and herds and of the household, guardian of the city.
- vester**, -trā, -trum, poss. adj. [**vōs**, *you*] *your, yours.*
- vēstīgium**, -ī, n. [cf. **vestigō**, *track*] *track, footstep.*
- vestis**, -is, f. *clothes, attire, garments.*
- vetus**, -us, -us, gen. -eris, adj. *old, aged; ancient, former.*
- via**, -ae, f. [✓ **VEH-**, *carry*] *way, road, street.*
- viātor**, -ōris, m. [**viō**, *go*] *traveller, wayfarer.*
- vicīna**, adv. [**viginti**, *twenty*] *twenty times.*
- vicinus**, -a, -um, adj. [**vicus**, *row of houses*] *near, neighboring; as a subst. neighbor.*
- victor**, -ōris, m. [**vincō**, *conquer*] *conqueror, victor.*
- victōria**, -ae, f. [**victor**, *conqueror*] *VICTORY.*
- victus**, -a, -um, part. of **vincō**.
- vicus**, -ī, m. *row of houses, street, village.*
- vidēlicet**, adv. [**vidēre**, *to see* + **licet**, *it is allowed*] *one may see; clearly, of course.*
- videō** [✓ **VID-**, *see*], -ēre, **vidī**, **vīsum**, v. tr. *see, perceive.*
- videor**, -ārī, **vīsus** sum [pass. of **videō**], v. intr. *seem, appear, seem good.*
- vigilantia**, -ae, f. [**vigilāns**, *watchful*] *watchfulness, vigilance.*
- viginti**, num. adj. indecl. *twenty.*
- vinciō**, -īre, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, v. tr. *bind, tie, fasten.*
- vincō**, -ere, **vici**, **victum**, v. tr. *conquer, defeat, subdue.*
- villa**, -ae, f. [dim. of **vicus**, *village*] *country-house, farm, VILLA.*
- vinculum**, -ī, n. [**vinciō**, *bind*] *fetter, chain; pl. prison.*
- vindicō** [**vindex**, *maintainer*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *maintain, avenge, punish.*
- vīnum**, -ī, n. *wine.*
- violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. **VIOLATE**, *outrage.*
- vir**, **virī**, m. *male person, man; husband; hero.*
- virēs**, -ium [pl. f. of **vis**], *strength, force; troops.*
- virgō**, -inis, f. **VIRGIN**, *maid, maiden.*
- virtūs**, -ūtis, f. [**vir**, *man*] *manhood, courage; VIRTUE.*
- vis**, **vis**, f. *strength, power, force.*
- visus**, -ūs, m. [✓ **VID-**, *see*] *sight, appearance, vision.*
- vita**, -ae, f. [✓ **VIV-**, *live*], *life.*
- vitium**, -ī, n. *fault, offence, crime, VICE.*

vivō [✓ VIV-, *live*], -ere, **vixi**, —, v.
intr. *live, exist; dwell.*

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

vocō [✓ VOC-, *call*], -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
v. tr. *call, summon.*

volantia, n. pl. part. from **volō**.

volgō, adv. [**volgus**, *the mass*] *in the crowd, commonly, generally.*

volitō [freq. of **volō**, *fly*], -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, v. intr. *fly, move.*

volnerō [**volnus**, *wound*], -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, v. tr. *wound.*

volnus, -eris, n. *wound.*

volō [✓ VOL-, *wish*], **vellē**, **volui**, —,
v. tr. *wish, desire, be willing.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. *fly.*

Volsci, -ōrum, m. *the Volscians*, the most powerful people of ancient Latium.

vultur, -uris, m. **VULTURE**.

vultus, -ūs, n. [✓ VOL-, *wish*] *expression of countenance, features, looks, face.*

voluptās, -ātis, f. [**volō**, *wish*] *pleasure, enjoyment.*

voveō, -ēre, **vōvī**, **vōtum**, v. tr. *vow, promise solemnly.*

vōx, **vōcis**, f. [✓ VOC-, *call*] *call, voice, speech.*

X

Xenophōn, -ōntis, m. *Xenophon*, a well known Greek writer.

ENGLISH-LATIN.

A

a, *indef. article, usually not translated: sometimes translated by quidam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam).*

abandon, relinqvō, 3.

able, be, possum.

about, ūb, *prep. with abl.*

absent, be, absum.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.

abuse, abŭtor, 3, *with abl.*

accept, accipio, 3.

accomplish, cōficiō, 3; perficiō, 3.

account of, on, *abl. of cause: propter, or ob, with acc.*

accuse, accūsō, 1.

accustomed, be, solēō, 2.

acquit, absolvō, 3.

across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

admire, admīror, 1; mīror, 1.

admonish, moneō, 2.

adorn, ōrnō, 1.

advance, prōcēdō, 3.

advice, cōsillium, -i, n.

advise, moneō, 2.

Aeduan, Aedūus, -i, m.

affairs, rēs, ref, f.

affirm, affirmō, 1.

Africa, Ōfrica, -ae, f.

after, post, *prep. with acc.*

afterwards, postea, deinde.

age, aetās, -ātis, f.

Agessilaus, Agessillāus, -i, m.

aid, n. auxilium, -i, n.

aid, v. iuvō, 1.

alarm, n. terror, -ōris, m.

alarm, v. terreō, 2.

Alexander, Alexander, -drī, m.

all, omnis, -is, -e; tōtus, -a, -um.

almost, paene, fere.

alone, solus, -a, -um; ōnus, -a, -um.

also, quoque.

altar, ūra, -ae, f.

although, cum, *with subj.*

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.

among, inter, apud, *prep. with acc.*

ancient, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eria.

and, et; atque, &; -que.

anger, ira, -ae, f.

angry, irātus, -a, -um.

animal, animal, -is, n.

announce, nūtiō, 1.

another, alius, -a, -um; **time**, alia.

any, ullus, -a, -um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod; quisquam, —, quidquam; quisvis.

approach, appropinquō, 1.

Arlovistus, Arlovistus, -i, m.

arise, orior, 3.

arm, v. armō, 1.

arms, n. arma, -ōrum, n.

army, exercitus, -is, m.

around, circum, *prep. with acc.*

arouse, incitō, 1.

arrange, ōrdinō, 1.

arrival, adventus, -us, m.

arrive, advenio, 4.

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, artis, f.

as, *adv. ut: as = since, cum, with subj.*

ashamed, *am*, pudet.
ask, rogō, 1; interrogō, 1; (*for*) quaerō, 3.
ass, asinus, -i, m.
assault, impetus, -ūs, m.
assemble, conveniō, 4.
assembly, cōntiō, -ōnis, f.
astray, gō, errō, 1.
asylum, asylam, -i, n.
at, in, *prep. with acc.; with names of towns, use the locative case.*
Athens, Athēnae, -arum, f.
at once, statim.
attack, n. impetus, -ūs, m.
attack, v. oppugnō, 1.
attempt, v. tentō, 1; cōnor, 1.
augury, augurium, -i, n.
avarice, n. avāritia, -ae.
avenge, vindicō, 1.
away, gō, abeō, 4; discēdō, 3.
away from, ā, *or* ab, *with abl.; 3 or ex, with abl.*

B

back, *bring or carry*, reportō, 1; referō, 3.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n.
band, manus, -ūs, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -i, m.
baseness, turpitudō, -inis, f.
battle, pāgna, -ae, f.; proellum, -i, n.
be, sum.
bear, ferō, 3; portō, 1: (= *suffer*) tolerō, 1: *bear away*, auferō, 3: *bear off*, abducō, 3.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod, quia.
become, fiō, 3.
becomes, it, decet.
before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
beg, rogō, 1; petō, 3.
begin, incipiō, 3; coepl, 3.

beginning, initium, -i, n.
behalf of, in, prō, *prep. with abl.*
behoove, dēbeō.
being (living), animal, -alis, n.
Belgians, Belgae, -arum, m.
believe, crēdō, 3, *with dat.*
benedit, prōsum, *with dat.*
besiege, oppugnō, 1; obsideō, 3.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us.
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
bid, iubeō, 2.
big, magnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, f.
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, n. culpa, -ae, f.
blame, v. culpō, 1.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
boldly, audacter.
book, liber, -bri, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
born, be, nascor, 3.
both (each of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque: *both...and*, et...et.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m.
boy, puer, -eri, m.
brave, fortis, -is, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitudō, -inis, f.; virtūs, -ūtis, f.
breath, anima, -ae, f.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bridle, frēnum, -i, n.
bring, portō, 1; ferō, 3: *together*, cōferō, 3: *up*, educō, 1: *back*, reportō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvulus, -i, m.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
build, aedificō, 1; cōstituiō, 3; condō, 3.

building, aedificium, -i, n.

bull, taurus, -i, m.

buy, emō, 3.

by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means, abl. alone.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.

call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1: **together**, convocō, 1.

camp, castra, -arum, n.

can, possum.

canton, pāgus, -i, m.

captive, captivus, -i, m.

capture, capio, 3.

Capua, Capua, -ae, f.

care for, v. cūrō, 1.

care, n. cūra, -ae, f.

carefully, cum cūrā.

carry, porto, 1; ferō, 3: **away**, auferō, 3; abducō, 3: **back**, referō, 3: **carry on war**, bellum gerere.

cart, carrus, -i, m.

Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -i, m.; Carthāginīēnsis, -is, m.

cause, n. causa, -ae, f.

cause, v. praebeō, 2.

cavalry, n. equitātus, -ūs, m.

cavalry, adj. equester, -tris, -tre.

celebrate, celebō, 1.

certain (a), quidam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam): (= sure), certus, -a, -um.

change, mutō, 1.

character, n. cōrēs, -um, m. pl.

charge of, have, praesum, *with dat.*

chase, venor, 1.

chief, princeps, -cipis, m.

children, liberi, -orum, m.; pueri, -orum, m.

choice, optō, -ōnis, f.

choose, optō, 1.

Christ, Christus, -i, m.

Cicero, Cicero, -ōnis, m.

circumstance, res, rei, f.

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

citizen, civis, -is, m. and f.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

close at hand, prope, *prep. with acc.*

clothe, vestiō, 4.

cohort, cohors, -tis, f.

cold, frigus, -oris, n.

collect, cōgō, 3.

come, veniō, 4: **together**, conveniō.

command, v. imperō, 1, *with dat.*; iubeō, 2, *with acc.*; praesum, *with dat.*

command, n. imperium, -i, n.

commander, imperator, -oris, m.

common, communis, -is, -e.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, and plēbēs, -ei, m. and f.

companion, comes, -itis, m. and f.

compel, compellō, 3; cōgō, 3.

conceal, cēlo, 1.

concerning, de, *prep. with abl.*

condemn, condemnō, 1.

conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.

conqueror, victor, -oris, m.

consider, cōsiderō, 1.

conspiracy, confidatiō, -ōnis, f.

consul, cōsul, -ulis, m.

consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, m.; *in the ... of: use cōsul and name in abl. abs.*

consult, adhibeō, 3.

corn, frumentum, -i, n.

country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.; (*not city*) rūs, rūris, n.

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

course, iter, itineris, n.

creature, bēstia, -ae, f.

cross, transeō, 4.

crowd, vulgus, -i, n.

crown, corōna, -ae, f.

cruel, crudēlis, -is, -e.

cruelly, crudēliter.

cultivate, colō, 3.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.

D

danger, periculum, -i, n.
dangerous, periculosus, -a, -um, *adj.*
dare, audeō, 2, *semi-dep.*
daring, audācia, -ae, f.
daringly, cum audāciā, audācter.
daughter, filia, -ae, f.
day, diēs, diē, m. *and f.*
daybreak (at), primā luce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
deck, ōrō, 1.
decree, dēcernō, 3.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cerva, -ae, f.
defeat, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
defend, dēfendō, 3.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
deliberate, cōsiliō, 1; cōsiderō, 1.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
deliver, liberō, 1.
Delphi, Delphi, -ōrum, m.
depart, discedō, 3; exeo, 4.
depth, altitudo, -inis, f.
desire, optō, 1; volo, 3; cupiō, 3.
desirous, avidus, -a, -um.
destroy, dēlēō, 2.
devote oneself to, operam dō.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.
die, morior, 3.
differ, differō, 3.
different, run in different ways, discurrō, 3.
difficulty, difficilia, n. pl.; **with difficulty**, vix.
diligence, diligētia, -ae, f.
diligent, diligēns, -entis.
diligently, diligenter.

disgraceful, turpis, -is, -e.
dishonors (it), dēdecet.
dismay, cōsternō, 1.
distant, am, abeum.
distinguished, insignis, -is, -e.
distress, dolor, -ōris, m.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
Divitiacus, Divitiacus, -i, m.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.
doubt, v. dubitō, 1.
doubt, n. dubium, -i, n.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, f.
draw, ducō, 3: **draw up**, Instruō, 3.
dread, v. formidō, 1; timeō, 2.
dread, n. terror, -ōris, m.; timor, -ōris, m.
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -igis, m.
during (= amid), inter, *prep. with acc.*
duty, mūnus, -eris, n.; officium, -i, n.
dwell, habitō, 1.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque); **(of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagerly, ācriter; cum studiō.
eagerness, studium, -i, n.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
easily, facile.
educate, ēducō, 1.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
elder, senior, -ius, gen. -ōris.
encourage, hortor, 1.
end, finis, -is, m.
endure, tolerō, 1.
enemy, hostis, -is, m. *and f. usually in plur.*; inimicus, -i, m.
enjoy, fruor, 3, *with abl.*
enroll, cōscribō, 3.

envy, n. invidia, -ae, f.
equal, p̄ar, paris.
escape, evadō, 3; mē ēripīō, 3.
especially, maxīe.
establish, cōfirmō, 1; cōstituō, 3.
exchange, inter eē cō.
exhort, hortor, 1.
expense, sūmptus, -ūs, m.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, m.
explain, explānō, 1; explicō, 1; expōnō, 3.
expose, offerō, 3; expōnō, 3.
extend, pertinēō, 2.
Etruscans, Etruscī, -ōrum, m.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even, etiam.
every, omnis, -is, -e; quisque, *see each*.
everyone, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).

F

fact, rēs, rei, f.
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -is, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter.
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, 3.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, by far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.; vitium, -i, n.: **find fault with**, blame, culpō, 1, *with acc.*; vituperō, 1, *with acc.*
Faustulus, Faustulus, -i, m.
favor, faveō, 2, *with dat.*
fear, n. terror, -ōris, m.
fear, v. formīdō, 1; vereor, 2; timeō, 2.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fiercely, atrōciter; scriter.
fight, v. pugnō, 1; cīmicō, 1.

fight, n. pūgna, -ae, f.
fill, complēō, 2.
filled with, plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
find, nancīscor, 3: **find out**, cōgnōscō, 3.
finish, cōficiō, 3.
fire, Ignis, -is, m.: **set fire to**, incendō, 3.
firmness, cōstantia, -ae, f.
first, primus, -a, -um: **first (of two)**, prior, prius.
fish, piscis, -is, m.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um.
five hundred, quīngenti, -ae, -a.
flee, fugiō, 3; cōfugiō, 3: **flight**, n. fuga, -ae, f.; **flight, put to**, fugō, 1.
flock, grēx, gregis, m.
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
fly, volō, 1.
follow, sequor, 3.
following day, posterō diē.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -i m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, m.
for, conj. nam.
for: *sign of dative*: prep. dē, prō, *with abl.*: *denoting time or space, acc.*
force, manus, -ūs, f.
forces, cōpiae, -arum, f.
foresight, prudētia, -ae, f.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forever, semper.
forget, oblivīscor, 3.
form, forma, -ae, f.
former, ille.
fortify, mūnīō, 4; saepiō, 3.
fortune, fortuna, -ae, f.
forum, forum, -i, n.
forward, go, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.
free, adj. liber, -era, -erum.
free, v. liberō, 1.
friend, amicus, -i, m.

friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
 frighten, terreo, 2.
 frightened, territus, -a, -um.
 from, de, with *abl.*: away from, a or ab, with *abl.*: out of, ex or e, with *abl.*
 front, frons, frontis, m.
 fruit, fructus, -us, m.
 full, plenus, -a, -um, with *gen.*
 furnish, praebeo, 2.
 further, ulterior, -ius, gen. -oris.
 furthest, ultimus, -a, -um.

G

gain, v. reportō, 1.
 game, ludus, -i, m.
 garrison, praesidium, -i, n.
 gate, porta, -ae, f.
 gaze at, specto, 1; conspicio, 1.
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
 Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.
 general, dux, ducis, m. and f.; imperator, -oris, m.
 Germans, Germāni, -orum, m.
 get (possession of), potior, 4, with *abl.*:
 get ready, paro, 1: get together, comparo, 1.
 gift, donum, -i, n.
 girl, puella, -ae, f.
 give, do, 1.
 glad, laetus, -a, -um.
 glorious, gloria magnā.
 go, eo, 4: go forth or out, exeo, 4: go off, away, abeo, 4; discedo, 3: go forward, progredior.
 goat, capra, -ae, f.
 god, deus, -i, m.
 goddess, dea, -ae, f.
 gold, aurum, -i, n.
 golden, aureus, -a, -um.
 good, bonus, -a, -um.
 grain, frumentum, -i, n.
 grandfather, avus, -i, m.

grant, do, 1.
 great, magnus, -a, -um; ingēns, -entis: so great, tantus, -a, -um.
 greatest, summus, -a, -um.
 greatly, maximē.
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
 Greek, a, Graecus, -i.
 grieve, doleo, 1, with *abl.*
 grievous, gravis, -is, -e.
 ground (on the), humi (loc.).
 guard, v. custodiō, 4.
 guard, n. custos, -odis, m.
 guide, dux, ducis, m.

H

hand, manus, -us, f.
 handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
 happen, accidō, 3.
 harbor, portus, -us, m.
 harm (do), noceo, 2, with *dat.*: obsum, with *dat.*
 harsh, gravis, -is, -e; asper, -era, -erum.
 hasten, propero, 1; festino, 1; contendō, 3.
 hate, odi, present tenses wanting.
 hatred, odium, -i.
 have, habeo, 2: have charge of, praesum, with *dat.*
 he, is; hic; ille.
 head, caput, -itis, n.: be at the head of, praesum, with *dat.*
 heal, curo, 1.
 hear, audio, 4.
 heavens, caelum, -i, n.
 heavy, gravis.
 help, v. iuvo, 1.
 help, n. auxilium, -i, n.
 Helvetians (the), Helvēti, -orum, m.
 her, eius, illius: if referring to subject of the sentence, suus, -a, -um.
 hero, vir, viri, m.
 hesitate, dubito, 1.

hide, lateō, 2.
high, altus, -a, -um.
highest, summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, *see self*.
hinder, impedio, 4.
his, eius, illius: *if referring to subject of the sentence*, suus, -a, -um.
history, historia, -ae, f.
hither (= nearer), citior, -ius, gen. -oris.
hold, habeo, 2; teneo, 2; contineo, 2:
hold back, retineo, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, f.: **at home**, domi:
home (result of motion), domum.
honor, n. honor, -oris, m.
honor, v. celebrō, 1; honoro, 1.
hope, n. spes, spei, f.
hope, v. spero, 1.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -i, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
host, hospes, -itis, m.
hostage, obseus, -idis, m. and f.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, f.
hundred, centum.
hunt, venor, 1.
hunter, venator, -oris, m.
hurl, iacio.
hurt, v. noceo, with dat.
hut, casa, -ae, f.

I

I, ego.
if, si.
ignorant, Ignarus, -a, -um, with gen.
ill, adv. male.
immediately, statim.
impede, impedio, 4.
impious, impius, -a, -um.
in, in, with abl.

in order that, ut, with subj.
incite, incito, 1.
increase, augeo, 2.
induce, induco, 3.
induced, inductus, -a, -um; adductus, -a, -um.
industriously, cum diligentia.
industry, diligentia, -ae, f.
infantry, peditēs, -um, m.; peditānus, -ūs, m.
influence, auctoritas, -ātis, f.
inform, certiorē facio.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. and f.
injure, noceo, 2, with dat.: obsum, with dat.
into, in, with acc.
irksome, molestus, -a, -um.
island, insula, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hōc; ille, illa, illud.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
itself, *see self*.

J

javelin, pilum, -i, n.
join together, coniungo, 3.
journey, iter, itineris, n.
joy, gaudium, -i, n.
joyful, laetus, -a, -um.
joyfully, cum gaudio.
judge, n. iudex; -icis, m.
judge, v. iudico, 1.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
just, iustus, -a, -um.

K

keep, habeo, 2; teneo, 2.
keeper, cūstōs, -ōdis, m.
keep off, arceo, 2.
kill, neco, 1; interficio, 3.
kind, genus, -eris, n.
kind of, what, quālis, -is, -e.

kindness, beneficium, -i, n.
 king, rex, régis, m.
 kingdom, regnum, -i, n.
 knife, culter, -tri, m.
 know, scio, 4 : **not know**, nescio, 4.
 known, notus, -a, -um.

L

labor, n. labor, -oris, m.
 labor, v. labōrō, 1.
 lack, desum, *with abl.*; careō, 2, *with
 abl.*
 land, terra, -ae, f.: **native land**, patria,
 -ae, f.
 large, magnus, -a, -um.
 last, supremus, -a, -um; ultimus, -a, -um.
 latter (the), hic, haec, hoc.
 laugh, rideō, 2 : **laugh at**, inrideō, 2,
with acc.
 law, lex, legis, f.
 lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
 lay waste, vastō, 1.
 lead, ducō, 3 : **lead out**, educō, 3 : **lead
 on**, adducō, 3.
 letter, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae, -arum, f.
 level, campester, -tris, -tre.
 liberty, libertas, -atis, f.
 lie (= recline), iaceō, 2.
 lie (= tell a lie), mentior.
 lieutenant, legatus, -i, m.
 life, vita, -ae, f.
 light, adj. levis, -is, -e.
 light, n. lux, lucis, f.
 like, similis, -is, -e.
 likeness, imago, -inis, f.
 line of battle, acies, -ei, f.
 literature, litterae, -arum, f.
 little, parvus, -a, -um.
 lion, leo, -onis, m.
 live, vivo, 3.
 living being, animal, -alis, n.

long, longus, -a, -um : **for a long time**,
 diu.
 look at, spectō, 1.
 Lord, Dominus, -i, m.
 lose, amitto, 3.
 love, v. amō, 1.
 love, n. amor, -oris, m.
 low, humilis, -is, -e.
 lower, inferior, -ius, gen. -oris.
 luckily, feliciter.
 lucky, felix (*of persons*); prosperus, -a,
 -um (*of things*).

M

Macedonia, Macedōnia, -ae, f.
 maiden, maid, puella, -ae, f.; virgo, -inis,
 f.: **maid-servant**, ancilla, -ae, f.
 make, facio, 3.
 man, vir, viri, m.; homō, -inis, m.
 many, multi, -ae, -a.
 march, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
 marriage, matrimōnium, -i, n.: **right
 of marriage**, cōnubium, -i, n.
 marry, in matrimōnium ducō, 3; *when
 said of a woman*, nubō, 3, *with dat.*
 master, dominus, -i, m.: **schoolmaster**,
 magister, -tri, m.
 match, pār, paris.
 medicine, medicina, -ae, f.
 meeting, concilium, -i, n.
 merchant, mercator, -oris, m.
 merry, laetus, -a, -um.
 messenger, cūstos, -i, m.
 Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, m.
 mind, animus, -i, m.; mēns, mentis, f.
 mine, meus, mea, meum.
 misdeed, scelus, sceleris, n.
 money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
 month, mēsis, -is, m.
 moon, luna, -ae, f.
 more, magis; plūs.
 mother, māter, -tris, f.

mountain, mōns, montis, m.

move, movēō, 2.

much, multus, -a, -um.

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.

must, dēbeō, *with inf.*; *expressed by gerundive*.

my, meus, mea, meum.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.

narrow, angustus, -a, -um.

nation, gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, -ōnis, f.

native land, patria, -ae, f.

near, ad, *with acc.*; prope, *with acc.*

near by, near at hand, prope.

nearer, propior, -ius.

nearest, proximius, -a, -um.

neighbor, vicinus, -i, m.

neighboring, vicinus, -a, -um.

neither, neque.

neither (of two), nenter, -tra, -trum.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

next, posterus, -a, -um; postrēmus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, f.; **by night**, noctū.

nine, novem.

ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.

no, nullus, -a, -um.

noble, nōbilis, -is, -e.

nobody, no one, nēmō, nullius, nēminī, nēminem, rēlīō: **that no one**, nō quis.

no longer, iam *with a negative*.

noise, clāmor, -ōris, m.

nor, neque.

not, nōn; nē.

nothing, nihil.

nourish, alō, 3.

now, nunc; iam.

Numa, Numa, -ae, m.

number, numerus, -i, m.

O

oath, iūsidrandum, iūsidrandi, n.

obey, pāreō, 2, *with dat.*

obtain, obtineō, 2.

occupy, occupō, 1.

of (*sign of gen.*), *untranslated*; dē, *with abl.*

often, saepe.

oh, Ō.

old, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris: **old man**, senex, senis, m.

older, senior, -ioris.

oldest, māximus, -a, -um nātū.

on, in, *with abl.*; *denoting time, expressed by simple abl.*: **on account of**, ob or propter, *with acc. or by abl. alone*.

once, ōlīm.

one, ōnus, -a, -um: **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius: **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.

only, tantum.

open, aperīō, 4.

opportune, oportūnus, -a, -um, *with dat.*

opposite, contrārius, -a, -um, *with dat.*

order, imperō, 1, *with dat.*: iubeō, 2, *with acc.*: **in order to**, ut, *with subjv.*

other, alius, -a, -ud: **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii: **other (of two)**, alter.

ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2, *impers.*; also *by the gerundive*.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

ourselves, *see self*.

out of, ē or ex, *with abl.*

overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3.

overwhelm, superō, 1.

own (**his, her, their**), suus, -a, -um: **my**, meus, -a, -um: **our**, noster, -tra, -trum: **your**, vester, -tra, -trum: **thy**, tuus, -a, -um.

P

pained, am, doleō, *with abl.*

parent, parētus, -entis, m. and f.

part, pars, partis, f.
 patience, patientia, -ae, f.
 patiently, patienter; cum patientiā.
 peace, pax, pacis, f.
 people, populus, -i, m: common people, plēbs, -bis, f.
 perform, fungor, 3, *with abl.*
 peril, periculum, -i, n.
 perilous, periculosus, -a, -um.
 permit, permittō, 3, *with dat.*
 persuade, persuadē, 2, *with dat.*
 pirate, pirāta, -ae, m.
 pitch (camp), pōnō, 3.
 pity, v. miseret, 2, *impers.*
 pity, n. misericordia, -ae, f.
 place, n. locus, -i, m.; plur. loca, -ōrum, n.: *places on the earth*, loci, -ōrum, m.: *passages in books*: in that place, ibi.
 place, v. locō, 1.
 plain, campus, -i, m.; plānitēs, -ēs, f.
 plan, consilium, -i, n.
 plead, dīcō, 3.
 pleasant, grātus, -a, -um; iocundus, -a, -um.
 please, placeō, 2, *with dat.*
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
 plenty, cōpiā, -ae, f.
 plough, n. arātrum, -i, n.
 plough, v. arō, 1.
 poet, poēta, -ae, m.
 poor, paupēr, -era, -erum.
 position, status, -ūs, m.
 possession of, get, potior, 4.
 power, imperium, -i; rēgnum, -i, n.; potestās, -ātis, f.
 powerful, potēns, -entis, f.
 praise, n. laus, laudis, f.
 praise, v. laudō, 1.
 prefer, mālō, *irreg.*
 prepare, parō, 1.
 prepared, parātus, -a, -um, *with dat. or ad and acc.*

present, am, adsum, *with dat.*
 presently, mox.
 preserve, cōservō, 1.
 pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
 prevent, impediō, 4.
 prisoner, captivus, -i, m.
 promise, v. prōmittō, 3: promise solemnly, voveō, 2.
 promise, n. prōmissum, -i, n.; vōtum, -i, n.
 prosperous, prosperus, -a, -um (*of things*); iſtix, -icis (*of persons*).
 protect, dēfendō, 3.
 proud, superbus, -a, -um.
 province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
 provisions, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, f.
 prudence, prudētia, -ae, f.
 prudent, prudēns, -entis.
 punish, vindicō, 1; pūniō, 4.
 punishment, poena, -ae, f.
 pupil, discipulus, -i, m.
 purpose (for the purpose of), ut, *with subjv.*; ad, *with acc. of gerund or gerundive*; causā, *with gen. of gerund or gerundive*.
 put, pōnō, 3: put to flight, fugō, 1: put off, differō, 3.

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, f.
 question, v. interrogō, 1.
 quickly, citō.

R

rampart, vāllum, -i, n.
 rank, ōrdō, -inis, m.
 raise, tollō, 3.
 rather, *use comp. degree*: wish rather, mālō.
 read, legō, 3.
 ready, parātus, -a, -um.

recall, revocō, 1.
receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3.
refresh, recreō, 1.
refuse, rectisō, 1.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
reign, regnō, 1.
rejoice, gaudeō, 2.
remain, maneō, 2.
remind, moneō, 2.
renown, fāma, -ae, f.; glōria, -ae, f.
repent, poenitet, *impers.*, 2.
reply, respondeō, 2.
repulse, repellō, 3.
resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.*
respect to, in, *use abl. case.*
restore, restitūō, 3; reddō, 3; reconciliō, 1.
return, v. redeō, 4; revertor, 3.
revolution, novae iēs, novārum rerum, f.
reward, praemium, -i, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, m.
rich, dives, divitis.
riches, divitiāe, -arum, f.
ride, equitō, 1.
right (hand), adj. dexter, -tra, -trum.
right, n. iūs, iuris, n. : **right of marriage**, cōnubium, -i, n.
rightly, rectē.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, viae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
rout, fugō, 1.
rule, n. imperium, -i, n.
rule, v. regō, 3; regnō, 1.
run, currō, 3; **in different ways**, discurrō, 3.

S

Sabines, Sabīni, -ōrum, m.
sad, tristis, -is, -e; maestus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, f.
sake of, for the, causā, *with gen.*
sally, n. incursiō, -ōnis, f.; eruptiō, -ōnis, f.
same, Idem, eadem, idem.
savage, ferōx, -ōcis.
save, servō, 1; cōservō, 1.
say, dicō, 3; *inquit, irreg.*
school, schola, -ae, f.
sea, mare, -is, n.; aequor, -oris, n.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
sedition, seditiō, -ōnis, f.
see, videō, 2.
seek, quaerō, 3; petō, 3.
seem, videor, 2.
seize, occupō, 1; capiō, 3.
self, *intensive*, ipse; *reflective, i.e. referring to subject of sentence*, sui, sibi, se, e.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
senator, senātor, -ōris, m.
send, mittō, 3: **send forward**, praemittō, 3.
servant, servus, -i, m.; serva, -ae, f.
set out, proficiscor, 3: **set free**, liberō, 1: **set fire to**, incendō, 3, *with acc.*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
severe, gravis, -is, -e.
shake, agitō, 1.
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
she, ea; haec; illa.
shield, scūtum, -i, n.; clipeus, -i, m.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -is, -e.
shout, n. clamor, -ōris, m.

- show**, v. *dēmonstrō*, 1; *mōnstrō*, 1.
show, n. *spectāculum*, -ī, n.
sick, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*.
side (on the other side of), *trans*, *with acc.*
signal, *signum*, -ī, n.
since, *cum*, *with subjv.*
sing, *cantō*, 1.
sister, *soror*, -*oris*, f.
six, *sex*.
sixth, *sextus*, -*a*, -*um*.
sixty, *sexagintā*.
size, *magnitudo*, -*inis*, f.
skilful, skilled, *peritus*, -*a*, -*um*, *with gen.*
sky, *caelum*, -ī, n.
slave, *servus*, -ī, m.; *serva*, -*ae*, f.
slavery, *servitūs*, -*ūtis*, f.
slay, *neō*, 1; *interficiō*, 3.
sleep, *somnus*, -ī, m.
small, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*.
so, *ita*, *tam*: **so great**, *tantus*, -*a*, -*um*: **so that**, *ut*, *with subjv.*: **so that . . . not**, **so as not to**, *ut nōn*, *with subjv.*
soldier, *miles*, -*itis*, m.
solemnly, *see promise*.
some (one), *aliquis*, -*qua*, -*quid* or -*quod*; *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoc-* or *quiddam*: **some . . . others**, *alii . . . alii*; *alteri . . . alteri* (*when only two parties are meant*).
something, *aliquid*.
sometimes, *interdum*.
son, *filius*, -ī, m.
song, *carmen*, -*inis*, m.
soon, *mox*.
sorry, *be*, *doleō*, 2.
source, *fons*, *fontis*, m.
space, *spatium*, -ī, n.
Spain, *Hispania*, -*ae*, f.
spare, *parcō*, 3.
speak, *loquor*, 3.
spear, *hasta*, -*ae*, f.
speedily, *celeriter*.
spirit, *animus*, -ī, m.
spirited, *acer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
spur, *calcar*, -*āris*, n.
stag, *cervus*, -ī.
stand, *stō*, 1: **stand together**, *cōn-sistō*.
standard, *signum*, -ī, n.
star, *stella*, -*ae*, f.
state, *civitas*, -*ātis*, f.; *rēs publica*, *rei publicae*, f.
statue, *statua*, -*ae*, f.
stature, *statura*, -*ae*, f.
stay, *maneō*, 2.
still, *tamen*.
stone, *lapis*, -*idis*, m.
storm, n. *tempestās*, -*ātis*, f.
storm, v. *oppugnō*, 1.
story, *fābula*, -*ae*, f.
strange, *mirābilis*, -*ae*.
street, *via*, -*ae*, f.
strength, *vis*, *vis*, f.; *cōstantia*, -*ae*, f.
strong, *validus*, -*a*, -*um*.
struggle, n. *certāmen*, -*inis*, n.
sturdy, *validus*, -*a*, -*um*.
subdue, *pācō*, 1.
successfully, *fēliciter*.
suddenly, *subitō*.
suffer, *tolerō*, 1; *labōrō*, 1.
suffice, *sufficiō*, 3.
suitable, *idōneus*, -*a*, -*um*.
summer, *aestās*, -*ātis*, f.
summon, *vocō*, 1.
sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.
superior, *superior*, -*ius*.
surpass, *superō*, 1.
survive, *supersum*, *with dat.*
swift, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.
swiftly, *celeriter*.
sword, *gladius*, -ī, m.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
take, occupō, 1; capiō, 3; sūmō, 3: **take by storm**, expugnō, 1.
tale, fābula, -ae, f.
talent, talentum, -ī, n.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentum, Tarentum, -ī, n.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, m.
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -tri.
tell, nārō, 1; dicō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
ten, decem.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreo, 2.
territory, finēs, -ium, m.
terror, terror, -oris, m.
than, quam; *or by abl. if quam is omitted.*
that, dem. pron. is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; iste, ista, istud.
that, rel. pron. quī, quae, quod.
that, conj., 1, denoting purpose or result, ut; 2, with verbs of fearing, nē; 3, after verbs of saying and thinking, omitted.
their, eōrum referring to masc. and neut., eārum to fem.: *if to the subject of the sentence*, suus, -a, -um.
themselves, see self.
then, tunc.
there, adv. ibi.
there, expletive, not translated.
therefore, igitur.
thing, rēs, rei; *in plur. with adj. usually expressed by neut. gender.*
think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1.
thirteen, tredecim.
this, is, ea, id; hīc, haec, hōc.
thousand, mille.

three, trēs, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per, with acc.
throw, iactō, 1; iaciō, 3.
thus, ita.
time, tempus, -oris, n.
tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, 1, sign of dat.; 2, denoting motion, ad with acc.; 3, denoting purpose, ut with subjv., ad with gerund or gerundive; causā, with gen. of gerund or gerundive.
to and fro, see run.
to-day, hodiē.
together with, cum, with abl.
toil, laborō, 1.
too, expressed by comp. degree.
touch, tangō, 3.
towards, ad or in, with acc.
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
townsman, oppidānus, -ī, m.
train, v. educō, 1.
traveller, viator, -oris, m.
treason, prōditio, -ōnis, f.
treaty, foedus, -eris, n.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tribe, tribus, -ūs, m.; gens, gentis, f.
triumph, triumphus, -ī, m.
troops, cōplae, -ārum, f.
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.
trust, fidō, 3.
truth, vērū, -ī, n.
try, tentō, 1; cōnor, 1.
turn, flectō, 3; vertō, 3.
twenty, viginti.
two, duo, -ae, -o: **which of two**, uter, -tra, -trum: **each of two**, uterque, -traque, -trumque.

U

- uncertain**, incertus, -a, -um.
under, sub, *with acc. to denote motion* ;
with abl. to denote rest.
unlike, dissimilis, -is, -e.
unsuccessful, infelix.
unused to, inusitatus, -a, -um.
unwilling, am, nolō.
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um.
upon, in, *with acc., of motion* ; *with abl., of rest*.
use, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
useful, utilis, -is, -e.

V

- valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
van, agmen primum, agminis primū.
vanquish, superō, 1 ; vincō, 3.
versed in, peritus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
very, expressed by superl. degree.
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vicus, -ī, m.
vine, vitis, -is, f.
virgin, virgō, -īnis, f.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

W

- wage (war)**, gerō, 3.
wagon, carrus, -ī, m.
walk (= *take a walk*), ambulō, 1.
wall, murus, -ī, m. ; moenia, -ium, n.
wander through, peragrō, 1.
want (= *wish*), volō : (= *lack*), cōsum, *with dat.*
want, n. inopia, -ae.
war, n. bellum, -ī, n.
war, v. bellō, 1.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
warn, v. moneō, 2.

- waste**, lay, vāstō, 1.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.
way, via, -ae, f. ; iter, itineris, n.
ways, see **run**.
weapon, telum, -ī, n.
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
weather, caelum, -ī, n.
weep, fleō, 2.
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
well, bene.
what ? 1, *interrog. pron.* quis, quid ?
 2, *interrog. adj.* quī, quae, quod ? **what**
kind of, quālis, -is, -e ?
when, cum, *with subjv.* ; ubi, *with ind.*
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which, *rel. pron.* quī, quae, quod :
which of two, uter, -tra, -trum.
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quō.
who, *interrog.* quis, quid ; *rel.* quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.
wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
wild boar, aper, -ī, m.
willing, am, volō.
win, reportō, 1.
wine, vinum, -ī, n.
wing, ala, -ae : (*of an army*) cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, n. hieme, -nis, f.
winter, v. hiemō, 1.
winter-quarters, hiberna, -arum, n.
wisdom, prādentia, -ae, f. ; sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapiēs, -entis ; prūdēs, -entis.

wish, volo ; capiō, 3 ; optō, 1.

with, cum, *with abl.* ; *often by abl. alone.*

withdraw, discēdō, 3.

without, sine, *with abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, f. ; mulier, -eris, f.

wonder, wonder at, miror, 1, *with acc.*

wont, am, solēō, 2.

woods, silva, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -i, n. ; vōx, vōcis, f.

work, n. opus, -eris, n. ; labor, -ōris, m.

work, v. labōrō, 1.

world, orbis (terrārum), -is, m. ; mundus, -i, m.

worse, pēior, -ius.

would that, utinam.

wound, n. vulnus, -eris, n.

wound, v. volnerō, 1.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scribō, 3.

wrong, iniustus, -a, -um.

Y

year, annus, -i, m.

yesterday, heri.

yoke, iugum, -i, m.

you, sing. tū ; pl. vōs.

young, iuvenis, -is, -c.

young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m. ; iuvenis, -is, m.

your, sing. tuus, -a, -um ; pl. vester, vestra, vestrum.

yourselves, see self.

youth (body of), iuventūs, -ūtis, f.

Z

zeal, studium, -i, n.

zealously, cum studiō.

5 4 3 2 1 1

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

1975-1-20

--	--	--

Tx
47
B

Tx
47821
B182

Bein, C. W.
First Latin bc

10 M-10-40-38108

NAME

DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

597627